

# Jeep<sup>®</sup>

2010

OWNER'S MANUAL

# Wrangler

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

| SECTION |   | PAGE |
|---------|---|------|
| 1       | INTRODUCTION .....                                | 3    |
| 2       | THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE ..... | 9    |
| 3       | UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE .....  | 81   |
| 4       | UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL .....         | 241  |
| 5       | STARTING AND OPERATING .....                      | 327  |
| 6       | WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES .....                   | 439  |
| 7       | MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE .....                    | 453  |
| 8       | MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES .....                       | 505  |
| 9       | IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE .....             | 525  |
| 10      | INDEX .....                                       | 535  |



---

# INTRODUCTION

## CONTENTS

---

|                                    |   |   |   |
|------------------------------------|---|---|---|
| ■ Introduction . . . . .           | 4 | ■ Warnings And Cautions . . . . .             | 8 |
| ■ Rollover Warning . . . . .       | 5 | ■ Vehicle Identification Number . . . . .     | 8 |
| ■ How To Use This Manual . . . . . | 6 | ■ Vehicle Modifications/Alterations . . . . . | 8 |



## 4 INTRODUCTION

### INTRODUCTION

Congratulations on selecting your new Chrysler Group LLC vehicle. Be assured that it represents precision workmanship, distinctive styling, and high quality - all essentials that are traditional to our vehicles.

This is a specialized utility vehicle designed for both on-road and off-road use. It can go places and perform tasks for which conventional two-wheel drive enclosed vehicles were not intended. It handles and maneuvers differently from many passenger cars both on-road and off-road, so take time to become familiar with your vehicle.

**The two-wheel drive utility vehicle was designed for on-road use only. It is not intended for off-road driving or use in other severe conditions suited for a four-wheel drive vehicle.**

Before you start to drive this vehicle, read the Owner's Manual. Be sure you are familiar with all vehicle controls, particularly those used for braking, steering, transmission, and transfer case shifting. Learn how your vehicle handles on different road surfaces. Your driving skills will improve with experience. When driving off-road or working the vehicle, don't overload the vehicle or expect the vehicle to overcome the natural laws of physics. Always observe federal, state, provincial and local laws wherever you drive.

As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or an accident. Refer to "On-Road/Off-Road Driving Tips" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

This Owner's Manual has been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with the operation and maintenance of your vehicle. It is supplemented by a Warranty Information Booklet, located on the DVD, and various customer-oriented documents. Please take the time to read these publications carefully. Following the instructions and recommendations in this manual will help assure safe and enjoyable operation of your vehicle.

**NOTE:** After you read the manual, it should be stored in the vehicle for convenient referencing and remain with the vehicle when sold, so that the new owner will be aware of all safety warnings.

When it comes to service, remember that your authorized dealer knows your vehicle best, has factory-trained technicians and genuine MOPAR® parts, and cares about your satisfaction.

### ROLLOVER WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. This vehicle has a higher ground clearance and a higher center of gravity than many passenger cars. It is capable of performing better in a wide variety of off-road applications. Driven in an unsafe manner, all vehicles can go out of control. Because of the higher center of gravity and the narrower track, if this vehicle is out of control it may roll over when some other vehicles may not.

Do not attempt sharp turns, abrupt maneuvers, or other unsafe driving actions that can cause loss of vehicle control. Failure to operate this vehicle safely may result in an accident, rollover of the vehicle, and severe or fatal injury. Drive carefully.



### Rollover Warning Label

Failure to use the driver and passenger seat belts provided is a major cause of severe or fatal injury. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Always buckle up.


### HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Consult the Table of Contents to determine which section contains the information you desire.

Since the specification of your vehicle depends on the items of equipment ordered, certain descriptions and illustrations may differ from your vehicle's equipment.

The detailed index at the back of this Owner's Manual contains a complete listing of all subjects.

Consult the following table for a description of the symbols that may be used on your vehicle or throughout this Owner's Manual:

|  |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |   |
|--|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|---|
| <br>WATER IN FUEL                 | <br>REAR WINDOW WIPER              | <br>WINDSHIELD WIPER INTERMITTENT    | <br>EXTERIOR BULB FAILURE                         | <br>HIGH BEAM              | <br>TURN SIGNALS                         | <br>UPPER AIR OUTLET               | <br>HEATED SEAT LOW      | <br>DOOR LOCK                                       | <br>ADJUSTABLE PEDALS             | <br>ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL      | <br>ESP BAS<br>ELECTRONIC STABILITY PROGRAM / ESCA ASSIST SYSTEM |
| <br>FUEL                          | <br>REAR WINDOW INTERMITTENT WIPER | <br>WINDSHIELD WASHER                | <br>MASTER LIGHTING SWITCH                        | <br>LOW BEAM               | <br>KEY ACTIVATE (POWER OUTLET)          | <br>UPPER AND LOWER AIR OUTLET     | <br>HEATED SEAT HIGH     | <br>WINDOW LIFT                                     | <br>TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR         | <br>HILL DESCENT CONTROL          | <br>BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING PARKING BRAKE                           |
| <br>FUEL FILL SIDE               | <br>REAR WINDOW WASHER            | <br>WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID LEVEL   | <br>DOME LIGHT                                   | <br>FRONT FOG LIGHT       | <br>HOOD RELEASE                        | <br>LOWER AIR OUTLET              | <br>RECIRCULATION       | <br>CONVERTIBLE 4 WINDOW DOWN                      | <br>TRACTION CONTROL             | <br>AWDI                         | <br>FAILURE OF ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM                         |
| <br>ENGINE OIL                  | <br>REAR WINDOW DEFROST          | <br>WINDSHIELD ELECTRICALLY HEATED | <br>PARK LIGHTS                                 | <br>REAR FOG LAMP        | <br>LIFTGATE RELEASE AND LIFTGATE OPEN | <br>DEFROST AND LOWER AIR OUTLET | <br>VENTILATING FAN    | <br>WINDOW LOCK                                   | <br>ELECTRONIC THROTTLE CONTROL | <br>4WD!                        | <br>BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING PARKING BRAKE                         |
| <br>BATTERY CHARGING            | <br>HEATED MIRROR                | <br>WINDSHIELD DEFROST             | <br>INSTRUMENT PANEL ILLUMINATION               | <br>SEAT BELT            | <br>SLIDING DOOR                       | <br>TRUNK / DECK RELEASE         | <br>AIR CONDITIONING   | <br>CHILD SEAT TETHER ANCHOR                      | <br>VOICE RECOGNITION BUTTON    | <br>WARNING                     | <br>TOW / HAUL   |
| <br>GLOW PLUG                   | <br>POWER STEERING FLUID         | <br>WINDSHIELD WIPER AND WASHER    | <br>SIDE AIRBAG                                 | <br>AIRBAG               | <br>SLIDING DOOR                       | <br>EMERGENCY RELEASE HANDLE     | <br>LIGHTER            | <br>LOWER ANCHORS AND TETHER FOR CHILDREN (LATCH) | <br>DISCONNECT™ BUTTON          | <br>HAZARD                      | <br>4 LOW  |
| <br>MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LIGHT | <br>TRANS OIL TEMP               | <br>ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE     | <br>SRS AIRBAG<br>SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM | <br>PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF | <br>DOOR AJAR                          | <br>CONVERTIBLE TOP DOWN         | <br>CONVERTIBLE TOP UP | <br>HORN  | <br>SEE OWNER'S MANUAL (SO)     | <br>A/C PUSH<br>AIR CONDITIONER | <br>ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL OFF                           |

010507683

### WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

This Owner's Manual contains **WARNINGS** against operating procedures that could result in an accident or bodily injury. It also contains **CAUTIONS** against procedures that could result in damage to your vehicle. If you do not read this entire manual, you may miss important information. Observe all Warnings and Cautions.

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is found on the left front corner of the instrument panel pad, visible from outside of the vehicle through the windshield. This number also appears on the Automobile Information Disclosure Label affixed to a window on your vehicle. Save this label for a convenient record of your vehicle identification number and optional equipment.

**NOTE:** It is illegal to remove or alter the VIN plate.

### VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS/ALTERATIONS

#### WARNING!

**Any modifications or alterations to this vehicle could seriously affect its roadworthiness and safety and may lead to an accident resulting in serious injury or death.**

# THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

## CONTENTS

|   |    |  |    |
|---|----|--|----|
| ■ A Word About Your Keys . . . . .              | 12 | □ General Information . . . . .                      | 17 |
| □ Ignition Key Removal . . . . .                | 12 | ■ Vehicle Security Alarm — If Equipped . . . . .     | 17 |
| □ Key-In-Ignition Reminder . . . . .            | 13 | □ Rearming The System . . . . .                      | 17 |
| ■ Steering Wheel Lock . . . . .                 | 13 | □ To Set The Alarm . . . . .                         | 18 |
| □ To Manually Lock The Steering Wheel . . . . . | 13 | □ To Disarm The System . . . . .                     | 18 |
| □ To Release The Steering Wheel Lock . . . . .  | 13 | ■ Illuminated Entry . . . . .                        | 19 |
| ■ Sentry Key® . . . . .                         | 14 | ■ Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) — If Equipped . . . . . | 19 |
| □ Replacement Keys . . . . .                    | 15 | □ To Unlock The Doors And Swing Gate . . . . .       | 20 |
| □ Customer Key Programming . . . . .            | 16 | □ To Lock The Doors And Swing Gate . . . . .         | 20 |

## 10 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

|  |    |   |    |
|--|----|---|----|
| □ Using The Panic Alarm . . . . .                                | 21 | ■ Door Locks . . . . .                                    | 30 |
| □ To Turn Off “Flash Lights With Lock” . . . . .                 | 21 | □ Manual Door Locks . . . . .                             | 30 |
| □ Programming Additional Transmitters . . . . .                  | 22 | □ Power Door Locks — If Equipped . . . . .                | 31 |
| □ General Information . . . . .                                  | 22 | □ Automatic Unlock Doors On Exit . . . . .                | 32 |
| □ Transmitter Battery Replacement . . . . .                      | 23 | □ Automatic Door Locks . . . . .                          | 33 |
| ■ Remote Starting System — If Equipped . . . . .                 | 24 | ■ Windows . . . . .                                       | 34 |
| □ How To Use Remote Start . . . . .                              | 24 | □ Power Windows — If Equipped . . . . .                   | 34 |
| ■ Doors . . . . .  | 26 | □ Rear Power Windows (Four-Door Models<br>Only) . . . . . | 35 |
| □ Upper Half Door Window Removal<br>— If Equipped . . . . .      | 26 | □ Wind Buffeting . . . . .                                | 36 |
| □ Upper Half Door Window Installation<br>— If Equipped . . . . . | 27 | ■ Rear Swing Gate . . . . .                               | 36 |
| □ Front Door Removal . . . . .                                   | 27 | ■ Occupant Restraints . . . . .                           | 37 |
| □ Rear Door Removal (Four-Door Models) . . . . .                 | 28 | □ Lap/Shoulder Belts . . . . .                            | 39 |

|   |    |
|---|----|
| □ Rear Center Lap/Shoulder Belt Retractor Lockout (Four-Door Models Only) . . . . . | 44 |
| □ Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage . . . . .                                | 44 |
| □ Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) Mode — If Equipped . . . . .                   | 46 |
| □ Seat Belts In Passenger Seating Positions . . . . .                               | 46 |
| □ Seat Belt Pretensioners — If Equipped . . . . .                                   | 47 |
| □ Enhanced Seat Belt Use Reminder System (BeltAlert®) . . . . .                     | 47 |
| □ Seat Belts And Pregnant Women . . . . .   | 49 |
| □ Seat Belt Extender . . . . .  | 49 |
| □ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) — Airbags . . . . .                           | 50 |

## THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE 11

|  |    |
|--|----|
| □ Airbag Deployment Sensors And Controls . . . . .                     | 55 |
| □ Event Data Recorder (EDR) . . . . .                                  | 60 |
| □ Child Restraints . . . . .   | 61 |
| ■ Engine Break-In Recommendations . . . . .                            | 75 |
| ■ Safety Tips . . . . .  | 75 |
| □ Transporting Passengers . . . . .                                    | 75 |
| □ Exhaust Gas . . . . .  | 76 |
| □ Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle . . . . .           | 77 |
| □ Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle . . . . . | 79 |



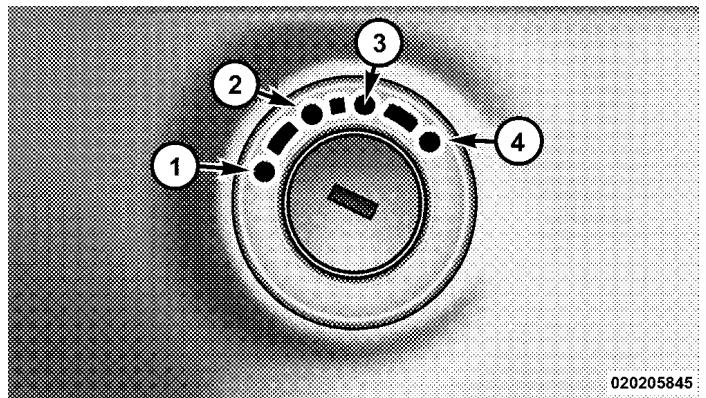
## 12 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

### A WORD ABOUT YOUR KEYS

The keys for your new vehicle are enclosed in a plastic bag with the key code number on it. If you received your keys without the bag, ask your authorized dealer to give you the number. The key code can also be obtained by your authorized dealer from your vehicle invoice.

### Ignition Key Removal

1. Place the shift lever in PARK (if equipped with an automatic transmission).
2. Turn the ignition switch to the ACC (ACCESSORY) position.



Ignition Switch Positions

- |                     |           |
|---------------------|-----------|
| 1 — LOCK            | 3 — ON    |
| 2 — ACC (ACCESSORY) | 4 — START |

3. Push the ignition key inward.
4. Turn the ignition key to the LOCK position, and remove the key.

**WARNING!**

Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal, or the shift lever. Do not leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

**CAUTION!**

An unlocked vehicle is an invitation to thieves. Always remove the key from the ignition, and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

**Key-In-Ignition Reminder**

Opening the driver's door when the key is in the ignition, sounds a signal to remind you to remove the key.

**NOTE:** The Key-In-Ignition reminder only sounds when the ignition key is placed in the LOCK or ACC position.

**STEERING WHEEL LOCK**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a passive steering wheel lock. This lock prevents steering the vehicle without the ignition key. If the steering wheel is moved approximately a half turn in either direction, and the key is not in the ignition, the steering wheel will lock.

**To Manually Lock the Steering Wheel**

With the engine running, rotate the steering wheel one-half revolution from the straight ahead position, turn off the engine, and remove the key. Rotate the steering wheel slightly in both directions until the lock engages.

**To Release the Steering Wheel Lock**

Insert the key in the ignition, and turn the wheel slightly to the left or right, to disengage the lock.

## 14 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

**NOTE:** If you turned the wheel to the right to engage the lock, you must turn the wheel slightly to the right to disengage it. If you turned the wheel to the left to engage the lock, turn the wheel slightly to the left to disengage it.

### **SENTRY KEY®**

The Sentry Key® Immobilizer System prevents unauthorized vehicle operation by disabling the engine. The system does not need to be armed or activated. Operation is automatic, regardless of whether the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

The system uses ignition keys that have an embedded electronic chip (transponder) to prevent unauthorized vehicle operation. Therefore, only keys that are programmed to the vehicle can be used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will shut the engine off in two seconds if someone uses an invalid key to try to start the engine.

**NOTE:** A key that has not been programmed is also considered an invalid key, even if it is cut to fit the ignition switch lock cylinder for that vehicle.

During normal operation, after turning on the ignition switch, the Vehicle Security Light will turn on for three seconds for a bulb check. If the light remains on after the bulb check, it indicates that there is a problem with the electronics. In addition, if the Vehicle Security Light begins to flash after the bulb check, it indicates that someone used an invalid key to try to start the engine. Either of these conditions will result in the engine being shut off after two seconds.

If the Vehicle Security Light turns on during normal vehicle operation (vehicle running for longer than 10 seconds), it indicates that there is a fault in the electronics. Should this occur, have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible by an authorized dealer.

**CAUTION!**

The Sentry Key® Immobilizer system is not compatible with some after-market remote starting systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and loss of security protection.

All of the keys provided with your new vehicle have been programmed to the vehicle electronics.

**Replacement Keys**

**NOTE:** Only keys that are programmed to the vehicle electronics can be used to start and operate the vehicle. Once a Sentry Key® is programmed to a vehicle, it cannot be programmed to any other vehicle.

**CAUTION!**

Always remove the Sentry Keys® from the vehicle and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

At the time of purchase, the original owner is provided with a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN). Keep the PIN in a secure location. This number is required for authorized dealer replacement of keys. Duplication of keys may be performed at an authorized dealer or by following the customer key programming procedure. This procedure consists of programming a blank key to the vehicle electronics. A blank key is one that has never been programmed.

**NOTE:** When having the Sentry Key® Immobilizer System serviced, bring all vehicle keys with you to an authorized dealer.

## 16 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

### Customer Key Programming

If you have two valid Sentry Keys®, you can program new Sentry Keys® to the system by performing the following procedure:

1. Cut the additional Sentry Key® Transponder blank(s) to match the ignition switch lock cylinder key code.
2. Insert the first valid key into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position for at least three seconds, but no longer than 15 seconds. Then, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the first key.
3. Insert the second valid key into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position within 15 seconds. After 10 seconds, a chime will sound. In addition, the Vehicle Security Light will begin to flash. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the second key.

4. Insert a blank Sentry Key® into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position within 60 seconds. After 10 seconds, a single chime will sound. In addition, the Vehicle Security Light will stop flashing. To indicate that programming is complete, the Vehicle Security Light will turn on again for three seconds and then turn off.

The new Sentry Key® is programmed. **The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter will also be programmed during this procedure.**

Repeat this procedure to program up to eight keys. If you do not have a programmed Sentry Key®, contact your authorized dealer for details.

**NOTE:** If a programmed key is lost, see your authorized dealer to have all remaining keys erased from the system's memory. This will prevent the lost key from starting your vehicle. The remaining keys must then be

reprogrammed. All vehicle keys must be taken to an authorized dealer at the time of service to be reprogrammed.

### General Information

The Sentry Key® system complies with FCC rules Part 15 and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference that may be received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM — IF EQUIPPED

The Vehicle Security Alarm monitors the vehicle doors, swing gate, and ignition for unauthorized operation. The Vehicle Security Alarm provides both audible and visible

signals when activated. The horn will sound, the headlights, park lamps and/or turn signals will flash repeatedly for three minutes. If the disturbance is still present (driver's door, passenger door, other doors, ignition) after three minutes, the headlights, park lamps and/or turn signals will flash for an additional 15 minutes.

**NOTE:** The Panic Alarm and the Vehicle Security Alarm are quite different. Please take a moment to activate the Panic Alarm and the Vehicle Security Alarm to hear the differences in the horn. In case one should go off in the future, you will need to know which mode has been activated in order to deactivate it.

### Rearming The System

If something triggers the alarm, and no action is taken to disarm it, the Vehicle Security Alarm will turn off the horn after three minutes, turn off all of the visual signals after 15 minutes, and then the Vehicle Security Alarm will rearm itself.

## 18 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

### **To Set the Alarm**

The Vehicle Security Alarm will set when you use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to lock the doors and swing gate, or when you use the power door lock switch while the door is open. After all the doors are locked and closed, the Vehicle Security Light (located on the instrument cluster) will flash rapidly for about 16 seconds to signal that the Vehicle Security Alarm is arming. During this 16 second arming period, opening any door or the swing gate will cancel the arming. If the Vehicle Security Alarm successfully arms, the Vehicle Security Light will flash at a slower rate to indicate the Vehicle Security Alarm is set.

### **To Disarm the System**

To disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm, you will need to press the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter, or turn the ignition key to the ON position. If something has

triggered the Vehicle Security Alarm in your absence, the horn will sound three times when you unlock the doors. Check the vehicle for tampering.

The Vehicle Security Alarm is designed to protect your vehicle; however, you can create conditions where the Vehicle Security Alarm will arm unexpectedly. If you remain in the vehicle and lock the doors with the RKE transmitter, once the Vehicle Security Alarm is armed (after 16 seconds), when you pull the door handle to exit, the alarm will sound. If this occurs, press the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter to disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm. You may also accidentally disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm by unlocking the driver's door with the key and then locking it. The door will be locked but the Vehicle Security Alarm will not arm.

**NOTE:**

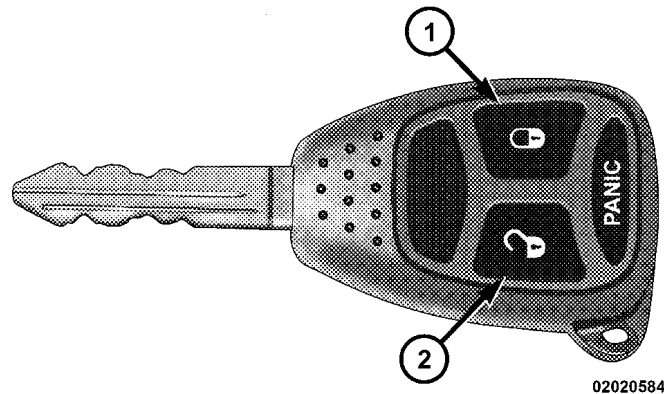
- Unlocking the doors with the manual door lock plungers or the driver's door lock cylinder will not disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm.
- When the Vehicle Security Alarm is armed, the interior power door lock switches will not unlock the doors.

**ILLUMINATED ENTRY**

The interior lights will come on when you open any door. The lights will remain on after all of the doors are closed, and then fade to off or they will immediately fade to off once the ignition switch is turned on.

**REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (RKE) — IF EQUIPPED**

This system allows you to lock or unlock the doors, swing gate, and activate the Panic Alarm from a maximum distance of 66 ft (20 m) using a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. The RKE transmitter does not need to be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system.



Three Button RKE Transmitter

- 1 — Lock
- 2 — Unlock

**NOTE:** The line of transmission must not be blocked with metal objects.



## 20 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

### To Unlock the Doors and Swing Gate

Press and release the RKE transmitter UNLOCK button once to unlock the driver's door only, or twice to unlock all the doors and swing gate. When the RKE transmitter UNLOCK button is pressed, the Illuminated Entry will initiate and the parking lights will flash twice.

The system can be programmed to unlock all the doors upon the first RKE transmitter UNLOCK button press, using the following procedure:

1. Press and hold the LOCK button on a programmed RKE transmitter.
2. Continue to hold the RKE transmitter LOCK button for at least four seconds, but not longer than 10 seconds, then press and hold the RKE transmitter UNLOCK button.
3. Release both buttons at the same time.

4. Test this feature while outside of the vehicle, by pressing the LOCK/UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter.

**NOTE:** Pressing the RKE transmitter LOCK button while you are inside of the vehicle will activate the Vehicle Security Alarm. Opening a door with the Vehicle Security Alarm activated will cause the alarm to sound. Press the RKE transmitter UNLOCK button to deactivate the Vehicle Security Alarm.

5. If the desired programming was not achieved or to reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

### To Lock the Doors and Swing Gate

Press and release the LOCK button on the RKE transmitter to lock all doors. The turn signals will flash and the horn will chirp once to acknowledge the lock signal. If desired, the "Sound Horn On Lock" feature can be turned on or off using the following steps:

1. Press the RKE transmitter LOCK button for 4 to 10 seconds.
2. While the LOCK button is pressed (after four seconds), press the RKE transmitter PANIC button. Release both buttons.

The “Sound Horn On Lock” feature can be reactivated by repeating this procedure.

### Using The Panic Alarm

To turn the Panic Alarm feature on or off, press and hold the PANIC button on the RKE transmitter for at least one second and release. When the Panic Alarm is activated, the headlights and park lights will flash, the horn will pulse on and off and the interior lights will turn on.

The Panic Alarm will stay on for three minutes unless you turn it off by pressing the PANIC button a second time, or if the vehicle speed is 5 mph (8 km/h) or greater.

**NOTE:** When you turn off the Panic Alarm by pressing the PANIC button a second time, you may have to be closer to the vehicle due to the radio frequency noises of the system.

### To Turn Off “Flash Lights With Lock”

**NOTE:** The “Flash Lights With Lock” feature can be turned on or off using the following steps:

1. Press the RKE transmitter UNLOCK button for 4 to 10 seconds.
2. While the UNLOCK button is pressed, (after four seconds) press the RKE transmitter LOCK button. Release both buttons.
3. Test the “Flash Lights With Lock” feature outside of the vehicle, by pressing the RKE transmitter LOCK button with the ignition in the LOCK position, and the key removed.

## 22 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

**NOTE:** Pressing the RKE transmitter LOCK button while you are in the vehicle will activate the Vehicle Security Alarm. Opening a door with the Vehicle Security Alarm activated will cause the alarm to sound. Press the RKE transmitter UNLOCK button to deactivate the Vehicle Security Alarm.

The “Flash Lights With Lock” feature can be reactivated by repeating this procedure.

### **Programming Additional Transmitters**

Refer to Sentry Key® “Customer Key Programming.”

If you do not have a programmed RKE transmitter, contact your authorized dealer for details.

### **General Information**

This device complies with part 15 of FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

If your RKE transmitter fails to operate from a normal distance, check for these two conditions:

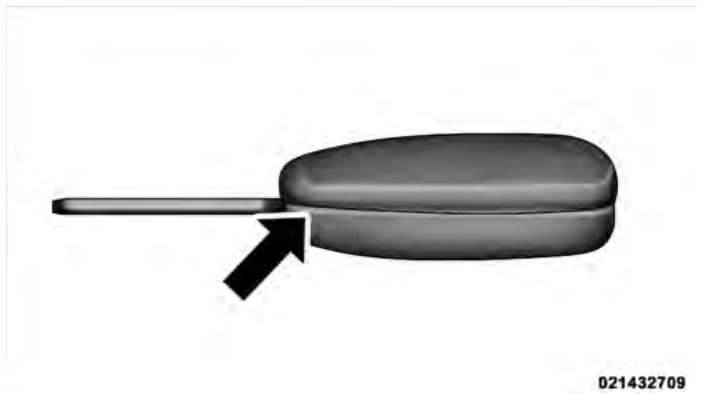
1. Weak battery in the RKE transmitter. The expected life of battery is five years.
2. Closeness to a radio transmitter such as a radio station tower, airport transmitter, military base, and some mobile or CB radios.

### Transmitter Battery Replacement

The recommended replacement battery is CR2032.

**NOTE:** Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply; See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

1. If the RKE transmitter is equipped with a screw, remove the screw. With the RKE transmitter buttons facing down, use a flat blade screwdriver to pry the two halves of the RKE transmitter apart. Use **extreme care** not to damage the seal or internal components.



2

#### Separating RKE Transmitter Halves

2. Remove and replace the battery. Avoid touching the new battery with your fingers. Skin oils may cause battery deterioration. If you touch a battery, clean it with rubbing alcohol.
3. To reassemble the RKE transmitter case, snap the two halves together.

## 24 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

**NOTE:** If the RKE transmitter is equipped with a screw, reinstall and tighten the screw until snug.

### REMOTE STARTING SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED



This system uses the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to start the engine conveniently from outside the vehicle while still maintaining security. The system has a range of approximately 300 ft (91 m).

**NOTE:** The vehicle must be equipped with an automatic transmission to be equipped with Remote Start.

#### How to Use Remote Start

All of the following conditions must be met before the engine will remote start:

- Shift lever in PARK
- Doors closed
- Hood closed

- Hazard switch off
- Brake switch inactive (brake pedal not pressed)
- Ignition key removed from ignition switch
- Battery at an acceptable charge level
- RKE PANIC button not pressed

#### WARNING!

- **Do not start or run an engine in a closed garage or confined area. Exhaust gas contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which is odorless and colorless. Carbon Monoxide is poisonous and can cause serious injury or death when inhaled.**
- **Keep Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters away from children. Operation of the Remote Start System, windows, door locks or other controls could cause serious injury or death.**

**To Enter Remote Start**



Press and release the REMOTE START button on the RKE transmitter twice, within five seconds. The parking lights will flash and the horn will chirp twice (if programmed). Then, the engine will start and the vehicle will remain in the Remote Start mode for a 15-minute cycle.

**NOTE:**

- The park lamps will turn on and remain on during Remote Start mode.
- For security, power window operation is disabled when the vehicle is in the Remote Start mode.
- The engine can be started two consecutive times (two 15-minute cycles) with the RKE transmitter. However, the ignition switch must be cycled to the ON position before you can repeat the start sequence for a third cycle.

Remote start will also cancel if any of the following occur:

- The engine stalls or RPM exceeds 2500
- Any engine warning lamps come on
- The hood is opened
- The hazard switch is pressed
- The transmission is moved out of PARK
- The brake pedal is pressed

**To Exit Remote Start Mode without Driving the Vehicle**

Press and release the REMOTE START button one time, or allow the engine to run for the entire 15-minute cycle.

**NOTE:** To avoid unintentional shut downs, the system will disable the one time press of the REMOTE START button for two seconds after receiving a valid Remote Start request.

## 26 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

### To Exit Remote Start Mode and Drive the Vehicle

Before the end of the 15-minute cycle, press and release the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter to unlock the doors and disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm (if equipped). Then, insert the key into the ignition switch and turn the switch to the ON position.

**NOTE:** The ignition switch must be in the ON position in order to drive the vehicle.

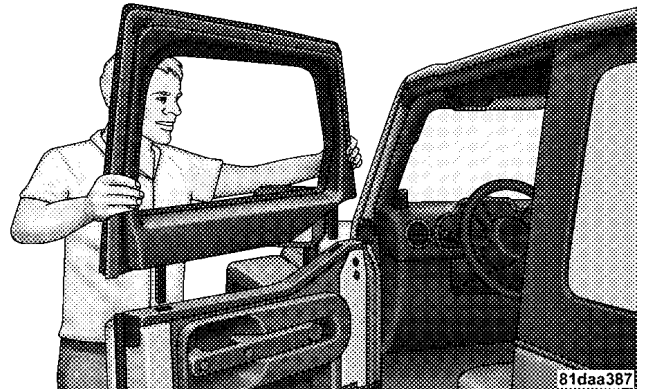
## DOORS

### CAUTION!

Careless handling and storage of the removable door panels may damage the seals, causing water to leak into the vehicles interior.

### Upper Half Door Window Removal — If Equipped

1. Grasp the half door window and pull upward.



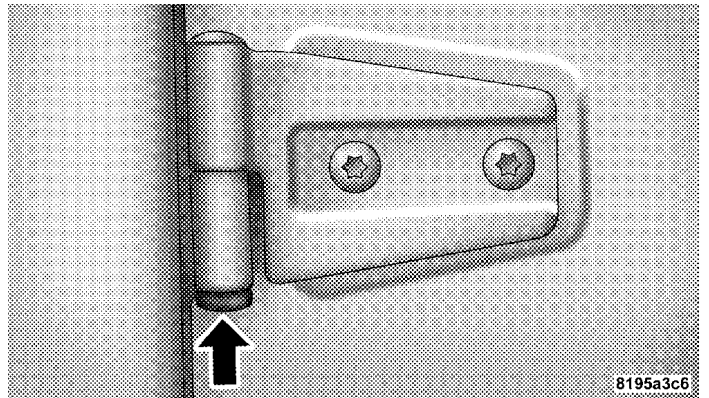
Upper Half Door Window

### Upper Half Door Window Installation — If Equipped

1. Grasp the half door window and line up pins into pockets in lower door.
2. Push down to ensure the half door window is fully seated.

### Front Door Removal

1. Remove the hinge pin screws from the upper and lower outside hinges (using a #T50 Torx® head driver).



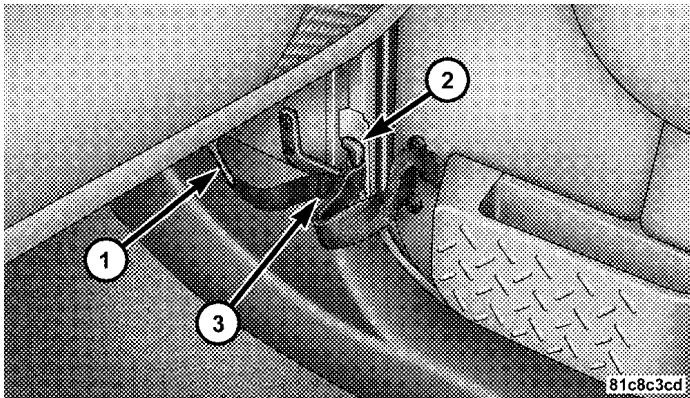
2

2. Unplug the wiring harness connector under the instrument panel by pressing the tab at the side of the connector and pulling to disconnect.



## 28 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

**NOTE:** If the red latch on the connector is locked, push the red latch to the right until you can only see the latch on one end (right) of the connector. This will unlock the connector tab, allowing the tab to be pressed down and enabling the harness to be disconnected.



- 1 — Harness Connector
- 2 — Body Hook
- 3 — Door/Harness Strap

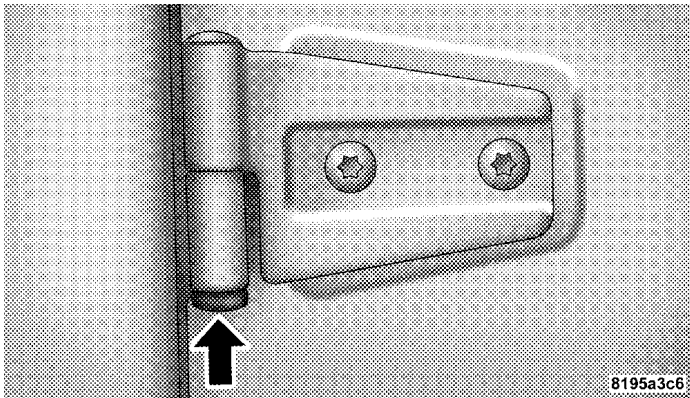
3. Unhook the door strap from the body hook. Be careful not to allow the door to swing fully open as the mirror may damage paint.

4. With the door open, lift the door to clear hinge pins from their hinges, and remove door.

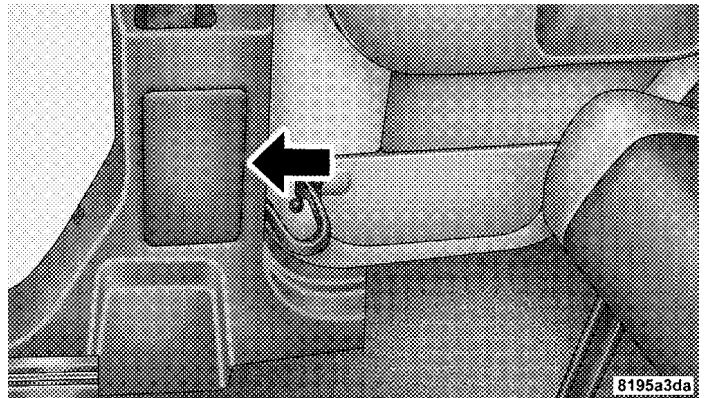
To reinstall the door(s), perform the previous steps in the opposite order.

### Rear Door Removal (Four-Door Models)

1. Remove the hinge pin screws from the upper and lower outside hinges (using a #T50 Torx® head driver).



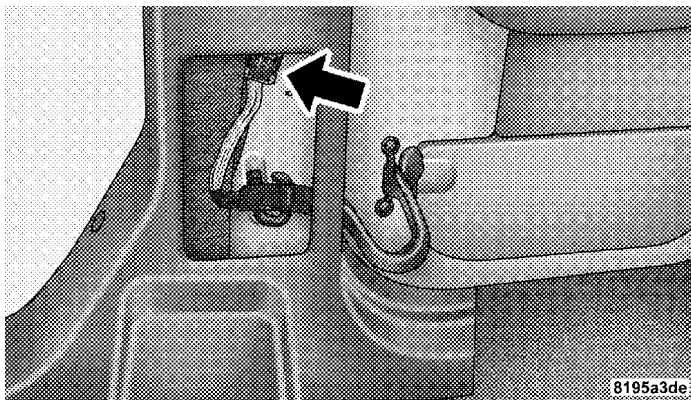
- 2. Slide the front seat(s) fully forward.
- 3. Remove the trim access door from the bottom of B-pillar.



2

- 4. Unplug the wiring harness connector.

**NOTE:** If the red latch on the connector is locked, push the red latch to the right until you can only see the latch on one end (right) of the connector. This will unlock the connector tab, allowing the tab to be pressed down and enabling the harness to be disconnected.



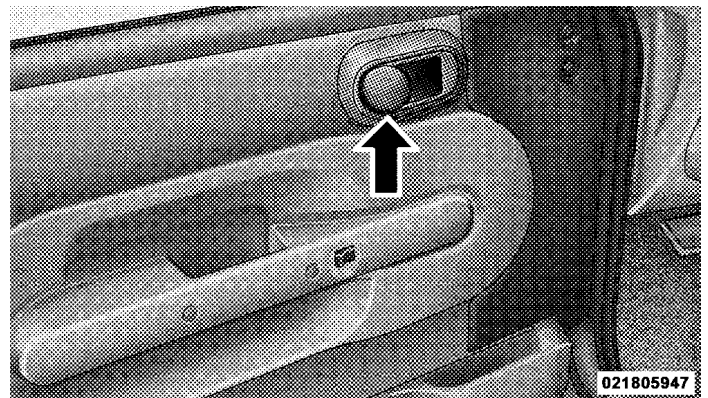
5. Unhook the door strap from the body hook.
6. With the door open, lift the door to clear hinge pins from their hinges, and remove door.

To reinstall the door(s), perform the previous steps in the opposite order.

## DOOR LOCKS

### Manual Door Locks

The front (two-door models) and rear doors (four-door models) are equipped with a rocker-type interior door lock. To lock the door when leaving your vehicle, press the LOCK position and close the door.



Manual Door Lock

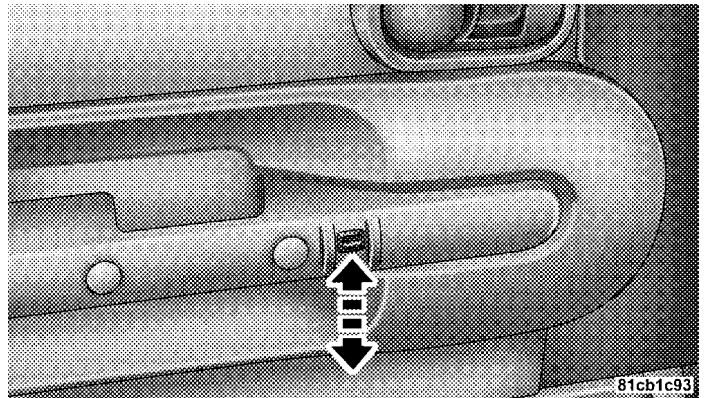
**NOTE:** The ignition key that is used to start the vehicle is used to lock or unlock the doors, swing gate, and console storage.

**WARNING!**

- For personal security reasons and safety in an accident, lock the vehicle doors when you drive, as well as when you park and leave the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Do not leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

**Power Door Locks — If Equipped**

The door lock switch is located on each front door panel. Press the switch downward to lock the doors, and upward to unlock the doors.



Power Door Lock Switch

**WARNING!**

- For personal security reasons and safety in an accident, lock the vehicle doors when you drive, as well as when you park and leave the vehicle.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Do not leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

**Automatic Unlock Doors On Exit**

The doors will unlock automatically on vehicles with power door locks if:

1. The "Automatic Unlock Doors On Exit" feature is enabled.
2. The transmission was in gear and the vehicle speed returned to 0 mph (0 km/h).
3. The transmission shift lever is in NEUTRAL or PARK.
4. The driver door is opened.

5. The doors were not previously unlocked.
6. The vehicle speed is 0 mph (0 km/h).

**Automatic Unlock Doors on Exit Programming**

The "Automatic Unlock Doors On Exit" feature can be enabled or disabled as follows:

1. Close all doors and place the key in the ignition.
2. Cycle the ignition switch between LOCK and ON and then back to LOCK four times ending up in the LOCK position.
3. Press the power door unlock switch to unlock the doors.
4. A single chime will indicate the completion of the programming.
5. Repeat these steps if you want to return this feature to its previous setting.



**NOTE:** Use the “Automatic Unlock Doors On Exit” feature in accordance with local laws.

### **Automatic Door Locks**

The doors will lock automatically on vehicles with power door locks if all of the following conditions are met:

1. The “Automatic Door Locks” feature is enabled.
2. The transmission is in gear.
3. All doors are closed.
4. The throttle is pressed.
5. The vehicle speed is above 15 mph (24 km/h).
6. The doors were not previously locked using the power door lock switch or Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

### **Automatic Door Locks Programming**

The “Automatic Door Locks” feature can be enabled or disabled as follows:

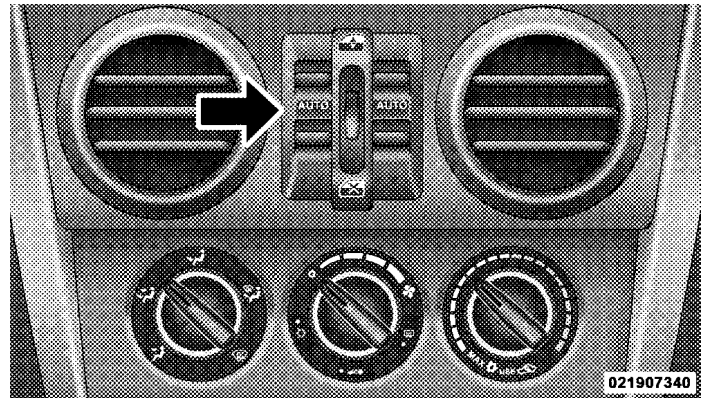
1. Close all doors and place the key in the ignition.
2. Cycle the ignition switch between LOCK and ON and then back to LOCK four times ending up in the LOCK position.
3. Press the power door LOCK switch to lock the doors.
4. A single chime will indicate the completion of the programming.
5. Repeat these steps if you want to return this feature to its previous setting.

**NOTE:** Use the “Automatic Door Locks” feature in accordance with local laws.

**WINDOWS****Power Windows — If Equipped**

The power window switches are located on the instrument panel center stack (below the radio). The top left switch controls the left front window and the top right switch controls the right front window. The lower left switch controls the left rear passenger window (four-door models), and the lower right switch controls the right rear passenger window (four-door models).

**NOTE:** The switches will continue to function for up to two minutes after the ignition key has been removed, or until a front door is opened.



**Power Window Switches**

**Window Lockout Switch (Four-Door Models Only)**

The window lockout switch (located between the window switches) allows you to disable the rear window switches that are located on the back of the center floor console. To disable the window controls, press the window lockout button downward. To enable the window controls, press the window lockout button upward.

**Auto-Down**

Both the driver and front passenger window switches have an "Auto-Down" feature. Press the window switch past the first detent, release, and the window will go down automatically. To cancel the Auto-Down movement, operate the switch in either the up or down direction and release the switch.

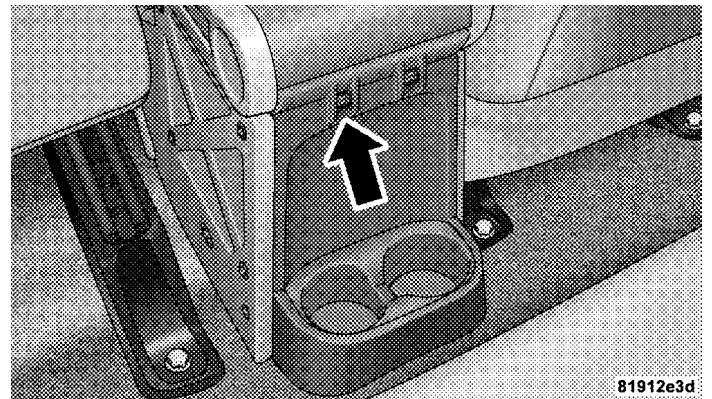
To stop the window from going all the way down during the Auto-Down operation, pull up on the switch briefly.

To open the window part way, press to the first detent and release it when you want the window to stop.

The power window switches remain active for two minutes after the ignition has been turned off. Opening either front door will cancel this feature.

**Rear Power Windows (Four-Door Models Only)**

The rear passenger window switches are located on the back of the center floor console.



**Rear Power Window Switches (Four-Door Models)**



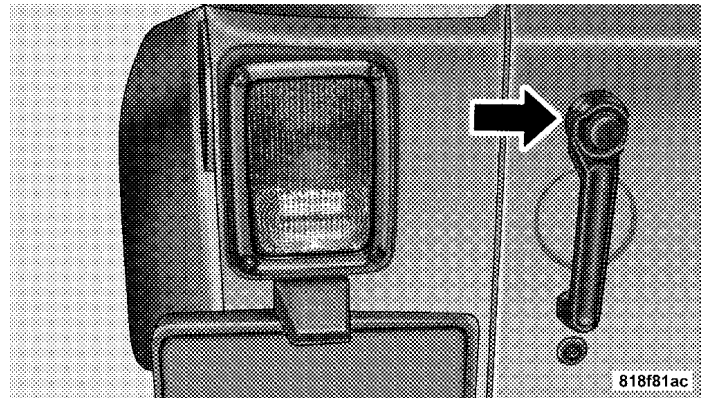
### Wind Buffeting

Wind buffeting can be described as the perception of pressure on the ears or a helicopter-type sound in the ears. Your vehicle may exhibit wind buffeting with the windows down in certain open or partially open positions. This is a normal occurrence and can be minimized by adjusting window opening.

### REAR SWING GATE

The swing gate can be unlocked by using the key, Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, or by activating the power door lock switches located on the front doors.

To open the swing gate, press the button on the gate handle.



Gate Handle

**NOTE:** Close the rear flip-up window before attempting to close the swing gate (hard top models only).

### CAUTION!

Do not press on rear wiper blade when closing the rear flip-up window, as damage to the blade will result.

### WARNING!

Driving with the flip-up window open can allow poisonous exhaust gases into your vehicle. You and your passengers could be injured by these fumes. Keep the flip-up window closed when you are operating the vehicle.

### OCCUPANT RESTRAINTS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems:

- Three-point lap and shoulder belts for the driver and all passengers

### THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE 37

- Advanced Front Airbags for driver and front passenger
- Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Airbags (SAB) — if equipped
- An energy-absorbing steering column and steering wheel
- Knee bolsters/blockers for front seat occupants
- Front seat belts incorporate pretensioners to enhance occupant protection by managing occupant energy during an impact event — if equipped
- All seat belt systems (except the driver's) include Automatic Locking Retractors (ALRs), which lock the seat belt webbing into position by extending the belt all the way out and then adjusting the belt to the desired length to restrain a child seat or secure a large item in a seat — if equipped

### 38 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

If you will be carrying children too small for adult-sized seat belts, the seat belts or the Lower Anchors and Tether for Children (LATCH) feature also can be used to hold infant and child restraint systems. For more information on LATCH, see Lower Anchors and Tether for Children (LATCH).

**NOTE:** The Advanced Front Airbags have a multistage inflator design. This allows the airbag to have different rates of inflation based on the severity and type of collision.

**Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly, to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.**

#### **WARNING!**

**In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.**

Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of

ejection and the risk of injury caused by striking the inside of the vehicle. **Everyone in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.**

### Lap/Shoulder Belts

All seating positions in your vehicle are equipped with lap/shoulder belts. The belt webbing retractor is designed to lock during very sudden stops or collisions. This feature allows the shoulder part of the belt to move freely with you under normal conditions. However, in a collision the belt will lock and reduce the risk of you striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out.

#### WARNING!

- It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

*(Continued)*

#### WARNING! (Continued)

- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat using a seat belt properly.
- Wearing a seat belt incorrectly is dangerous. Seat belts are designed to go around the large bones of your body. These are the strongest parts of your body and take the forces of a collision the best. Wearing your belt in the wrong place could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of part of the belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.

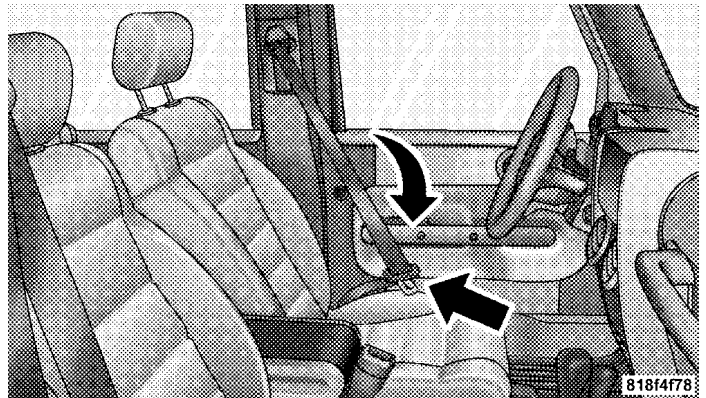
*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in a collision, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.

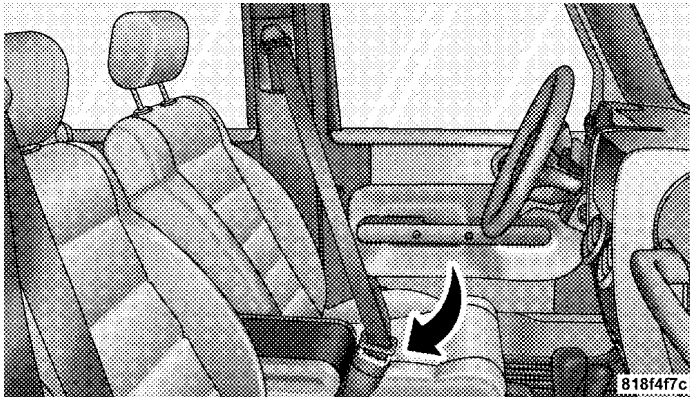
**Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions**

1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.
2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, next to your arm in the rear seat. Grasp the latch plate and pull out the belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the belt to go around your lap.



**Pulling Out the Lap/Shoulder Belt Latch Plate**

3. When the belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”



Inserting Latch Plate into Buckle

### WARNING!

- A belt that is buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.
- A belt that is loose will not protect you properly. In a sudden stop you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.
- A belt that is worn under your arm is dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck injury. A belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren't as strong as shoulder bones. Wear the belt over your shoulder so that the strongest bones will take the force in a collision.

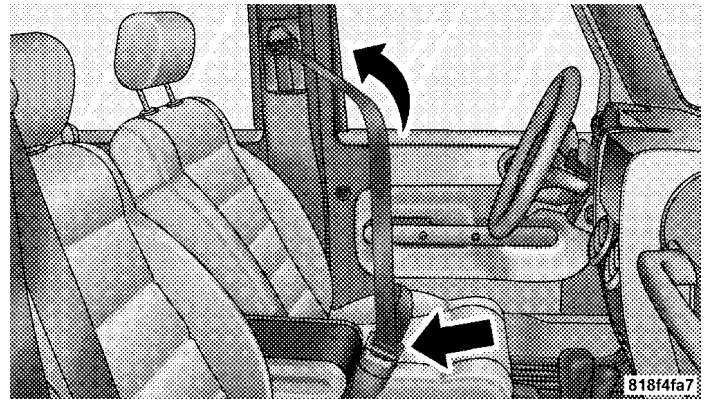
*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- A shoulder belt placed behind you will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.

4. Position the lap belt across your thighs, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug belt reduces the risk of sliding under the belt in a collision.

**NOTE:** The Seat Belt Reminder Light will remain on until the driver's seat belt is buckled.



**Removing Slack from Belt**



**WARNING!**

- A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of internal injury in a collision. The belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap belt as low as possible and keep it snug.
- A twisted belt cannot do its job as well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt is straight. If you cannot straighten a belt in your vehicle, take it to your authorized dealer immediately and have it fixed.

5. Position the shoulder belt on your chest so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the belt.

6. To release the belt, push the red button on the buckle. The belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the belt to retract fully.

**WARNING!**

A frayed or torn belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.).



### Rear Center Lap/Shoulder Belt Retractor Lockout (Four-Door Models Only)

This feature is designed to lock the retractor whenever the 60% rear seatback is not fully latched. This prevents someone from wearing the rear center lap/shoulder belt when the rear seatback is not fully latched.

#### NOTE:

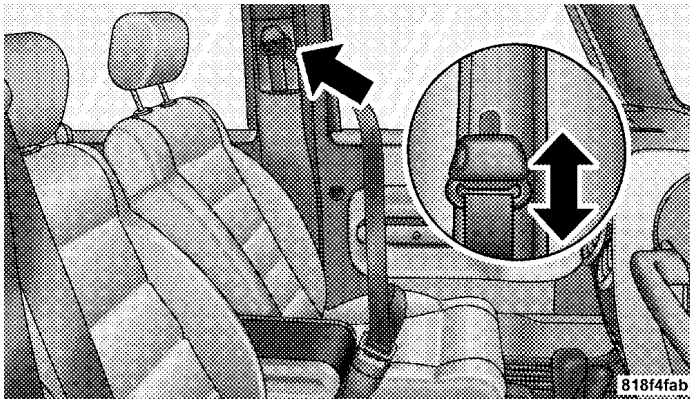
- If the rear center lap/shoulder belt cannot be pulled out, check that the rear seatback is fully latched.
- If the rear seatback is properly latched and the rear center lap/shoulder belt still cannot be pulled out, the Automatic-Locking Retractor (ALR) system may be activated. To reset this feature you must let all of the belt webbing return into the retractor. You will not be able to pull out more webbing until all of the webbing has been returned back into the retractor.

#### WARNING!

**The rear center lap/shoulder belt is equipped with a lock-out feature to ensure that the rear seatback is in the fully upright and locked position when occupied. If the rear seatback is not fully upright and locked and the rear center lap/shoulder belt can be pulled out of the retractor, the vehicle should immediately be taken to your authorized dealer for service. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious or fatal injury.**

### Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

In the front seat positions, the shoulder belt anchorage can be adjusted upward or downward to position the belt away from your neck. Push in on the anchorage near your outside shoulder and slide it up or down to reach the position that serves you best.



Adjusting Upper Shoulder Belt

### WARNING!

Position the shoulder belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

As a guide, if you are shorter than average, you will prefer a lower position, and if you are taller than average, you will prefer a higher position. When you release the anchorage, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in position.

### **Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) Mode — If Equipped**

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The Automatic Locking Mode is available on all passenger-seating positions with a combination lap/shoulder belt.

#### **When To Use The Automatic Locking Mode**

Use the Automatic Locking Mode anytime a child safety seat is installed in a seating position that has a belt with this feature. Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seat.

#### **How To Engage The Automatic Locking Mode**

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is extracted.

3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the Automatic Locking Mode.

#### **How To Disengage The Automatic Locking Mode**

Unbuckle the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the Automatic Locking Mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

#### **Seat Belts In Passenger Seating Positions**

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) which are used to secure a child restraint system. For additional information refer to "Installing Child Restraints Using the Vehicle Seat Belt" under the "Child Restraints" section. The chart below defines the type of feature for each seating position.

|            | Left | Center | Right |
|------------|------|--------|-------|
| First Row  |      |        | ALR   |
| Second Row | ALR  | ALR    | ALR   |
| Third Row  |      |        |       |

If the passenger seating position is equipped with an ALR and is being used for normal usage:

Only pull the belt webbing out far enough to comfortably wrap around the occupants mid-section so as to not activate the ALR. If the ALR is activated you will hear a ratcheting sound as the belt retracts. Allow the webbing to retract completely in this case and then carefully pull out only the amount of webbing necessary to comfortably wrap around the occupants mid-section. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."

**Seat Belt Pretensioners — If Equipped**

The seat belts for both front seating positions may be equipped with pretensioning devices that are designed to

remove slack from the seat belt in the event of a collision. These devices improve the performance of the seat belt by assuring that the belt is tight about the occupant early in a collision. Pretensioners work for all size occupants, including those in child restraints.

**NOTE:** These devices are not a substitute for proper seat belt placement by the occupant. The seat belt still must be worn snugly and positioned properly.

The pretensioners are triggered by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC). Like the airbags, the pretensioners are single use items. A deployed pretensioner or a deployed airbag must be replaced immediately.

**Enhanced Seat Belt Use Reminder System (BeltAlert®)**

If the driver's or front passenger's (if equipped with belt alert) seat belt has not been buckled within 60 seconds of starting the vehicle and if the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), the Enhanced Warning System

#### 48 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

(BeltAlert®) will alert the driver or front passenger to buckle the seat belt. The driver should also instruct all other occupants to buckle their seat belts. Once the warning is triggered, BeltAlert® will continue to chime and flash the Seat Belt Reminder Light for 96 seconds or until the driver's or front passenger's seat belt is buckled. BeltAlert® will be reactivated if the driver's or passenger's seat belt is unbuckled for more than 10 seconds and the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h).

For front passenger seats equipped with BeltAlert, your vehicle is equipped to detect when it is occupied. The BeltAlert® warning system is not activated when the front passenger seat is unoccupied. The BeltAlert® warning system may be triggered when an animal or heavy object is on the front passenger seat or when the seat is folded flat (if equipped). It is recommended that pets be restrained in the rear seat in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts and cargo is properly stowed.

BeltAlert® can be enabled or disabled by your authorized dealer or by following these steps:

**NOTE:** The following steps must occur within the first 60 seconds of the ignition switch being turned to the ON or START position. Chrysler Group LLC does not recommend deactivating BeltAlert®.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position, and buckle the driver's seat belt.
2. Turn the ignition key to the ACC/ON position (do not start the engine), and wait for the Seat Belt Reminder Light to turn off.
3. Within 60 seconds of starting the vehicle, unbuckle and then re-buckle the driver's seat belt at least three times within 10 seconds, ending with the seat belt buckled.

4. Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. A single chime will sound to signify that you have successfully completed the programming.

BeltAlert® can be reactivated by repeating this procedure.

**NOTE:** Although BeltAlert® has been deactivated, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will continue to illuminate while the driver's seat belt remains unfastened.

### Seat Belts And Pregnant Women

We recommend that pregnant women use seat belts throughout their pregnancy. Keeping the mother safe is the best way to keep the baby safe.

Pregnant women should wear the lap part of the belt across the thighs and as snug across the hips as possible. Keep the belt low so that it does not come across the abdomen. That way the strong bones of the hips will take the force if there is a collision.

### Seat Belt Extender

If a seat belt is too short, even when fully extended and when the adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage (if equipped) is in its lowest position, your authorized dealer can provide you with a seat belt extender. This extender should be used only if the existing belt is not long enough. When it is not required, remove the extender and store it.

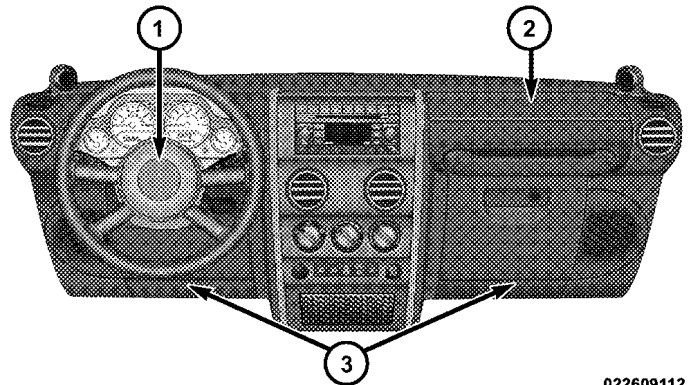
#### WARNING!

Using a seat belt extender when not needed can increase the risk of injury in a collision. Only use when the seat belt is not long enough when it is worn low and snug, and in the recommended seating positions. Remove and stow the seat belt extender when not needed.

## 50 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

### Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) — Airbags

This vehicle has Advanced Front Airbags for both the driver and right front passenger as a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver's Advanced Front Airbag is mounted in the steering wheel. The front passenger airbag is mounted in the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The letters SRS are embossed on the airbag covers.



022609112

### Advanced Front Airbag and Knee Bolster Locations

- 1 — Driver Advanced Front Airbag
- 2 — Passenger Advanced Front Airbag
- 3 — Knee Bolster

**NOTE:** These airbags are certified to the new Federal regulations for Advanced Airbags.

The Advanced Front Airbags have a multistage inflator design. This allows the airbag to have different rates of inflation that are based on the severity and type of collision.

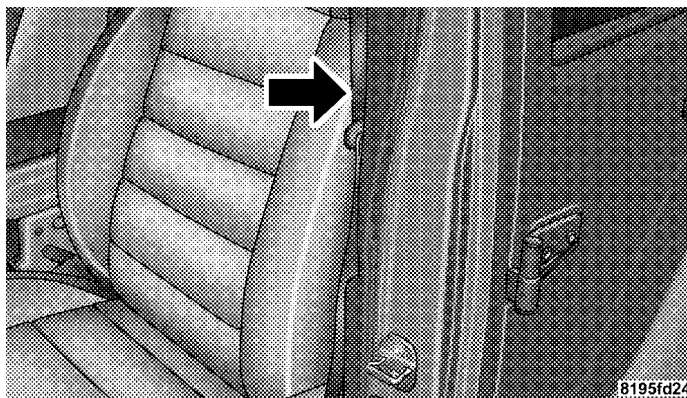
This vehicle may be equipped with driver and/or front passenger seat track position sensors that may adjust the inflation rate of the Advanced Front Airbags based upon seat position.

This vehicle may be equipped with a driver and/or front passenger seat belt buckle switch that detects whether the driver or front passenger seat belt is fastened. The seat belt buckle switch may adjust the inflation rate of the Advanced Front Airbags.

**Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Airbags (SAB) — If Equipped**

Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Airbags provide enhanced protection to help protect an occupant during a

side impact. The Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Airbag is marked with an airbag label sewn into the out-board side of the front seats.



**Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Airbag Location**

**NOTE:** Airbag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim; but they will open during airbag deployment.



**WARNING!**

- No objects should be placed over or near the airbag on the instrument panel, because any such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the airbag to inflate.
- Do not put anything on or around the Advanced Front Airbag covers or attempt to manually open them. You may damage the airbags and you could be injured because the airbags may no longer be functional. These protective covers for the airbag cushions are designed to open only when the airbags are inflating.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- If your vehicle is equipped with side airbags, do not use accessory seat covers or place objects between you and the side airbags; the performance could be adversely affected and/or objects could be pushed into you, causing serious injury.
- If your vehicle is equipped with Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Airbags (SAB), do not attach cupholders or any other objects on or around the door. The inflating side airbag could drive the objects into occupants, causing serious injury.
- Do not cover or place items on the airbag covers. These items may cause serious injury during inflation.
- Do not store or place items under the front seats. You may damage the airbag wiring harnesses.

The Advanced Front Airbags have a multistage inflator design. This allows the airbag to have different rates of inflation that are based on the severity and type of collision. Along with the seat belts, Advanced Front Airbags work with the instrument panel knee bolsters to provide improved protection for the driver and front passenger. Side airbags also work with seat belts to improve occupant protection.

Here are some simple steps you can take to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying airbag:

1. Children 12 years and under should always ride buckled up in a rear seat.

Infants in rear facing child restraints should **NEVER** ride in the front seat of a vehicle with a passenger airbag. An airbag deployment could cause severe injury or death to infants in that position.

Children that are not big enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt should be secured in the rear seat, in a child restraint or belt-positioning booster seat. Older children who do not use child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats should ride properly buckled up in the rear seat. Never allow children to slide the shoulder belt behind them or under their arm.

If a child from 1 to 12 years old (not in a rear facing child seat) must ride in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and use the proper child restraint. (Refer to "Child Restraints")

You should read the instructions provided with your child restraint to make sure that you are using it properly.

2. All occupants should ALWAYS use their lap and shoulder belts properly.

#### 54 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

3. The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the Advanced Front Airbags room to inflate.

4. Do not lean against the door or window. If your vehicle has side airbags, and deployment occurs, the side airbags will inflate forcefully into the space between you and the door.

5. If the airbag system in this vehicle needs to be modified to accommodate a disabled person, contact the Customer Center. Phone numbers are provided under "If You Need Assistance".

#### WARNING!

- **Relying on the airbags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The airbags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, the airbags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have airbags.**
- **Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during airbag deployment could cause serious injury, including death. Airbags need room to inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **If the vehicle has side airbags, they also need room to inflate. Do not lean against the door or window. Sit upright in the center of the seat.**

**NOTE:** After any collision, the vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer immediately.

### Airbag System Components

Your vehicle may be equipped with the following airbag system components:

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Airbag Warning Light
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolster
- Driver Advanced Front Airbag
- Passenger Advanced Front Airbag
- Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Airbags (SAB)
- Front and Side Impact Sensors
- Front Seat Belt Pretensioners, Seat Belt Buckle Switch, and Seat Track Position Sensors

- Supplemental Active Head Restraint for Driver and Front Passenger

### Airbag Deployment Sensors and Controls

#### *Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)*

The **ORC** is part of a Federally regulated safety system required for this vehicle.

The ORC determines if deployment of the front and/or side airbags is required in a frontal or side collision. Based on the impact sensors signals, a central electronic ORC deploys the Advanced Front Airbags, side airbags — if equipped, and front seat belt pretensioners — if equipped, as required, depending on each type of impact. Advanced Front Airbags are designed to provide additional protection by supplementing the seat belts in certain frontal collisions depending on the severity and type of collision. Advanced Front Airbags are not expected to reduce the risk of injury in rear, side, or rollover collisions.

## 56 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

The Advanced Front Airbags will not deploy in all frontal collisions, including some that may produce substantial vehicle damage — for example, some pole collisions, truck underrides, and angle offset collisions. On the other hand, depending on the type and location of impact, Advanced Front Airbags may deploy in crashes with little vehicle front-end damage but that produce a severe initial deceleration.

The side airbags will not deploy in all side collisions. Side airbag deployment will depend on the severity and type of collision.

Because airbag sensors measure vehicle deceleration over time, vehicle speed and damage by themselves are not good indicators of whether or not an airbag should have deployed.

Seat belts are necessary for your protection in all crashes, and also are needed to help keep you in position, away from an inflating airbag.

The ORC also monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the airbag system whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON positions. If the key is in the LOCK position, in the ACC position, or not in the ignition, the airbag system is not on and the airbags will not inflate.

The ORC contains a backup power supply system that may deploy the airbags even if the battery loses power or it becomes disconnected prior to deployment.



- Also, the ORC turns on the Airbag Warning Light for four to eight seconds for a self-check when the ignition is first turned on.

After the self-check, the Airbag Warning Light will turn off. If the ORC detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the Airbag Warning Light either momentarily or continuously. A single chime will sound if the light comes on again after initial startup.

It also includes diagnostics that will illuminate the instrument cluster Airbag Warning Light if a malfunction is noted that could affect the airbag system. The diagnostics also record the nature of the malfunction.

**WARNING!**

**Ignoring the Airbag Warning Light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the airbags to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on, stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have the airbag system checked immediately.**

- The **Driver and Passenger Airbag Inflator Units** are located in the center of the steering wheel and the right side of the instrument panel. When the ORC detects a collision requiring the Advanced Front Airbags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of non-toxic gas is generated to inflate the Advanced Front Airbags.

**THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE 57**

Different airbag inflation rates are possible, based on the collision type and severity. The steering wheel hub trim cover and the upper right side of the instrument panel separate and fold out of the way as the airbags inflate to their full size. The airbags fully inflate in about 50 to 70 milliseconds. This is about half of the time it takes to blink your eyes. The airbags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger.

The Advanced Front Airbag gas is vented through the vent holes in the sides of the airbag. In this way, the airbags do not interfere with your control of the vehicle.

- The **Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Airbags Inflator Units (If Equipped)** are designed to activate only in certain side collisions.

## 58 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

The ORC determines if a side collision requires the side airbags to inflate based on the severity and type of collision.

Based on the severity and type of collision, the side airbag inflator on the crash side of the vehicle is triggered, releasing a quantity of non-toxic gas. The inflating side airbag exits through the seat seam into the space between the occupant and the door. The side airbags fully inflate in about 10 milliseconds. The side airbag moves at a very high speed and with such a high force, that it could injure you if you are not seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the side airbag inflates. This especially applies to children.

- The **Knee Impact Bolsters** help protect the knees of the driver and the front passenger, and position front occupants for the best interaction with the Advanced Front Airbag.

### **Enhanced Accident Response System**

In the event of an impact causing airbag deployment, if the communication network remains intact, and the power remains intact, depending on the nature of the event the ORC will determine whether to have the Enhanced Accident Response System perform the following functions:

- Cut off fuel to the engine.
- Flash hazard lights as long as the battery has power or until the ignition key is turned off.
- Turn on the interior lights, which remain on as long as the battery has power or until the ignition key is removed.
- Unlock the doors automatically.

### **If a Deployment Occurs**

The front airbags are designed to deflate immediately after deployment.

**NOTE:** Front and/or side airbags will not deploy in all collisions. This does not mean something is wrong with the airbag system.

If you do have a collision which deploys the airbags, any or all of the following may occur:

- The nylon airbag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the driver and front passenger as the airbags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a carpet or gymnasium floor. They are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately.
- As the airbags deflate you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the non-toxic gas used for

airbag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.

- Do not drive your vehicle after the airbags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the airbags will not be in place to protect you.

**WARNING!**

**Deployed airbags and seat belt pretensioners cannot protect you in another collision. Have the airbags, seat belt pretensioner, and seat belt retractor assembly replaced by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.**



### Maintaining Your Airbag System

**WARNING!**

- **Modifications to any part of the airbag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the airbag system is not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper right side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper or vehicle body structure.**
- **You need proper knee impact protection in a collision. Do not mount or locate any aftermarket equipment on or behind the knee bolsters.**
- **It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the airbag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has an airbag system.**

### Airbag Warning Light

You will want to have the airbag system ready to inflate for your protection in an impact. The airbag system is designed to be maintenance free. If any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the system promptly:

- Does not come on during the four to eight seconds after the ignition switch is first turned on.
- Remains on after the four to eight second interval.
- Comes on for any period of time while driving.

### Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to

vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**NOTE:** EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g. name, gender, age, and crash location) are

recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

### **Child Restraints**

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up at all times, including babies and children. Every state in the United States and all Canadian provinces require that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it.

## 62 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

Children 12 years and under should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats, rather than in the front.

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult safety belt. Always check the child seat owner's manual to ensure you have the correct seat for your child. Use the restraint that is correct for your child.

### **WARNING!**

**In a collision, an unrestrained child, even a tiny baby, can become a projectile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap could become so great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are. The child and others could be badly injured. Any child riding in your vehicle should be in a proper restraint for the child's size.**

### **Infants and Child Restraints**

- Safety experts recommend that children ride rearward-facing in the vehicle until they are at least one-year old **and** weigh at least 20 lbs (9 kg). Two types of child restraints can be used rearward-facing: infant carriers and "convertible" child seats.

- The infant carrier is only used rearward-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children who weigh up to about 20 lbs (9 kg). “Convertible” child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rearward-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rearward-facing by children who weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) but are less than one year old. Both types of child restraints are held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt or the LATCH child restraint anchorage system (Refer to LATCH — Child Seat Anchorage System.)
- Rearward-facing child seats must **NEVER** be used in the front seat of a vehicle with the front passenger airbag unless the airbag is turned off. An airbag deployment could cause severe injury or death to infants in this position.

**WARNING!**

- **Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer’s directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**
- **A rearward-facing infant restraint should only be used in a rear seat. A rearward-facing infant restraint in the front seat may be struck by a deploying passenger airbag which may cause severe or fatal injury to the infant.**

## 64 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

Here are some tips for getting the most out of your child restraint:

- Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. The manufacturer also recommends that you try a child restraint in the vehicle seats where you will use it before you buy it.
- The restraint must be appropriate for your child's weight and height. Check the label on the restraint for weight and height limits.
- Carefully follow the instructions that come with the restraint. If you install the restraint improperly, it may not work when you need it.
- The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with either an Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) or a cinching latch plate or both. Both types of seat belts are designed to keep the lap portion of the seat belt tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. The ALR will make a ratcheting noise if you extract the entire belt from the retractor and then allow the belt to retract into the retractor. For additional information on ALR, refer to "Automatic Locking Mode".
- In the rear seat, you may have trouble tightening the lap/shoulder belt on the child restraint because the buckle or latch plate is too close to the belt path opening on the restraint. Disconnect the latch plate from the buckle and twist the short buckle-end belt several times to shorten it. Insert the latch plate into the buckle with the release button facing out.
- If the belt still cannot be tightened, or if pulling and pushing on the restraint loosens the belt, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle, turn the buckle around, and insert the latch plate into the buckle again. If you still cannot make the child restraint secure, try a different seating position.

- Buckle the child into the restraint exactly as the manufacturer's instructions tell you.
- When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or collision, it could strike the occupants or seatbacks and cause serious personal injury.

#### **Older Children and Child Restraints**

Children who weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) and who are older than one year can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who weigh 20 to 40 lbs (9 to 18 kg), and who are older than one year. These child seats are also held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt or the LATCH child restraint anchorage system (Refer to LATCH — Child Seat Anchorage System).

The belt-positioning booster seat is for children weighing more than 40 lbs (18 kg), but who are still too small to fit the vehicle's seat belts properly. If the child cannot sit with knees bent over the vehicle's seat cushion while the child's back is against the seatback, they should use a belt-positioning booster seat. The child and belt-positioning booster seat are held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt.

#### **Children Too Large for Booster Seats**

Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seatback, should use the lap/shoulder belt in a rear seat.

- Make sure that the child is upright in the seat.
- The lap portion should be low on the hips and as snug as possible.

## 66 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

- Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position.
- If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle. Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind the back.

**NOTE:** For additional information, refer to [www.seatcheck.org](http://www.seatcheck.org) or call 1-866-SEATCHECK. Canadian residents, should refer to Transport Canada's website for additional information. <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/safedrivers/childsafety/index.htm>

### Installing the Child Restraint System

We urge you to carefully follow the directions of the manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Many, but not all, restraint systems will be equipped with separate straps on each side, with each having a hook or connector for attachment to the lower anchorage, and a

means for adjusting the tension of the strap. Forward-facing toddler restraints and some rearward-facing infant restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap having a hook for attachment to the tether strap anchorage, and a means for adjusting the tension of the strap.

In general, you will first loosen the adjusters on the lower and tether straps so that you can more easily attach the hook or connector to the lower and tether anchorages. The tether strap should be routed under the center of the head restraint and attached to the tether anchor on the rear of the seatback. Then tighten all three straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat.

Not all child restraint systems will be installed as we have described here. Again, carefully follow the instructions that come with the child restraint system.

**NOTE:** If your child restraint seat is not LATCH-compatible, install the restraint using the vehicle seat belts.

**WARNING!**

**An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to increased head motion and possible injury to the child. Use only the anchor position directly behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap.**

**LATCH — Child Seat Anchorage System (Lower Anchors and Tether for Children)**

Your vehicle's rear seat is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH. The LATCH system provides for the installation of the child restraint without using the vehicle's seat belts, instead securing

the child restraint using lower anchorages and upper tether straps from the child restraint to the vehicle structure.

LATCH-compatible child restraint systems are now available. However, because the lower anchorages are to be introduced over a period of years, child restraint systems having attachments for those anchorages will continue to also have features for installation using the vehicle's seat belts. Child restraints having tether straps and hooks for connection to the top tether anchorages, have been available for some time. For some older child restraints, many child restraint manufacturers offer add-on tether strap kits or retro-fit kits. You are urged to take advantage of all the available attachments provided with your child restraint in any vehicle.



## 68 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

**NOTE:** When using the LATCH attaching system to install a child restraint, please ensure that all seat belts not being used for occupant restraints are stowed and out of reach of children. It is recommended that before installing the child restraint, buckle the seat belt so the seat belt is tucked behind the child restraint and out of reach. If the buckled seat belt interferes with the child restraint installation, instead of tucking the seat belt behind the child restraint, route the seat belt through the child restraint belt path and then buckle it. This should stow the seat belt out of the reach of an inquisitive child. Remind all children in the vehicle that the seat belts are not toys and should not be played with, and never leave an unattended child in the vehicle.

All three rear seating positions of the four door model have lower anchorages that are capable of accommodating LATCH-compatible child seats having flexible, webbing-mounted lower attachments. The two door model can accommodate flexible LATCH-compatible

child seats in the two outboard seating positions only. The two door model does not have a center seating position. Child seats with fixed lower attachments must be installed in the outboard positions only in both the two door and four door models. Regardless of the specific type of lower attachment, NEVER install LATCH-compatible child seats such that two seats share a common lower anchorage.

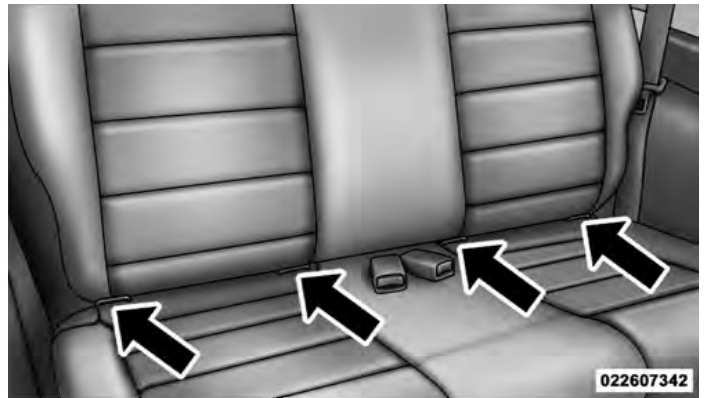
If you are installing LATCH-compatible child restraints in adjacent rear seating positions, you can use the LATCH anchors or the vehicle's seat belt for the outboard position, but you must use the vehicle's seat belt at the center position. If your child restraints are not LATCH-compatible, you can only install the child restraints using the vehicle's seat belts. Please refer to "Installing Child Restraints Using the Vehicle Seat Belt" for typical installation instructions.

### Installing the LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint System

We urge you to carefully follow the directions of the manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Not all child restraint systems will be installed as described here. Again, carefully follow the installation instructions that were provided with the child restraint system.

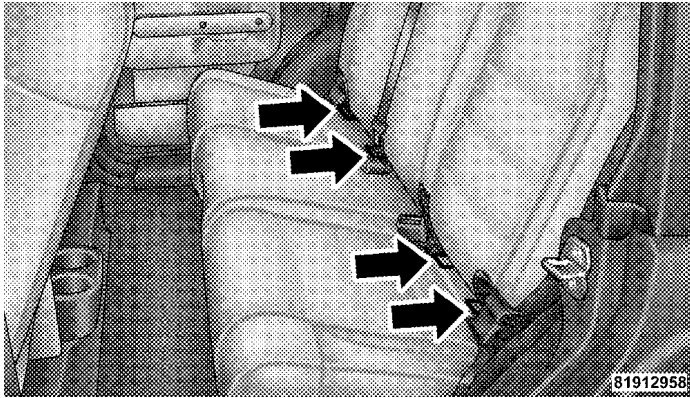


The rear seat lower anchorages are round bars, located at the rear of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback, and are visible when you lean into the rear seat to install the child restraint. You will easily feel them if you run your finger along the intersection of the seatback and seat cushion surfaces.



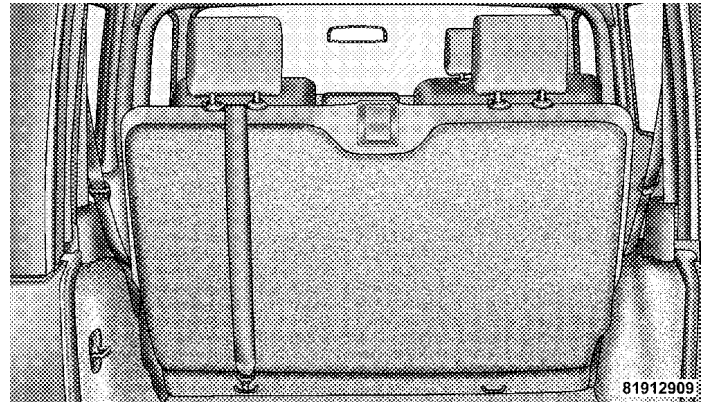
Latch Anchorages (Two-Door Models)

70 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

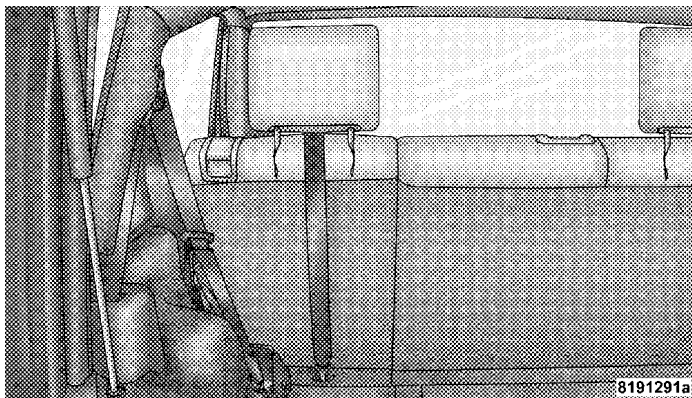


Latch Anchorages (Four-Door Models)

In addition, there are tether strap anchorages behind each rear seating position located on the back of the seat.



Tether Strap Mounting (Two-Door Models)



#### Tether Strap Mounting (Four-Door Models)

Many, but not all restraint systems will be equipped with separate straps on each side, with each having a hook or connector for attachment to the lower anchorage and a means for adjusting the tension of the strap. Forward-facing toddler restraints and some rear-facing infant restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap having

a hook for attachment to the tether strap anchorage, and a means for adjusting the tension of the strap.

You will first loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and on the tether strap so that you can more easily attach the hooks or connectors to the vehicle anchorages. Next, attach the lower hooks or connectors over the top of the anchorage bars, pushing aside the seat cover material. Then, locate the tether anchorage directly behind the seat where you are placing the child restraint and attach the tether strap to the anchorage, being careful to route the tether strap to provide the most direct path between the anchor and the child restraint. Finally, tighten all three straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat, removing slack in the straps according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

**WARNING!**

**Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**

**Installing Child Restraints Using the Vehicle Seat Belt**

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with an Automatic Locking Retractor to secure a Child Restraint System (CRS). These types of seat belts are designed to keep the lap portion of the seat belt tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. The ALR will make a ratcheting noise if you extract the entire belt from the retractor and then allow the belt to retract into the retractor. For additional information on ALR, refer to "Automatic Locking Mode"

description under "Seat Belts in Passenger Seating Positions" section. The chart below defines the seating positions with an Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) or a cinching latch plate.

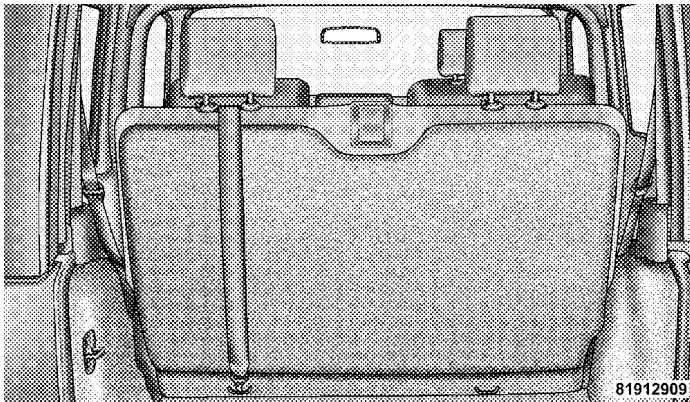
|            | Left     | Center   | Right    |
|------------|----------|----------|----------|
|            | CRS Lock | CRS Lock | CRS Lock |
| First Row  |          |          | ALR      |
| Second Row | ALR      | ALR      | ALR      |
| Third Row  |          |          |          |

Installing a Child Restraint with an ALR:

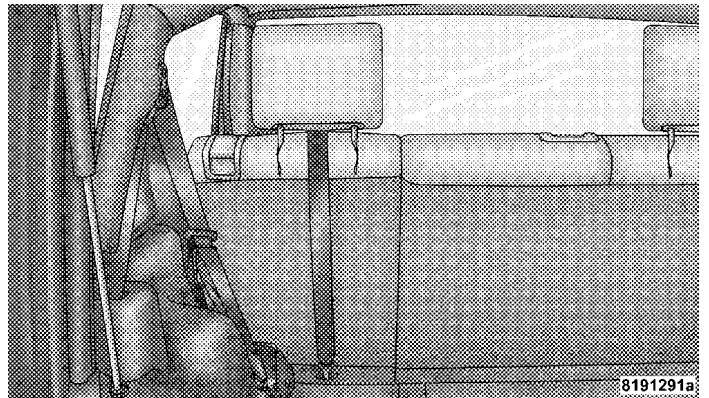
1. To install a child restraint with ALR, first, pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to route it through the belt path of the child restraint. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click." Next, extract all the seat belt webbing out of the retractor and then allow the belt to retract into the retractor. As the belt retracts, you will hear a ratcheting sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the Automatic Locking mode.

2. Finally, pull on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint. Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

To attach a Child Restraint tether strap:



**Tether Strap Mounting (Two-Door Models)**



**Tether Strap Mounting (Four-Door Models)**

Route the tether strap over the seatback and attach the hook to the tether anchor located on the back of the seat. For the outboard seating positions, route the tether under the head rest, and attach the hook to the tether anchor located on the back of the seat.



**WARNING!**

An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to increased head motion and possible injury to the child. Use only the anchor positions directly behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap.

**Vehicles With Rear Web Buckles That May Need To Be Twisted**

- In the rear seat, you may have trouble tightening the lap/shoulder belt on the child restraint because the buckle or latch plate is too close to the belt path opening on the restraint. Disconnect the latch plate from the buckle and twist the short buckle-end belt several times to shorten it. Insert the latch plate into the buckle with the release button facing out.

- If the belt still can't be tightened, or if pulling and pushing on the restraint loosens the belt, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle, turn the buckle around, and insert the latch plate into the buckle again. If you still can't make the child restraint secure, try a different seating position.

**Transporting Pets**

Airbags deploying in the front seat could harm your pet. An unrestrained pet will be thrown about and possibly injured, or injure a passenger during panic braking or in a collision.

Pets should be restrained in the rear seat in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts.

**ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS**

A long break-in period is not required for the engine and drivetrain (transmission and axle) in your vehicle.

Drive moderately during the first 300 miles (500 km). After the initial 60 miles (100 km), speeds up to 50 or 55 mph (80 or 90 km/h) are desirable.

While cruising, brief full-throttle acceleration within the limits of local traffic laws, contributes to a good break-in. Wide-open throttle acceleration in low gear can be detrimental and should be avoided.

The engine oil installed in the engine at the factory is a high-quality energy conserving type lubricant. Oil changes should be consistent with anticipated climate conditions under which vehicle operations will occur. For the recommended viscosity and quality grades refer to "Maintenance Procedures" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle". **NON-DETERGENT OR STRAIGHT MINERAL OILS MUST NEVER BE USED.**

A new engine may consume some oil during its first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation. This should be considered a normal part of the break-in and not interpreted as an indication of difficulty.

**SAFETY TIPS**

**Transporting Passengers**

**NEVER TRANSPORT PASSENGERS IN THE CARGO AREA.**

|   |
|---|
| <b>WARNING!</b>   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.</b></li> <li>• <b>It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.</b></li> </ul> |

*(Continued)*



**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

**Exhaust Gas****WARNING!**

Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing (CO) follow these safety tips:

Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.

If it is necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running, adjust your heating or cooling controls to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed.

If you are required to drive with the trunk/liftgate open, make sure that all windows are closed and the climate control BLOWER switch is set at high speed. DO NOT use the recirculation mode.

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is

damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

### **Safety Checks You Should Make Inside the Vehicle**

#### **Seat Belts**

Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Front seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision. Rear seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.). If there is any question regarding belt or retractor condition, replace the belt.

#### **Airbag Warning Light**

The light should come on and remain on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned ON. If the light is not lit during starting, see your authorized dealer. If the light stays on, flickers, or comes on while driving, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

#### **Defroster**

Check operation by selecting the defrost mode and place the blower control on high speed. You should be able to feel the air directed against the windshield. See your authorized dealer for service if your defroster is inoperable.

#### **Floor Mat Safety Information**

Always use floor mats designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that

## 78 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

### **WARNING!**

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

- Always make sure that floor mats are properly attached to the floor mat fasteners.
- Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

*(Continued)*

### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- Never put floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
- Check mounting of mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning.
- Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.
- If required, mounting posts must be properly installed, if not equipped from the factory.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or mounting can cause interference with the brake pedal and accelerator pedal operation causing loss of control of the vehicle.

**Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside the Vehicle****Tires**

Examine tires for excessive tread wear and uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass, or other objects lodged in the tread. Inspect the tread and sidewall for cuts and cracks. Check the wheel nuts for tightness. Check the tires (including spare) for proper pressure.

**Lights**

Have someone observe the operation of exterior lights while you work the controls. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

**Door Latches**

Check for positive closing, latching, and locking.

**Fluid Leaks**

Check area under vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, engine coolant, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if gasoline fumes are detected or if fuel, power steering fluid, or brake fluid leaks are suspected, the cause should be located and corrected immediately.



---

# UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

## CONTENTS

---

|   |     |   |     |
|---|-----|---|-----|
| ■ Mirrors . . . . .                       | 86  | □ Things You Should Know About Your Uconnect™ Phone . . . . . | 108 |
| □ Inside Day/Night Mirror . . . . .       | 86  | □ General Information . . . . .                               | 119 |
| □ Outside Mirrors . . . . .               | 87  | ■ Voice Command — If Equipped . . . . .                       | 119 |
| □ Vanity Mirrors . . . . .                | 88  | □ Voice Command System Operation . . . . .                    | 119 |
| ■ Uconnect™ Phone — If Equipped . . . . . | 88  | □ Commands . . . . .  | 121 |
| □ Operation . . . . .                     | 90  | □ Voice Training . . . . .                                    | 124 |
| □ Phone Call Features . . . . .           | 98  | ■ Seats . . . . .   | 124 |
| □ Uconnect™ Phone Features . . . . .      | 101 | □ Front Seat Adjustment . . . . .                             | 125 |
| □ Advanced Phone Connectivity . . . . .   | 106 |   |     |

## 82 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

|   |     |  |     |
|---|-----|--|-----|
| □ Manual Seat Height Adjustment<br>— If Equipped . . . . .      | 126 | ■ Lights . . . . .                               | 136 |
| □ Front Seatback Recline . . . . .                              | 126 | □ Multifunction Lever . . . . .                  | 136 |
| □ Front Easy Entry Seats — Two Door<br>Models . . . . .         | 127 | □ Headlights And Parking Lights . . . . .        | 136 |
| □ Head Restraints . . . . .                                     | 128 | □ Turn Signals . . . . .                         | 137 |
| □ Fold And Tumble Rear Seat — Two Door<br>Models . . . . .      | 130 | □ Lane Change Assist . . . . .                   | 138 |
| □ Removing The Rear Seat — Two Door<br>Models . . . . .         | 132 | □ Lights-On Reminder . . . . .                   | 138 |
| □ Replacing The Rear Seat — Two Door<br>Models . . . . .        | 133 | □ High/Low Beam Switch . . . . .                 | 138 |
| □ 60/40 Split Folding Rear Seat — Four Door<br>Models . . . . . | 133 | □ Flash-To-Pass . . . . .                        | 138 |
| ■ To Open And Close The Hood . . . . .                          | 135 | □ Front Fog Lights — If Equipped . . . . .       | 138 |
|   |     | □ Instrument Panel Dimmer . . . . .              | 139 |
|   |     | □ Daytime Running Lights — If Equipped . . . . . | 139 |
|   |     | □ Interior Lights . . . . .                      | 140 |

|  |     |   |           |
|--|-----|---|-----------|
| <hr/>  |     | <b>UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE</b> | <b>83</b> |
| ■ Windshield Wipers And Washers . . . . .          | 141 | □ Manual Transmission . . . . .                   | 148       |
| □ Windshield Wiper Operation . . . . .             | 142 | □ To Accelerate For Passing . . . . .             | 149       |
| □ Intermittent Wiper System . . . . .              | 143 | ■ Electrical Power Outlet . . . . .               | 150       |
| □ Windshield Washers . . . . .                     | 143 | ■ Cupholders . . . . .                            | 152       |
| □ Mist Feature . . . . .                           | 144 | □ Front Cupholders . . . . .                      | 152       |
| ■ Tilt Steering Column . . . . .                   | 145 | □ Rear Cupholders . . . . .                       | 153       |
| ■ Electronic Speed Control — If Equipped . . . . . | 146 | ■ Storage . . . . .                               | 153       |
| □ To Activate . . . . .                            | 147 | □ Console Storage Compartment . . . . .           | 153       |
| □ To Set a Desired Speed . . . . .                 | 147 | □ Rear Storage Compartment . . . . .              | 154       |
| □ To Deactivate . . . . .                          | 147 | ■ Dual Top — If Equipped . . . . .                | 154       |
| □ To Resume Speed . . . . .                        | 147 | □ Removing The Soft Top . . . . .                 | 155       |
| □ To Vary The Speed Setting . . . . .              | 148 | □ Installing The Soft Top . . . . .               | 157       |



**84 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE**

|  |     |   |     |
|--|-----|---|-----|
| ■ Freedom Top™ Three-Piece Modular Hard Top<br>— If Equipped . . . . . | 160 | □ Door Frame Removal — Four-Door Models . .               | 175 |
| □ Front Panel(s) Removal . . . . .                                     | 161 | □ Door Frame Installation — Four-Door<br>Models . . . . . | 178 |
| □ Freedom Top™ Storage Bag . . . . .                                   | 163 | ■ Soft Top — Two Door Models . . . . .                    | 180 |
| □ Front Panel(s) Installation . . . . .                                | 167 | □ Quick Steps To Lowering The Soft Top . . . . .          | 182 |
| □ Front Panel(s) Installation With Rear Hard<br>Top Removed . . . . .  | 167 | □ Quick Steps To Raising The Soft Top . . . . .           | 184 |
| □ Rear Hard Top Removal . . . . .                                      | 168 | □ Lowering The Soft Top . . . . .                         | 187 |
| □ Rear Hard Top Installation . . . . .                                 | 171 | □ Raising The Soft Top . . . . .                          | 195 |
| ■ Door Frame . . . . .   | 171 | ■ Soft Top (Four-Door Models) . . . . .                   | 203 |
| □ Door Frame Removal — Two-Door Models . .                             | 172 | □ Quick Steps For Lowering The Soft Top . . . . .         | 207 |
| □ Door Frame Installation — Two-Door<br>Models . . . . .               | 174 | □ Quick Steps For Raising The Soft Top . . . . .          | 210 |
|  |     | □ Folding Down The Soft Top . . . . .                     | 213 |
|  |     | □ Putting Up The Soft Top . . . . .                       | 222 |

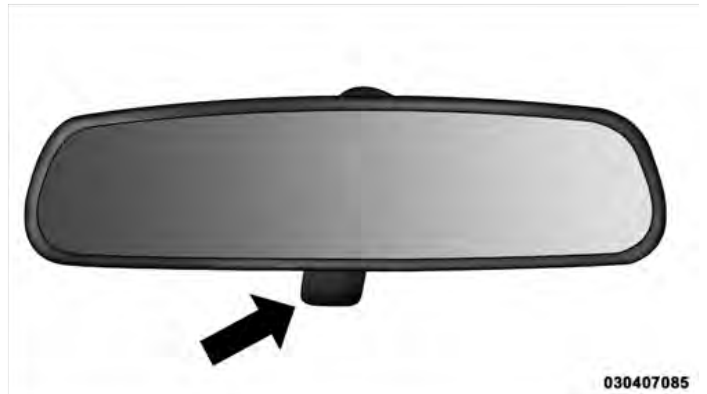
|  |     |  |
|--|-----|--|
| <hr/>  |     | <b>UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE 85</b>   |
| ■ Sunrider® (Two-Door Models) — If Equipped . . . . .  | 231 | □ Closing The Sunrider® . . . . . 237                  |
| □ Opening The Sunrider® . . . . .                      | 232 | ■ Rear Window Features — Hard Top Only . . . . . 238   |
| □ Closing The Sunrider® . . . . .                      | 234 | □ Rear Window Wiper/Washer — If Equipped . . . . . 238 |
| ■ Sunrider® (Four-Door Models) — If Equipped . . . . . | 234 | □ Rear Window Defroster — If Equipped . . . . . 239    |
| □ Opening The Sunrider® . . . . .                      | 235 |  |

## MIRRORS

### Inside Day/Night Mirror

A two-point pivot system allows for horizontal and vertical adjustment of the mirror. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

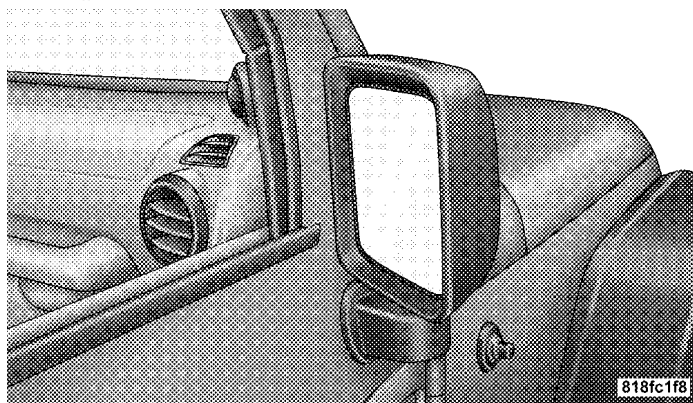
Headlight glare can be reduced by moving the small control under the mirror to the night position (toward the rear of the vehicle). The mirror should be adjusted while set in the day position (toward the windshield).



Adjusting Rearview Mirror

### Outside Mirrors

To receive maximum benefit, adjust the outside mirror(s) to center on the adjacent lane of traffic with a slight overlap of the view obtained on the inside mirror.



Outside Rearview Mirror

### WARNING!

Vehicles and other objects seen in the passenger side convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are. Relying too much on your passenger side mirror could cause you to collide with another vehicle or other object. Use your inside mirror when judging the size or distance of a vehicle seen in the passenger side mirror.

### Vanity Mirrors

Vanity mirrors are located on the sun visors. To use the mirrors, rotate the sun visor down and swing the mirror cover upward.



Vanity Mirror

### Uconnect™ Phone — IF EQUIPPED

Uconnect™ Phone is a voice-activated, hands-free, in-vehicle communications system. Uconnect™ Phone allows you to dial a phone number with your cellular phone using simple voice commands (e.g., "Call" ... "Mike" ... "Work" or "Dial" ... "248-555-1212"). Your cellular phone's audio is transmitted through your vehicle's audio system; the system will automatically mute your radio when using the Uconnect™ Phone.

**NOTE:** The Uconnect™ Phone requires a cellular phone equipped with the Bluetooth® "Hands-Free Profile," Version 0.96 or higher. See the Uconnect™ website for supported phones.

For Uconnect™ customer support, visit the following websites:

- [www.chrysler.com/uconnect](http://www.chrysler.com/uconnect)
- [www.dodge.com/uconnect](http://www.dodge.com/uconnect)

- [www.jeep.com/uconnect](http://www.jeep.com/uconnect)
- or call 1-877-855-8400

Uconnect™ Phone allows you to transfer calls between the system and your cellular phone as you enter or exit your vehicle and enables you to mute the system's microphone for private conversation.

The Uconnect™ Phone is driven through your Bluetooth® "Hands-Free Profile" cellular phone. Uconnect™ features Bluetooth® technology - the global standard that enables different electronic devices to connect to each other without wires or a docking station, so Uconnect™ Phone works no matter where you stow your cellular phone (be it your purse, pocket, or briefcase), as long as your phone is turned on and has been paired to the vehicle's Uconnect™ Phone. The Uconnect™ Phone allows up to seven cellular phones to be linked to the

system. Only one linked (or paired) cellular phone can be used with the system at a time. The system is available in English, Spanish, or French languages.



#### WARNING!

**Any voice commanded system should be used only in safe driving conditions following local laws and phone use. All attention should be kept on the roadway ahead. Failure to do so may result in an accident causing serious injury or death.**

3

#### *Uconnect™ Phone Button*

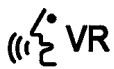


The radio will contain the two control buttons (Uconnect™ Phone  button and Voice Command  button) that will enable you to access the system. When you press the button you will hear the word Uconnect™ followed by a BEEP. The beep is your signal to give a command.

## 90 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

**NOTE:** The driver side upper windshield trim contains the microphone for the Uconnect™ Phone.

### *Voice Command Button*



Actual button location may vary with the radio. The individual buttons are described in the "Operation" section.

The Uconnect™ Phone can be used with any Hands-Free Profile certified Bluetooth® cellular phone. See the Uconnect™ website for supported phones. Refer to your cellular service provider or the phone manufacturer for details.

The Uconnect™ Phone is fully integrated with the vehicle's audio system. The volume of the Uconnect™ Phone can be adjusted either from the radio volume control knob or from the steering wheel radio control (right switch), if so equipped.

The radio display will be used for visual prompts from the Uconnect™ Phone such as "CELL" or caller ID on certain radios.

### **Operation**

Voice commands can be used to operate the Uconnect™ Phone and to navigate through the Uconnect™ Phone menu structure. Voice commands are required after most Uconnect™ Phone prompts. You will be prompted for a specific command and then guided through the available options.

- Prior to giving a voice command, one must wait for the beep, which follows the "Ready" prompt or another prompt.
- For certain operations, compound commands can be used. For example, instead of saying "Setup" and then "Phone Pairing," the following compound command can be said: "Setup Phone Pairing."



- For each feature explanation in this section, only the compound form of the voice command is given. You can also break the commands into parts and say each part of the command when you are asked for it. For example, you can use the compound form voice command "Phonebook New Entry," or you can break the compound form command into two voice commands: "Phonebook" and "New Entry." Please remember, the Uconnect™ Phone works best when you talk in a normal conversational tone, as if speaking to someone sitting a few feet/meters away from you.

#### **Voice Command Tree**

Refer to "Voice Tree" in this section.

#### **Help Command**

If you need assistance at any prompt, or if you want to know your options at any prompt, say "Help" following the beep. The Uconnect™ Phone will play all the options at any prompt if you ask for help.

To activate the Uconnect™ Phone from idle, simply press the  button and follow the audible prompts for directions. All Uconnect™ Phone sessions begin with a press of the  button on the radio control head.

#### **Cancel Command**

At any prompt, after the beep, you can say "Cancel" and you will be returned to the main menu. However, in a few instances the system will take you back to the previous menu.

#### **Pair (Link) Uconnect™ Phone to a Cellular Phone**


To begin using your Uconnect™ Phone, you must pair your compatible Bluetooth® enabled cellular phone.

To complete the pairing process, you will need to reference your cellular phone Owner's Manual. The Uconnect™ website may also provide detailed instructions for pairing.




## 92 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

The following are general phone to Uconnect™ Phone pairing instructions:

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone Pairing."
- When prompted, after the beep, say "Pair a Phone" and follow the audible prompts.
- You will be asked to say a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN), which you will later need to enter into your cellular phone. You can enter any four-digit PIN. You will not need to remember this PIN after the initial pairing process.
- For identification purposes, you will be prompted to give the Uconnect™ Phone a name for your cellular phone. Each cellular phone that is paired should be given a unique phone name.


- You will then be asked to give your cellular phone a priority level between one and seven, with one being the highest priority. You can pair up to seven cellular phones to your Uconnect™ Phone. However, at any given time, only one cellular phone can be in use, connected to your Uconnect™ System. The priority allows the Uconnect™ Phone to know which cellular phone to use if multiple cellular phones are in the vehicle at the same time. For example, if priority three and priority five phones are present in the vehicle, the Uconnect™ Phone will use the priority three cellular phone when you make a call. You can select to use a lower priority cellular phone at any time (refer to "Advanced Phone Connectivity" in this section).

### Dial by Saying a Number

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Dial."

- The system will prompt you to say the number you want to call.
- For example, you can say "234-567-8901".
- The Uconnect™ Phone will confirm the phone number and then dial. The number will appear in the display of certain radios.

#### Call by Saying a Name


- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Call."
- The system will prompt you to say the name of the person you want to call.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say the name of the person you want to call. For example, you can say "John Doe," where John Doe is a previously stored name entry in the Uconnect™ phonebook

or downloaded phonebook. To learn how to store a name in the phonebook, refer to "Add Names to Your Uconnect™ Phonebook," in the phonebook.

- The Uconnect™ system will confirm the name and then dial the corresponding phone number, which may appear in the display of certain radios.

#### Add Names to Your Uconnect™ Phonebook

**NOTE:** Adding names to the Uconnect™ Phonebook is recommended when the vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook New Entry."
- When prompted, say the name of the new entry. Use of long names helps the Voice Command and it is recommended. For example, say "Robert Smith" or "Robert" instead of "Bob."

- When prompted, enter the number designation (e.g., "Home," "Work," "Mobile," or "Pager"). This will allow you to store multiple numbers for each phonebook entry, if desired.
- When prompted, recite the phone number for the phonebook entry that you are adding.

After you are finished adding an entry into the phonebook, you will be given the opportunity to add more phone numbers to the current entry or to return to the main menu.

The Uconnect™ Phone will allow you to enter up to 32 names in the phonebook with each name having up to four associated phone numbers and designations. Each language has a separate 32-name phonebook accessible only in that language. In addition, if equipped and supported by your phone, Uconnect™ Phone automatically downloads your cellular phone's phonebook.


#### **Phonebook Download – Automatic Phonebook Transfer From Cellular Phone**

If equipped and specifically supported by your phone, Uconnect™ Phone automatically downloads names (text names) and number entries from the cellular phone's phonebook. Specific Bluetooth® Phones with Phone Book Access Profile may support this feature. See Uconnect™ website for supported phones.

- To call a name from downloaded (or Uconnect™) Phonebook, follow the procedure in "Call by Saying a Name" section.
- Automatic download and update, if supported, begins as soon as the Bluetooth® wireless phone connection is made to the Uconnect™ Phone, for example, after you start the vehicle.
- A maximum of 1000 entries per phone will be downloaded and updated every time a phone is connected to the Uconnect™ Phone.

- Depending on the maximum number of entries downloaded, there may be a short delay before the latest downloaded names can be used. Until then, if available, the previous downloaded phonebook is available for use.
- Only the phonebook of the currently connected cellular phone is accessible.
- Only the cellular phone's phonebook is downloaded. SIM card phonebook is not part of the Mobile phonebook.
- This downloaded phonebook cannot be edited or deleted on the Uconnect™ Phone. These can only be edited on the cellular phone. The changes are transferred and updated to Uconnect™ Phone on the next phone connection.

### Phonebook Download — Single Entry

If equipped and supported by your phone, Uconnect™ Phone allows the user to download entries from their phone via Bluetooth®. To use this feature, press the  button and say "Phonebook Download." The system prompts, "Ready to accept "V" card entry via Bluetooth®..." The system is now ready to accept phonebook entries from your phone using the Bluetooth® Object Exchange Profile (OBEX). Please see your phone Owner's Manual for specific instructions on how to send these entries from your phone.

#### NOTE:


- The phone handset must support Bluetooth® OBEX transfers of phonebook entries to use this feature.

- Some phones cannot send phonebook entries if they are already connected to any system via Bluetooth®, and you may see a message on the phone display that the Bluetooth® link is busy. In this case, the user must first disconnect or drop the Bluetooth® connection to the Uconnect™ phone, and then send the address book entry via Bluetooth®. Please see your phone Owner's Manual for specific instructions on how to drop the Bluetooth® connection.
- If the phonebook entry is longer than 24 characters, it will only use the first 24 characters.

### Edit Uconnect™ Phonebook Entries

#### NOTE:

- Editing names in the phonebook is recommended when the vehicle is not in motion.
- Automatic downloaded phonebook entries cannot be deleted or edited.

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook Edit."
- You will then be asked for the name of the phonebook entry that you wish to edit.
- Next, choose the number designation (home, work, cellular, or pager) that you wish to edit.
- When prompted, recite the new phone number for the phonebook entry that you are editing.


After you are finished editing an entry in the phonebook, you will be given the opportunity to edit another entry in the phonebook, call the number you just edited, or return to the main menu.


"Phonebook Edit" can be used to add another phone number to a name entry that already exists in the phonebook. For example, the entry John Doe may have a

cellular and a home number, but you can add "John Doe's" work number later using the "Phonebook Edit" feature.

### Delete Uconnect™ Phonebook Entry


**NOTE:** Editing phonebook entries is recommended when the vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook Delete."
- After you enter the Phonebook Delete menu, you will then be asked for the name of the entry that you wish to delete. You can either say the name of a phonebook entry that you wish to delete or you can say "List Names" to hear a list of the entries in the phonebook from which you choose. To select one of the entries


from the list, press the  button while the Uconnect™ Phone is playing the desired entry and say "Delete."

- After you enter the name, the Uconnect™ Phone will ask you which designation you wish to delete: home, work, cellular, pager, or all. Say the designation you wish to delete.
- Note that only the phonebook entry in the current language is deleted.
- Automatic downloaded phonebook entries cannot be deleted or edited.

### Delete/Erase "All" Uconnect™ Phonebook Entries

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook Erase All."


## 98 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

- The Uconnect™ Phone will ask you to verify that you wish to delete all the entries from the phonebook.
- After confirmation, the phonebook entries will be deleted.
- Note that only the phonebook in the current language is deleted.
- Automatic downloaded phonebook entries cannot be deleted or edited.
- To call one of the names in the list, press the  button during the playing of the desired name, and say "Call."

**NOTE:** The user can also exercise "Edit" or "Delete" operations at this point.

- The Uconnect™ Phone will then prompt you as to the number designation you wish to call.
- The selected number will be dialed.



### List All Names in the Uconnect™ Phonebook

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook List Names."
- The Uconnect™ Phone will play the names of all the phonebook entries, including the downloaded phonebook entries, if available.


### Phone Call Features

The following features can be accessed through the Uconnect™ Phone if the feature(s) are available on your cellular service plan. For example, if your cellular service plan provides three-way calling, this feature can be accessed through the Uconnect™ Phone. Check with your cellular service provider for the features that you have.

### **Answer or Reject an Incoming Call - No Call Currently in Progress**

When you receive a call on your cellular phone, the Uconnect™ Phone will interrupt the vehicle audio system, if on, and will ask if you would like to answer the call. Press the  button to accept the call. To reject the call, press and hold the  button until you hear a single beep, indicating that the incoming call was rejected.


### **Answer or Reject an Incoming Call - Call Currently in Progress**

If a call is currently in progress and you have another incoming call, you will hear the same network tones for call waiting that you normally hear when using your cellular phone. Press the  button to place the current call on hold and answer the incoming call.



**NOTE:** The Uconnect™ Phone compatible phones in the market today do not support rejecting an incoming call

when another call is in progress. Therefore, the user can only answer an incoming call or ignore it.

### **Making a Second Call While Current Call is in Progress**


To make a second call while you are currently on a call, press the  button and say "Dial" or "Call" followed by the phone number or phonebook entry you wish to call. The first call will be on hold while the second call is in progress. To go back to the first call, refer to "Toggling Between Calls" in this section. To combine two calls, refer to "Conference Call" in this section.

### **Place/Retrieve a Call From Hold**


To put a call on hold, press the  button until you hear a single beep. This indicates that the call is on hold. To bring the call back from hold, press and hold the  button until you hear a single beep.





### Toggling Between Calls

If two calls are in progress (one active and one on hold), press the  button until you hear a single beep, indicating that the active and hold status of the two calls have switched. Only one call can be placed on hold at a time.



### Conference Call

When two calls are in progress (one active and one on hold), press and hold the  button until you hear a double beep indicating that the two calls have been joined into one conference call.


### Three-Way Calling

To initiate three-way calling, press the  button while a call is in progress, and make a second phone call, as described under "Making a Second Call While Current Call is in Progress." After the second call has established, press and hold the  button until you hear a double beep, indicating that the two calls have been joined into one conference call.

### Call Termination

To end a call in progress, momentarily press the  button. Only the active call(s) will be terminated and if there is a call on hold, it will become the new active call. If the active call is terminated by the phone far end, a call on hold may not become active automatically. This is cell phone-dependent. To bring the call back from hold, press and hold the  button until you hear a single beep.

### Redial

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Redial."
- The Uconnect™ Phone will call the last number that was dialed from your cellular phone.

**NOTE:** This may not be the last number dialed from the Uconnect™ Phone.

### Call Continuation


Call continuation is the progression of a phone call on the Uconnect™ Phone after the vehicle ignition key has been switched to OFF. Call continuation functionality available on the vehicle can be any one of three types:

- After the ignition key is switched to OFF, a call can continue on the Uconnect™ Phone either until the call ends, or until the vehicle battery condition dictates cessation of the call on the Uconnect™ Phone and transfer of the call to the cellular phone.
- After the ignition key is switched to OFF, a call can continue on the Uconnect™ Phone for a certain duration, after which the call is automatically transferred from the Uconnect™ Phone to the cellular phone.
- An active call is automatically transferred to the cellular phone after the ignition key is switched to OFF.

### Uconnect™ Phone Features

#### Language Selection

To change the language that the Uconnect™ Phone is using:

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say the name of the language you wish to switch to English, Espanol, or Francais.
- Continue to follow the system prompts to complete the language selection.

After selecting one of the languages, all prompts and voice commands will be in that language.

**NOTE:** After every Uconnect™ Phone language change operation, only the language-specific 32-name phone-book is usable. The paired phone name is not language-specific and usable across all languages.


## 102 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

### Emergency Assistance

If you are in an emergency and the cellular phone is reachable:

- Pick up the phone and manually dial the emergency number for your area.


If the phone is not reachable and the Uconnect™ Phone is operational, you may reach the emergency number as follows:

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Emergency" and the Uconnect™ Phone will instruct the paired cellular phone to call the emergency number. This feature is supported in the U.S., Canada, and Mexico.

#### NOTE:

- The emergency number dialed is based on the country where the vehicle is purchased (911 for the U.S. and

Canada and 060 for Mexico). The number dialed may not be applicable with the available cellular service and area.

- If supported, this number may be programmable on some systems. To do this, press the  button and say 'Setup', followed by 'Emergency'.
- The Uconnect™ Phone does slightly lower your chances of successfully making a phone call as to that for the cellular phone directly.


### WARNING!

To use your Uconnect™ Phone System in an emergency, your cellular phone must be:


- turned on,
- paired to the Uconnect™ System,
- and have network coverage.

### Towing Assistance

If you need towing assistance:

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Towing Assistance."

#### NOTE:

- The towing assistance number dialed is based on the country where the vehicle is purchased (1-800-528-2069 for the U.S., 1-877-213-4525 for Canada, 55-14-3454 for Mexico City and 1-800-712-3040 for outside Mexico City in Mexico). Please refer to the 24-Hour Towing Assistance coverage details on the DVD in the Warranty Information Booklet and the 24-Hour Towing Assistance references.
- If supported, this number may be programmable on some systems. To do this, press the  button and say "Setup", followed by "Towing Assistance".

### Paging

To learn how to page, refer to "Working with Automated Systems." Paging works properly except for pagers of certain companies, which time out a little too soon to work properly with the Uconnect™ Phone.

### Voice Mail Calling



To learn how to access your voice mail, refer to "Working with Automated Systems."


### Working with Automated Systems

This method is used in instances where one generally has to press numbers on the cellular phone keypad while navigating through an automated telephone system.

You can use your Uconnect™ Phone to access a voice mail system or an automated service, such as a paging service or automated customer service line. Some services require immediate response selection. In some instances, that may be too quick for use of the Uconnect™ Phone.

## 104 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

When calling a number with your Uconnect™ Phone that normally requires you to enter in a touch-tone sequence on your cellular phone keypad, you can press the  button and say the sequence you wish to enter, followed by the word "Send." For example, if required to enter your PIN followed with a pound, (3 7 4 6 #), you can press the  button and say, "3 7 4 6 # Send." Saying a number, or sequence of numbers, followed by "Send," is also to be used for navigating through an automated customer service center menu structure, and to leave a number on a pager.


You can also send stored Uconnect™ Phonebook entries as tones for fast and easy access to voice mail and pager entries. To use this feature, dial the number you wish to call and then press the  button and say, "Send." The system will prompt you to enter the name or number and say the name of the phonebook entry you wish to send.

The Uconnect™ Phone will then send the corresponding phone number associated with the phonebook entry, as tones over the phone.

### NOTE:


- You may not hear all of the tones due to cellular phone network configurations. This is normal.
- Some paging and voice mail systems have system time out settings that are too short and may not allow the use of this feature.

### Barge In - Overriding Prompts

The "Voice Command" button can be used when you wish to skip part of a prompt and issue your voice command immediately. For example, if a prompt is asking "Would you like to pair a phone, clear a...", you could press the  button and say, "Pair a Phone" to select that option without having to listen to the rest of the voice prompt.

### Turning Confirmation Prompts ON/OFF

Turning confirmation prompts off will stop the system from confirming your choices (e.g., the Uconnect™ Phone will not repeat a phone number before you dial it).

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Confirmations." The Uconnect™ Phone will play the current confirmation prompt status and you will be given the choice to change it.

### Phone and Network Status Indicators

If available on the radio and/or on a premium display such as the instrument panel cluster, and supported by your cellular phone, the Uconnect™ Phone will provide notification to inform you of your phone and network status when you are attempting to make a phone call using Uconnect™ Phone. The status is given for roaming, network signal strength, phone battery strength, etc.


### Dialing Using the Cellular Phone Keypad

You can dial a phone number with your cellular phone keypad and still use the Uconnect™ Phone (while dialing via the cellular phone keypad, the user must exercise caution and take precautionary safety measures). By dialing a number with your paired Bluetooth® cellular phone, the audio will be played through your vehicle's audio system. The Uconnect™ Phone will work the same as if you dial the number using Voice Command.


**NOTE:** Certain brands of cellular phones do not send the dial ring to the Uconnect™ Phone to play it on the vehicle audio system, so you will not hear it. Under this situation, after successfully dialing a number the user may feel that the call did not go through even though the call is in progress. Once your call is answered, you will hear the audio.

**Mute/Un-Mute (Mute OFF)**

When you mute the Uconnect™ Phone, you will still be able to hear the conversation coming from the other party, but the other party will not be able to hear you. In order to mute the Uconnect™ Phone:


- Press the  button.
- Following the beep, say "Mute."

In order to un-mute the Uconnect™ Phone:

- Press the  button.
- Following the beep, say "Mute off."

**Advanced Phone Connectivity****Transfer Call to and from Cellular Phone**

The Uconnect™ Phone allows ongoing calls to be transferred from your cellular phone to the Uconnect™ Phone without terminating the call. To transfer an ongoing call


from your Uconnect™ Phone paired cellular phone to the Uconnect™ Phone or vice versa, press the  button and say "Transfer Call."


**Connect or Disconnect Link Between the Uconnect™ Phone and Cellular Phone**

Your cellular phone can be paired with many different electronic devices, but can only be actively "connected" with one electronic device at a time.

If you would like to connect or disconnect the Bluetooth® connection between a Uconnect™ Phone paired cellular phone and the Uconnect™ Phone, follow the instructions described in your cellular phone User's Manual.



**List Paired Cellular Phone Names**

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone Pairing."

- When prompted, say "List Phones."
- The Uconnect™ Phone will play the phone names of all paired cellular phones in order from the highest to the lowest priority. To "select" or "delete" a paired phone being announced, press the  button and say "Select" or "Delete." Also, see the next two sections for an alternate way to "select" or "delete" a paired phone.

### Select Another Cellular Phone



This feature allows you to select and start using another phone paired with the Uconnect™ Phone.

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Select Phone" and follow the prompts.
- You can also press the  button at any time while the list is being played, and then choose the phone that you wish to select.

- The selected phone will be used for the next phone call. If the selected phone is not available, the Uconnect™ Phone will return to using the highest priority phone present in or near (approximately within 30 ft (9 m)) the vehicle.

### Delete Uconnect™ Phone Paired Cellular Phones


3

- Press the  button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone Pairing."
- At the next prompt, say "Delete" and follow the prompts.
- You can also press the  button at any time while the list is being played, and then choose the phone you wish to delete.



## Things You Should Know About Your Uconnect™ Phone



### Uconnect™ Phone Tutorial

To hear a brief tutorial of the system features, press the  button and say "Uconnect™ Tutorial."

### Voice Training

For users experiencing difficulty with the system recognizing their voice commands or numbers, the Uconnect™ Phone Voice Training feature may be used. To enter this training mode, follow one of the two following procedures:


From outside the Uconnect™ Phone mode (e.g., from radio mode):

- Press and hold the  button for five seconds until the session begins, or,
- Press the  button and say the "Setup, Voice Training" command.

You can either press the Uconnect™ Phone button to restore the factory setting or repeat the words and phrases when prompted by the Uconnect™ Phone. For best results, the Voice Training session should be completed when the vehicle is parked with the engine running, all windows closed, and the blower fan switched off.

This procedure may be repeated with a new user. The system will adapt to the last trained voice only.

### Reset

- press the  button.
- After the "Ready" prompt, and the following beep, say "Uconnect™ Setup", then "Reset".

This will delete all phone pairing, phone book entries, and other settings in all language modes. The System will prompt you before resetting to factory settings.

### Voice Command

- For best performance, adjust the rearview mirror to provide at least ½ in (1 cm) gap between the overhead console (if equipped) and the mirror.
- Always wait for the beep before speaking.
- Speak normally, without pausing, just as you would speak to a person sitting a few feet/meters away from you.
- Make sure that no one other than you is speaking during a Voice Command period.
- Performance is maximized under:
  - low-to-medium blower setting,
  - low-to-medium vehicle speed,
  - low road noise,
  - smooth road surface,
- fully closed windows,
- dry weather condition.
- Even though the system is designed for users speaking in North American English, French, and Spanish accents, the system may not always work for some.
- When navigating through an automated system such as voice mail, or when sending a page, at the end of speaking the digit string, make sure to say "Send."
- Storing names in the phonebook when the vehicle is not in motion is recommended.
- It is not recommended to store similar sounding names in the Uconnect™ Phonebook.
- Phonebook (Downloaded and Uconnect™ Phone Local) name recognition rate is optimized when the entries are not similar.

## 110 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

- Numbers must be spoken in single digits. "800" must be spoken "eight-zero-zero" not "eight hundred".
- You can say "O" (letter "O") for "0" (zero).
- Even though international dialing for most number combinations is supported, some shortcut dialing number combinations may not be supported.
- In a convertible vehicle, system performance may be compromised with the convertible top down.
- fully closed windows,
- dry weather conditions, and
- operation from the driver's seat.
- Performance, such as audio clarity, echo, and loudness to a large degree rely on the phone and network, and not the Uconnect™ Phone.
- Echo at the phone far end can sometimes be reduced by lowering the in-vehicle audio volume.
- In a convertible vehicle, system performance may be compromised with the convertible top down.

### Far End Audio Performance

- Audio quality is maximized under:
  - low-to-medium blower setting,
  - low-to-medium vehicle speed,
  - low road noise,
  - smooth road surface,

### Recent Calls


If your phone supports "Automatic Phonebook Download", Uconnect™ Phone can list your Outgoing, Incoming and Missed Calls.

**SMS**

Uconnect™ Phone can read or send new messages on your phone.

**Read Messages:**


If you receive a new text message while your phone is connected to Uconnect™ Phone, an announcement will be made to notify you that you have a new text message. If you wish to hear the new message:


- Press the  button.
- After the “Ready” prompt and the following beep, say “SMS Read” or “Read Messages.”
- Uconnect™ Phone will play the new text message for you.

After reading a message, you can “Reply” or “Forward” the message using Uconnect™ Phone.

**Send Messages:**

You can send messages using Uconnect™ Phone. To send a new message:

- Press the  button.
- After the “Ready” prompt and the following beep, say “SMS Send” or “Send Messages.”
- You can either say the message you wish to send or say “List Messages.” There are 20 preset messages.

To send a message, press the  button while the system is listing the message and say “Send.”

Uconnect™ Phone will prompt you to say the name or number of the person you wish to send the message to.

## 112 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE


---

### List of Preset Messages:

1. Yes
2. No
3. Where are you?
4. I need more direction.
5. L O L
6. Why
7. I love you
8. Call me
9. Call me later
10. Thanks
11. See You in 15 minutes
12. I am on my way
13. I'll be late
14. Are you there yet?
15. Where are we meeting?
16. Can this wait?
17. Bye for now
18. When can we meet
19. Send number to call
20. Start without me

**Turn SMS Incoming Announcement ON/OFF**

Turning the SMS Incoming Announcement OFF will stop the system from announcing the new incoming messages.

- Press the  button.
- After the “Ready” prompt and the following beep, say “Setup, Incoming Message Announcement,” you will then be given a choice to change it.

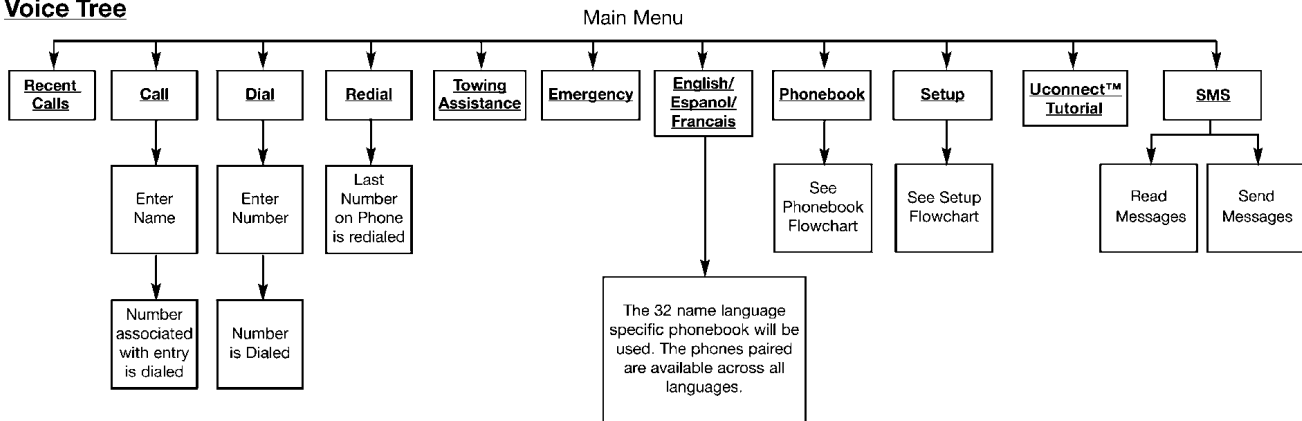
**Bluetooth® Communication Link**

Cellular phones have been found to lose connection to the Uconnect™ Phone. When this happens, the connection can generally be reestablished by switching the phone off/on. Your cellular phone is recommended to remain in Bluetooth® ON mode.

**Power-Up**

After switching the ignition key from OFF to either the ON or ACC position, or after a language change, you must wait at least five seconds prior to using the system.

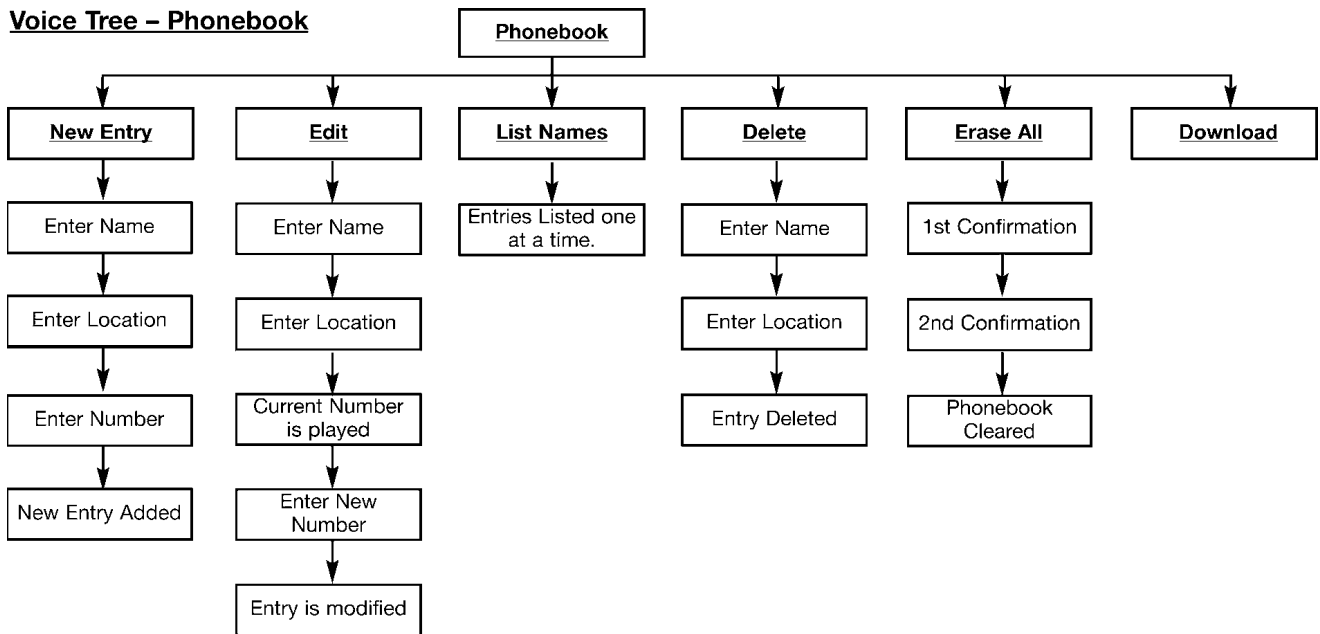
**Voice Tree**



**Note:** Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.

030607515

**Voice Tree – Phonebook**

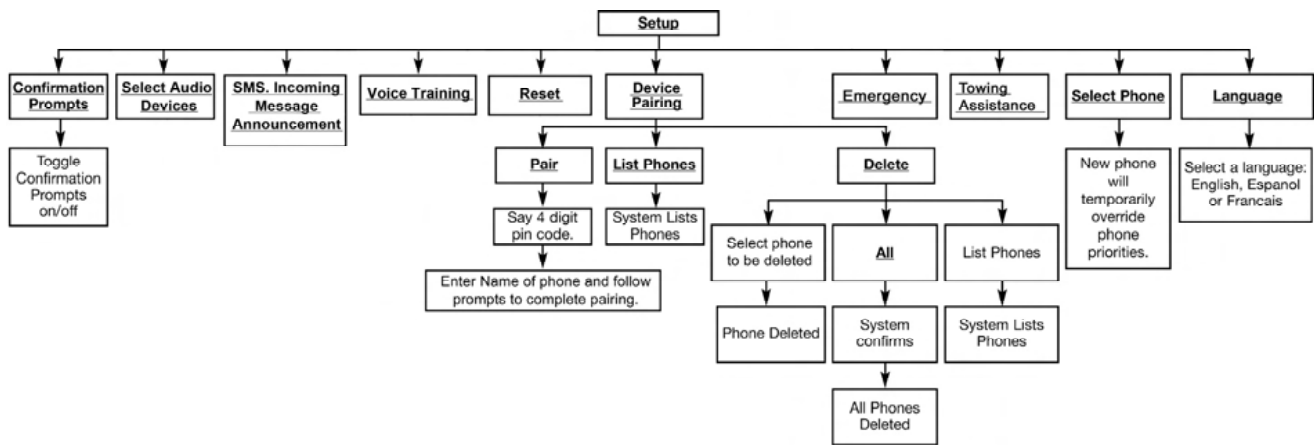


**Note:** Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.

81c6bf80



**Voice Tree – Setup**



**Note:** Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined. 030605540

| Voice Commands |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| Primary        | Alternate(s) |
| zero           |              |
| one            |              |
| two            |              |
| three          |              |
| four           |              |
| five           |              |
| six            |              |
| seven          |              |
| eight          |              |
| nine           |              |
| star (*)       |              |
| plus (+)       |              |
| pound (#)      |              |
| add location   |              |
| all            |              |

| Voice Commands       |              |
|----------------------|--------------|
| Primary              | Alternate(s) |
| call                 |              |
| cancel               |              |
| confirmation prompts |              |
| continue             |              |
| delete               |              |
| dial                 |              |
| download             |              |
| edit                 |              |
| emergency            |              |
| English              |              |
| erase all            |              |
| Espanol              |              |
| Francais             |              |
| help                 |              |
| home                 |              |

118 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

| Voice Commands |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| Primary        | Alternate(s) |
| language       |              |
| list names     |              |
| list phones    |              |
| mobile         |              |
| mute           |              |
| mute off       |              |
| new entry      |              |
| no             |              |
| pager          |              |
| pair a phone   |              |
| phone pairing  | pairing      |
| phonebook      | phone book   |
| previous       |              |
| record again   |              |

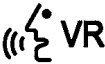
| Voice Commands      |                                |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| Primary             | Alternate(s)                   |
| redial              |                                |
| return to main menu | return or main menu            |
| select phone        | select                         |
| send                |                                |
| set up              | phone settings or phone set up |
| towing assistance   |                                |
| transfer call       |                                |
| Uconnect™ Tutorial  |                                |
| try again           |                                |
| voice training      |                                |
| work                |                                |
| yes                 |                                |

**General Information**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.


**VOICE COMMAND — IF EQUIPPED****Voice Command System Operation**

 This Voice Command system allows you to control your AM, FM radio, satellite radio, disc player, and a memo recorder.

**NOTE:** Take care to speak into the Voice Interface System as calmly and normally as possible. The ability of the Voice Interface System to recognize user voice commands may be negatively affected by rapid speaking or a raised voice level.


**WARNING!**


**Any voice commanded system should be used only in safe driving conditions following local laws and phone use. All attention should be kept on the roadway ahead. Failure to do so may result in an accident causing serious injury or death.**

When you press the Voice Command  button, you will hear a beep. The beep is your signal to give a command.

## 120 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

**NOTE:** If you do not say a command within a few seconds, the system will present you with a list of options.

If you ever wish to interrupt the system while it lists options, press the Voice Command  button, listen for the beep, and say your command.

Pressing the Voice Command  button while the system is speaking is known as “barging in.” The system will be interrupted, and after the beep, you can add or change commands. This will become helpful once you start to learn the options.

**NOTE:** At any time, you can say the words “Cancel”, “Help” or “Main Menu”.


These commands are universal and can be used from any menu. All other commands can be used depending upon the active application.

For example, if you are in the disc menu and you are listening to FM radio, you can speak commands from the disc menu or from the FM radio menu.

When using this system, you should speak clearly and at a normal speaking volume.

The system will best recognize your speech if the windows are closed, and the heater/air conditioning fan is set to low.


At any point, if the system does not recognize one of your commands, you will be prompted to repeat it.

To hear the first available Menu, press the Voice Command  button and say “Help” or “Main Menu”.


### Commands

The Voice Command system understands two types of commands. Universal commands are available at all times. Local commands are available if the supported radio mode is active.

### Changing the Volume

1. Start a dialogue by pressing the Voice Command  button.
2. Say a command (e.g., "Help").
3. Use the ON/OFF VOLUME rotary knob to adjust the volume to a comfortable level while the Voice Command system is speaking. Please note the volume setting for Voice Command is different than the audio system.

### Main Menu

Start a dialogue by pressing the Voice Command  button. You may say "Main Menu" to switch to the main menu.

In this mode, you can say the following commands:

- "Radio" (to switch to the radio mode)
- "Disc" (to switch to the disc mode)
- "Memo" (to switch to the memo recorder)
- "System Setup" (to switch to system setup)

### Radio AM (or Radio Long Wave or Radio Medium Wave — If Equipped)

To switch to the AM band, say "AM" or "Radio AM". In this mode, you may say the following commands:

- "Frequency" (to change the frequency)
- "Next Station" (to select the next station)
- "Previous Station" (to select the previous station)
- "Radio Menu" (to switch to the radio menu)
- "Main Menu" (to switch to the main menu)

## 122 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

### Radio FM

To switch to the FM band, say "FM" or "Radio FM". In this mode, you may say the following commands:

- "Frequency" (to change the frequency)
- "Next Station" (to select the next station)
- "Previous Station" (to select the previous station)
- "Radio Menu" (to switch to the radio menu)
- "Main Menu" (to switch to the main menu)

### Satellite Radio

To switch to satellite radio mode, say "Sat" or "Satellite Radio". In this mode, you may say the following commands:

- "Channel Number" (to change the channel by its spoken number)
- "Next Channel" (to select the next channel)

- "Previous Channel" (to select the previous channel)
- "List Channel" (to hear a list of available channels)
- "Select Name" (to say the name of a channel)
- "Radio Menu" (to switch to the radio menu)
- "Main Menu" (to switch to the main menu)



### Disc

To switch to the disc mode, say "Disc". In this mode, you may say the following commands:

- "Track" (#) (to change the track)
- "Next Track" (to play the next track)
- "Previous Track" (to play the previous track)
- "Main Menu" (to switch to the main menu)

### Memo

To switch to the voice recorder mode, say "Memo". In this mode, you may say the following commands:

- "New Memo" (to record a new memo) — During the recording, you may press the Voice Command  button to stop recording. You proceed by saying one of the following commands:
  - "Save" (to save the memo)
  - "Continue" (to continue recording)
  - "Delete" (to delete the recording)
- "Play Memos" (to play previously recorded memos) — During the playback you may press the Voice Command  button to stop playing memos. You proceed by saying one of the following commands:
  - "Repeat" (to repeat a memo)
  - "Next" (to play the next memo)


- "Previous" (to play the previous memo)
- "Delete" (to delete a memo)
- "Delete All" (to delete all memos)

### System Setup

To switch to system setup, say "Setup". In this mode, you may say the following commands:


- "Language German"
- "Language Dutch"
- "Language Italian"
- "Language English"
- "Language French"
- "Language Spanish"
- "Tutorial"
- "Voice Training"



**NOTE:** Keep in mind that you have to press the Voice Command  button first and wait for the beep before speaking the “Barge In” commands.

### Voice Training

For users experiencing difficulty with the system recognizing their voice commands or numbers the Uconnect™ Voice “Voice Training” feature may be used.

1. Press the Voice Command  button, say “System Setup” and once you are in that menu then say “Voice Training.” This will train your own voice to the system and will improve recognition.
2. Repeat the words and phrases when prompted by Uconnect™ Voice. For best results, the “Voice Training” session should be completed when the vehicle is parked, engine running, all windows closed, and the blower fan switched off. This procedure may be repeated with a new user. The system will adapt to the last trained voice only.

### SEATS

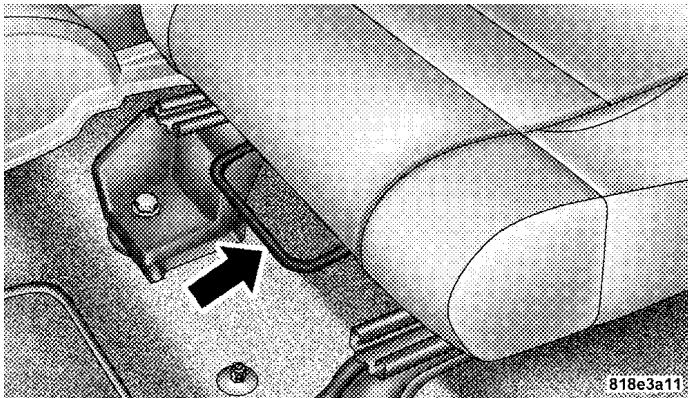
Seats are a primary part of the Occupant Restraint System of the vehicle. They need to be used properly for safe operation of the vehicle.

#### WARNING!

- **DO NOT allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.**
- **Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.**

### Front Seat Adjustment

Move the seat forward or rearward by lifting the lever. Release the lever when the seat is in the desired position. Using body pressure, move forward and rearward on the seat to make sure that the latch is fully engaged.



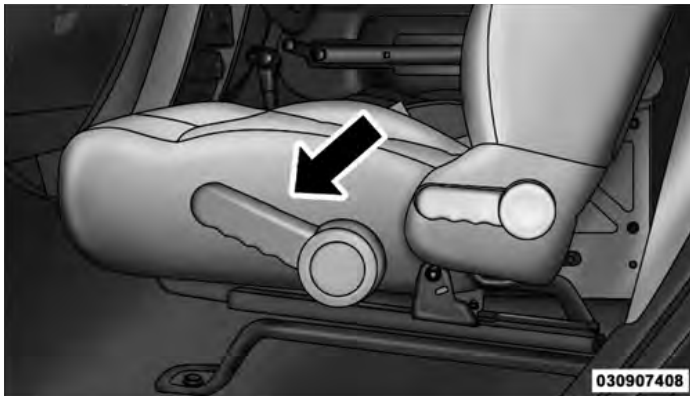
Manual Seat Adjustment

### WARNING!

Adjusting a seat while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. The sudden movement of the seat could cause you to lose control. The seat belt might not be properly adjusted and you could be injured. Only adjust a seat while the vehicle is parked.

### Manual Seat Height Adjustment — If Equipped

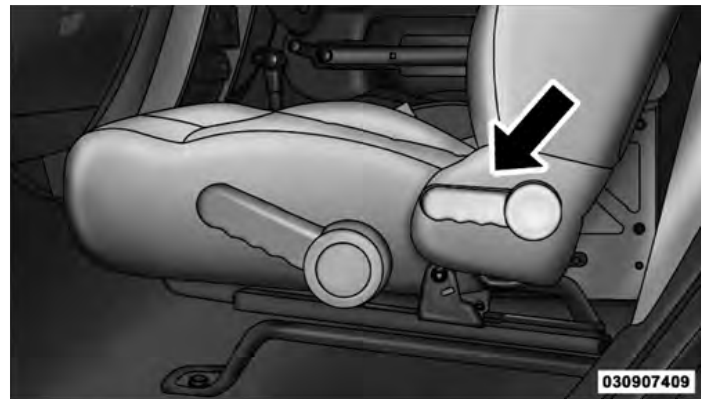
The driver's seat height can be raised or lowered by using the ratcheting handle, located on the outboard side of the seat. Pull upward on the handle to raise the seat; push downward on the handle to lower the seat.



Seat Height Adjustment

### Front Seatback Recline

Lean forward before lifting the handle, then lean back to the desired position and release the handle. Lift the handle to return the seatback to an upright position.



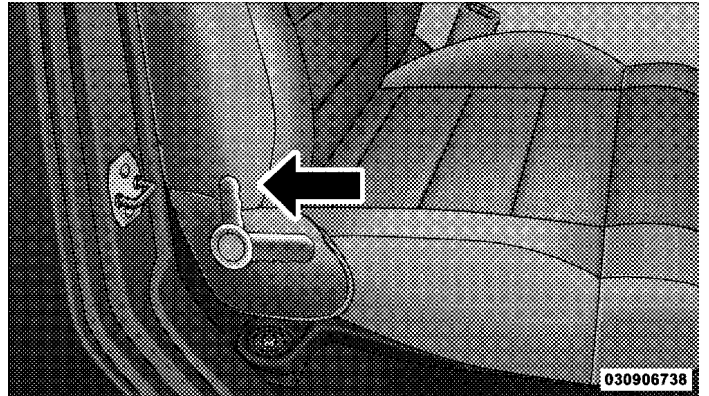
Recline Lever

**WARNING!**

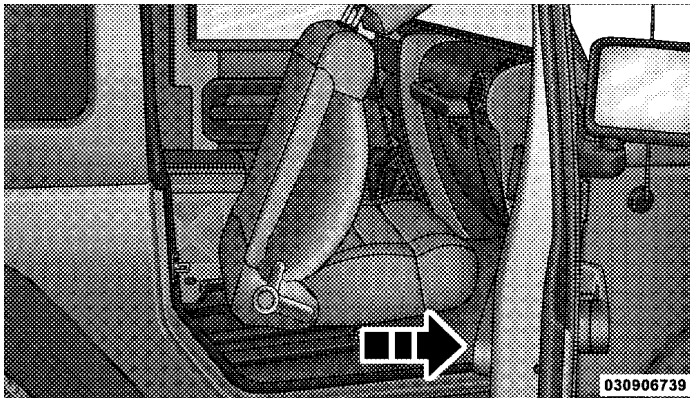
Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision you could slide under the seatbelt and be seriously or fatally injured. Use the recliner only when the vehicle is parked.

**Front Easy Entry Seats — Two Door Models**

Push the lever on the seatback rearward (toward the rear of the vehicle) to tilt the entire seat forward.

**3**

Easy Entry Combination Lever



#### Easy Entry Seat With Combination Lever

1. To return the seat to a sitting position, rotate the seatback upright until it locks.
2. Push the seat rearward until the track locks.

#### NOTE:

- If equipped with combination lever the seatback will return to its first locked position. The recliner handle will have to be actuated to adjust the seatback to the desired reclined position.
- The front passenger seats have a track memory, which returns the seat to just past the halfway point of the track regardless of its original position.
- The recliner and easy entry levers should not be used during the automatic returning of the seat to its sitting position.

#### Head Restraints

Head restraints can reduce the risk of injury in the event of a rear impact. The head restraint should be adjusted so the top of the head restraint is located above the top of your ear.

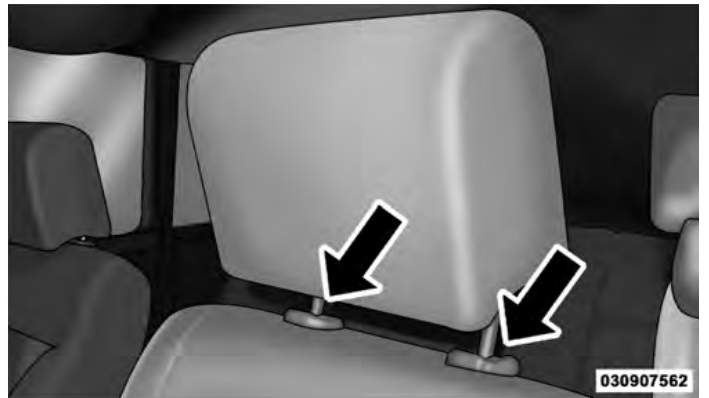
To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, press the large button, located on the base of the head restraint, and push downward on the head restraint.

**NOTE:** The rear head restraints are not adjustable.

To remove the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint to its highest position, push in both buttons at the base of each head restraint rod, and simultaneously pull up on the head restraint.



Adjustable Head Restraints



Removing Head Restraint

### 130 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

To install the head restraint, insert the head restraint rods into each guide, apply pressure down on the headrest until the head restraint reaches the first lock position, push the large button in and push down and adjust head restraint to desired position.

**NOTE:** Ensure that the front of the head restraint is facing toward the front of the vehicle.

#### **WARNING!**

**Driving a vehicle with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted could cause serious injury or death in the event of a collision. The head restraints should always be checked prior to operating the vehicle and never adjusted while the vehicle is in motion. Always adjust the head restraints when the vehicle is in PARK.**

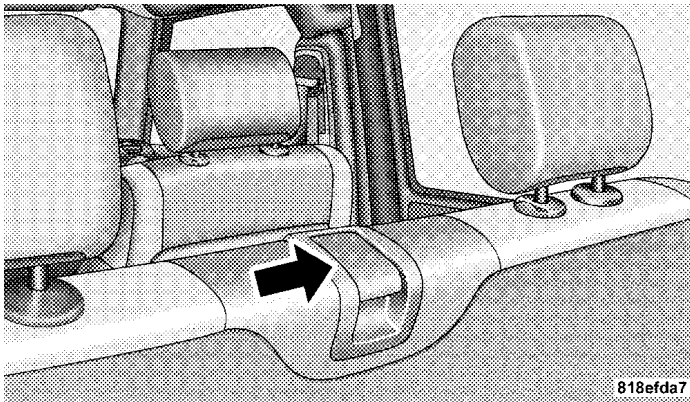
### **Fold and Tumble Rear Seat — Two Door Models**

#### **NOTE:**

- Prior to folding the rear seat, it may be necessary to reposition the front seats.
- Be sure that the front seats are fully upright and positioned forward. This will allow the rear seat to fold down easily.

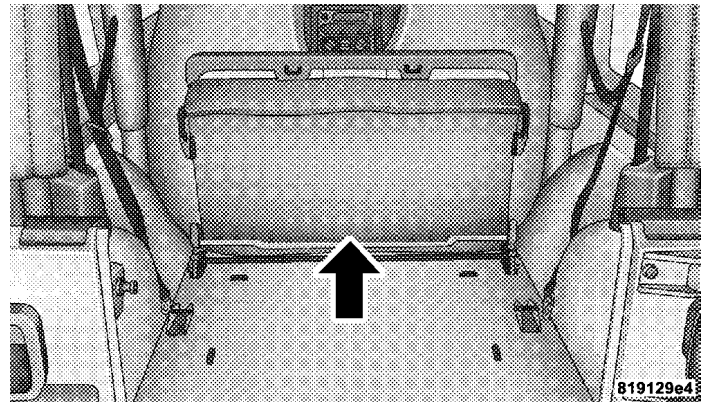
1. Lift the seatback release lever and fold the seatback forward.





**Rear Seat Release**

2. Slowly flip the entire seat forward.



**Folding Rear Seat**

3. Return the seat to the normal position.

4. Raise the rear seatback using the assist strap and firmly lock the seat into position.

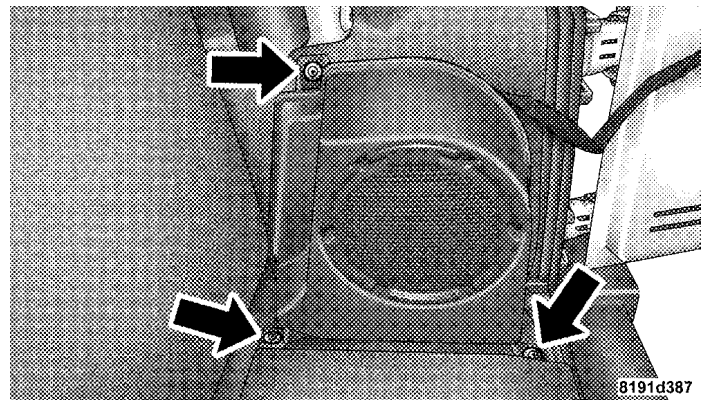


### Removing the Rear Seat — Two Door Models

#### WARNING!

- It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.
- In a collision, you or others in your vehicle could be injured if seats are not properly latched to their floor attachments. Always be sure that the seats are fully latched.

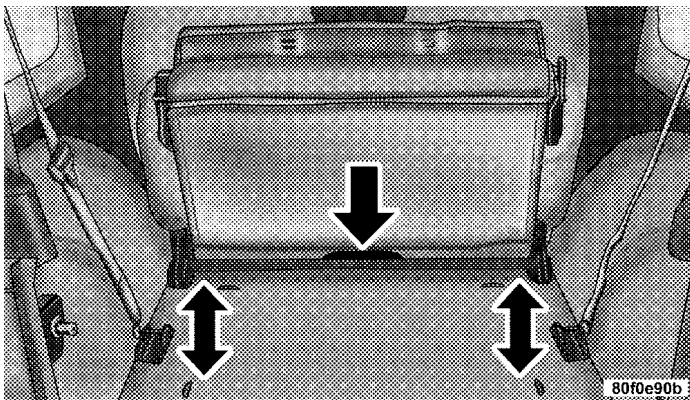
1. Remove the three rear subwoofer (if equipped) mounting nuts using a 15 mm socket.



Subwoofer

2. Unplug the electrical connector from the rear subwoofer (if equipped).

3. Fold the rear seat forward following steps 1 through 3 under "Fold and Tumble Rear Seat" in this section.
4. Press down on the release bar on each side, and pull the seat out and away from the lower bracket.
5. Remove the seat from the vehicle.



Release Bar Location

### Replacing the Rear Seat — Two Door Models

Reverse the steps for removing the seat.

#### WARNING!

- To help protect against personal injury, passengers should not be seated in the rear cargo area with the rear seat folded down or removed from the vehicle.
- The rear cargo space is intended for load carrying purposes only, not for passengers who should sit in seats and use seat belts.

3

### 60/40 Split Folding Rear Seat — Four Door Models

To provide additional storage area, each rear seat can be folded flat to allow for extended cargo space and still maintain some rear seating room.

**NOTE:**

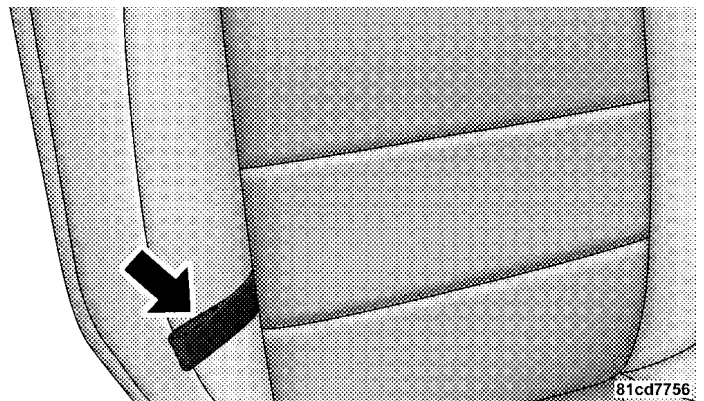
- Prior to folding the rear seat, it may be necessary to reposition the front seat to its mid-track position.
- Be sure that the front seats are fully upright and positioned forward. This will allow the rear seat to fold down easily.

**WARNING!**

- It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

**To Fold Down the Rear Seat**

Locate the pull strap (lower outboard side of seat), and pull it toward you until the seatback releases.



Pull Strap

**To Raise the Rear Seat**

Raise the seatback and lock it into place. If interference from the cargo area prevents the seatback from fully locking, you will have difficulty returning the seat to its proper position.

**NOTE:** If the rear seatback is not fully latched, the center shoulder belt will not be able to be extended for use. If you cannot extend the center shoulder belt, make sure your seatback is fully latched.

**WARNING!**

**Be certain that the seatback is securely locked into position. If the seatback is not securely locked into position the seat will not provide the proper stability for child seats and/or passengers. An improperly latched seat could cause serious injury.**

**TO OPEN AND CLOSE THE HOOD**

Release both the hood latches.



Hood Latch

031333906

Raise the hood and locate the safety latch, located in the middle of the hood opening. Push the latch to the left side of the vehicle, to open the hood. You may have to push down slightly on the hood before pushing the safety latch. Insert the support rod into the slot on the hood.

## 136 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

To close the hood, remove the support rod from the hood panel and place it in the retaining clip. Lower the hood slowly. Secure both of the hood latches.

### WARNING!

Be sure the hood is fully latched before driving your vehicle. If the hood is not fully latched, it could open when the vehicle is in motion and block your vision. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death.

## LIGHTS

### Multifunction Lever

The multifunction lever controls the operation of the parking lights, headlights, headlight beam selection, passing light, fog lights, instrument panel light dimming and turn signals. The lever is located on the left side of the steering column.



Multifunction Lever

### Headlights and Parking Lights

Turn the end of the multifunction lever to the first detent for parking lights and instrument panel lights. Turn to the second detent for headlight operation.



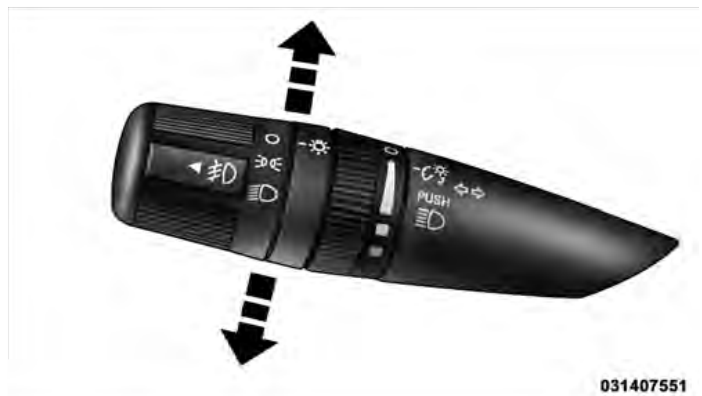
031407548

Headlight Switch

**NOTE:** Lens fogging can occur under certain weather conditions. Turning the headlights on will usually accelerate the clearing process.

**Turn Signals**

Move the multifunction lever up or down and the arrows on each side of the instrument cluster flash to show proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights.



031407551

Turn Signal Operation

**NOTE:**

- If either light remains on and does not flash, or there is a very fast flash rate, check for a defective outside light bulb. If an indicator fails to light when the lever is moved, it would suggest that the indicator bulb is defective.
- A tone will chime if the turn signals are left on for more than 1 mile (2 km).

**Lane Change Assist**

Tap the lever up or down once, without moving beyond the detent, and the turn signal (right or left) will flash three times then automatically turn off.

**Lights-On Reminder**

If the headlights or parking lights are on after the ignition is turned OFF, a chime will sound when the driver's door is opened.


**High/Low Beam Switch**

Push the multifunction lever away from you to switch the headlights to high beam. Pull the lever toward you to switch the headlights back to low beam.

**Flash-To-Pass**

You can signal another vehicle with your headlights by lightly pulling the multifunction lever toward the steering wheel. This will turn on the high beam headlights until the lever is released.

**Front Fog Lights — If Equipped**

 The front fog light switch is located on the multifunction lever. To activate the front fog lights, turn on the parking or low beam headlights and pull out the end of the lever.

**NOTE:** The fog lights will only operate with the parking lights or the headlights on low beam. Selecting high beam headlights will turn off the fog lights.

### Instrument Panel Dimmer

Rotate the center portion of the lever to the extreme bottom position to fully dim the instrument panel lights and prevent the interior lights from illuminating when a door is opened.

Rotate the center portion of the lever up to increase the brightness of the instrument panel lights when the parking lights or headlights are on.

Rotate the center portion of the lever upward to the next detent position to brighten the odometer and radio when the parking lights or headlights are on.

Rotate the center portion of the lever upward to the last detent to turn on the interior lighting.



Dimmer Control

### Daytime Running Lights — If Equipped

The headlights come on at a low intensity level after the vehicle has been driven approximately 3 ft (1 m). They will turn off when the vehicle is turned off or when the headlights are switched on.



### Interior Lights

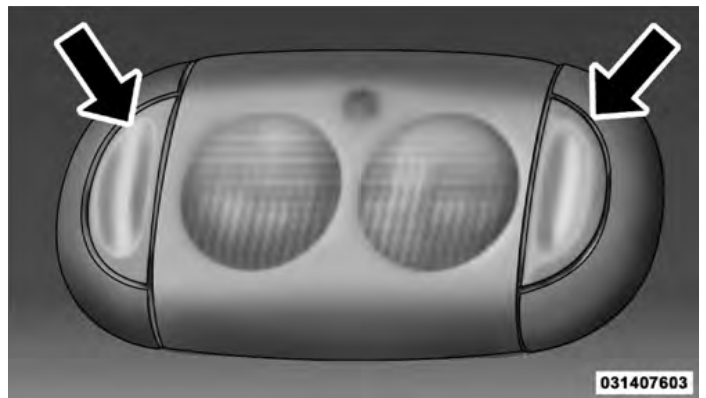
The overhead light will turn on when a door is opened. It may also be turned on by rotating the control for the dimmer switch on the multifunction lever fully upward.

The overhead light will automatically turn off in approximately 10 minutes if a door is left open or the dimmer control is left in the dome light position. Turn the ignition switch ON to restore the overhead light operation.

### Cargo Lamp

The courtesy and dome lights will turn on when the front doors are opened, by rotating the control for the dimmer switch on the multifunction lever fully upward, or if equipped, when the UNLOCK button is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

The rearmost cargo lamp (available on four-door models) may be turned on by pressing either of the switches, located on either side of the lens. Press a switch a second time to turn the light off. Also, the rear cargo lamp may be turned on by pressing the lens. Press the lens a second time to turn the light off.



Cargo Lamp

When a door is open and the interior lights are on, rotating the dimmer control to the extreme bottom position will cause all the interior lights to turn off. This is also known as the "Party" mode because it allows the doors to stay open for extended periods of time without discharging the vehicle's battery.

### WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS

The windshield wiper/washer control lever is located on the right side of the steering column. The front wipers are operated by rotating a switch, located at the end of the lever. For information on using the rear window wiper/washer, refer to "Rear Window Features" in "Understanding the Features of Your Vehicle".



Windshield Wiper/Washer Lever

### Windshield Wiper Operation

Rotate the end of the lever upward to the second detent past the intermittent settings for low-speed wiper operation.

Rotate the end of the lever upward to the third detent past the intermittent settings for high-speed wiper operation.



031507503

Front Wiper Control

**CAUTION!**

In cold weather, always turn off the wiper switch and allow the wipers to return to the park position before turning off the engine. If the wiper switch is left on and the wipers freeze to the windshield, damage to the wiper motor may occur when the vehicle is restarted.

**Intermittent Wiper System**

Use the intermittent wiper when weather conditions make a single wiping cycle, with a variable pause between cycles, desirable. Rotate the end of the lever to the first detent position for one of five intermittent settings. The delay cycle can be set anywhere between 2 to 30 seconds.



031507503

**Front Wiper Control****Windshield Washers**

To use the washer, pull the lever toward you and hold while spray is desired. If the lever is pulled while in the delay range, the wiper will operate for two or three wipe cycles after the lever is released, and then resume the intermittent interval previously selected.

## 144 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

If the lever is pulled while in the off position, the wipers will operate for two or three wipe cycles and then turn off.

### WARNING!

Sudden loss of visibility through the windshield could lead to an accident. You might not see other vehicles or other obstacles. To avoid sudden icing of the windshield during freezing weather, warm the windshield with defroster before and during windshield washer use.

### Mist Feature

Push down on the wiper lever to activate a single wipe to clear off road mist or spray from a passing vehicle. As long as the lever is held down, the wipers will continue to operate.



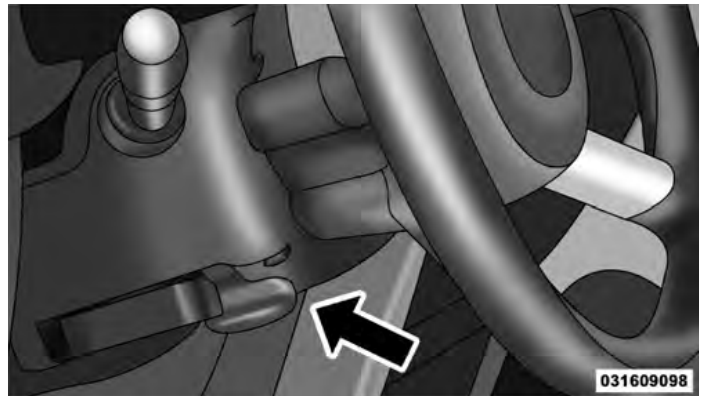
### Mist Control

**NOTE:** The mist feature does not activate the washer pump; therefore, no washer fluid will be sprayed on the windshield. The wash function must be used in order to spray the windshield with washer fluid.

**TILT STEERING COLUMN**

This feature allows you to tilt the steering column upward or downward. The tilt lever is located on the steering column, below the turn signal lever.

Push down on the lever to unlock the steering column. With one hand firmly on the steering wheel, move the steering column up or down, as desired. Pull upwards on the lever to lock the column firmly in place.



Tilt Steering Column

**WARNING!**

Do not adjust the steering column while driving. Adjusting the steering column while driving or driving with the steering column unlocked, could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle. Be sure the steering column is locked before driving your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury or death.

**ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL — IF EQUIPPED**

Electronic Speed Control takes over the accelerator operation at speeds greater than 25 mph (40 km/h). The Electronic Speed Control lever is located on the right side of the steering wheel.



81bc4c2c

**Electronic Speed Control Lever**

**NOTE:** In order to ensure proper operation, the Electronic Speed Control System has been designed to shut down if multiple Speed Control functions are operated at the same time. If this occurs, the Electronic Speed Control

System can be reactivated by pushing the Electronic Speed Control ON/OFF button and resetting the desired vehicle set speed.

#### To Activate

Push the ON/OFF button. The Cruise Indicator Light in the instrument cluster will illuminate. To turn the Electronic Speed Control system off, push the ON/OFF button a second time. The cruise indicator light will turn off. The Electronic Speed Control system should be turned off when not in use.

#### WARNING!

Leaving the Electronic Speed Control system on when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system or cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the Electronic Speed Control system off when you are not using it.

#### To Set a Desired Speed

Turn the Electronic Speed Control ON. When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press down on the lever and release. Release the accelerator and the vehicle will operate at the selected speed.

**NOTE:** The vehicle should be traveling at a steady speed and on level ground before pressing the SET lever.

#### To Deactivate

A soft tap on the brake pedal, pulling the Electronic Speed Control lever toward you, or normal brake or clutch pressure while slowing the vehicle will deactivate Electronic Speed Control without erasing the set speed memory. Pressing the ON/OFF button or turning the ignition switch OFF erases the set speed memory.

#### To Resume Speed

To resume a previously set speed, push the RESUME ACCEL lever up and release. Resume can be used at any speed above 25 mph (40 km/h).



**To Vary the Speed Setting**

When the Electronic Speed Control is set, you can increase speed by pushing up and holding the RESUME ACCEL lever. If the lever is continually held in the RESUME ACCEL position, the set speed will continue to increase until the lever is released, then the new set speed will be established.

Tapping RESUME ACCEL once will result in a 1 mph (1.6 km/h) speed increase. Each time the Electronic Speed Control lever is tapped, speed increases so that tapping the Electronic Speed Control lever three times will increase speed by 3 mph (4.8 km/h), etc.

To decrease speed while the Electronic Speed Control is set, push down and hold the SET DECEL lever. If the lever is continually held in the SET DECEL position, the set speed will continue to decrease until the lever is released. Release the lever when the desired speed is reached, and the new set speed will be established.

Tapping the SET DECEL lever once will result in a 1 mph (1.6 km/h) speed decrease. Each time the lever is tapped, speed decreases.

**Manual Transmission**

Pressing the clutch pedal will disengage the Electronic Speed Control. A slight increase in engine RPM before the Electronic Speed Control disengages is normal.

Vehicles equipped with manual transmissions may need to be shifted into a lower gear to climb hills without speed loss.

**WARNING!**

Electronic Speed Control can be dangerous where the system cannot maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control and have an accident. Do not use Electronic Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered or slippery.

**To Accelerate for Passing**

Depress the accelerator as you would normally. When the pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

**Using Electronic Speed Control On Hills**

**NOTE:** The Electronic Speed Control system maintains speed up and down hills. A slight speed change on moderate hills is normal.

On steep hills, a greater speed loss or gain and/or more frequent downshifts (auto transmission only) may occur so it may be preferable to drive without Electronic Speed Control.

**WARNING!**

Electronic Speed Control can be dangerous where the system cannot maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control and have an accident. Do not use Electronic Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered or slippery.

## 150 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

### ELECTRICAL POWER OUTLET

There are two 12 Volt (13 Amp) auxiliary power outlets that can provide power for accessories designed for use with the standard power outlet adapters. The power outlet, located in the lower portion of the instrument panel, has a snap-on plastic cap so that it can be covered when not in use. When the optional cigar lighter heating element is used in the left-side power outlet, it heats when pushed in and pops out automatically when ready for use. **To preserve the heating element, do not hold the lighter in the heating position.**

**NOTE:** Do not exceed the maximum power of 160 Watts (13 Amps) at 12 Volts. If the 160 Watt (13 Amp) power rating is exceeded the fuse protecting the system will need to be replaced.



#### Power Outlets

The left-side power outlet is powered when the key is in the ON or ACC positions.

The right-side power outlet is powered directly from the battery (power available at all times). Items plugged into this power outlet may discharge the battery and/or prevent the engine from starting.

### WARNING!

To avoid serious injury or death:

- Only devices designed for use in this type of outlet should be inserted into any 12 Volt outlet.
- Do not touch with wet hands.
- Close the lid when not in use and while driving the vehicle.
- If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.

### CAUTION!

- Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.
- Accessories that draw higher power (i.e., coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will degrade the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.
- After the use of high-power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the alternator to recharge the vehicle's battery.

*(Continued)*

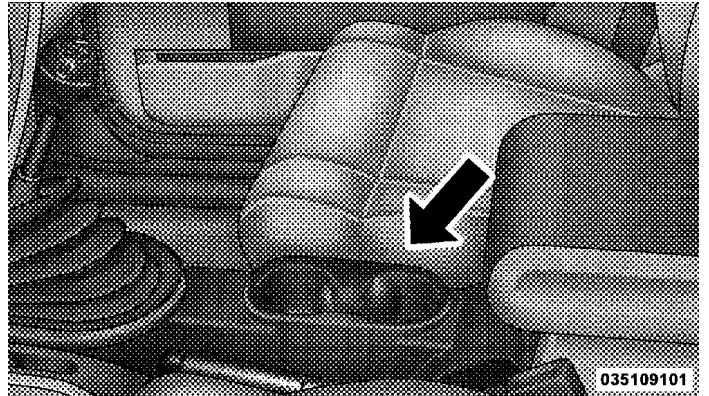
**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

**CUPHOLDERS**

**Front Cupholders**

The front cupholders are located in the center console.

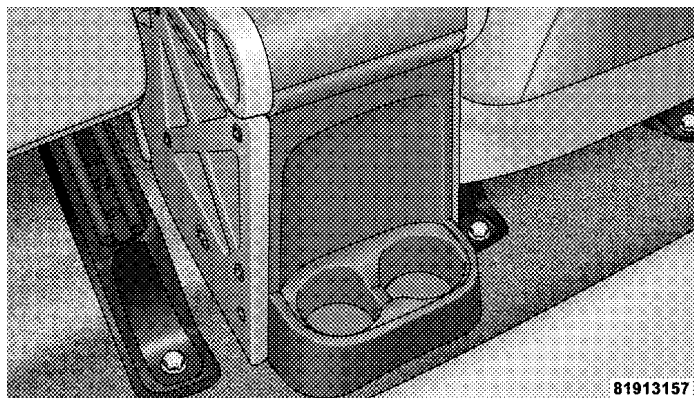


**Front Cupholders**

**NOTE:** The front cupholder insert is removable for cleaning.

**Rear Cupholders**

The rear cupholders are located on the back of the center console.



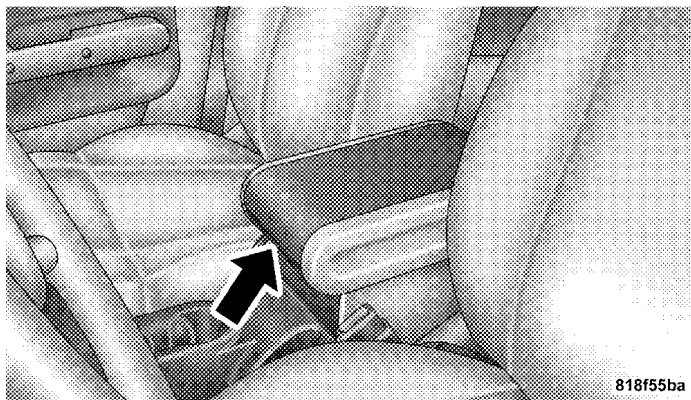
81913157

**Rear Cupholders**

**STORAGE**

**Console Storage Compartment**

To lock or unlock the storage compartment, insert the ignition key and turn. To open the storage compartment, press the latch and lift the cover.



818f55ba

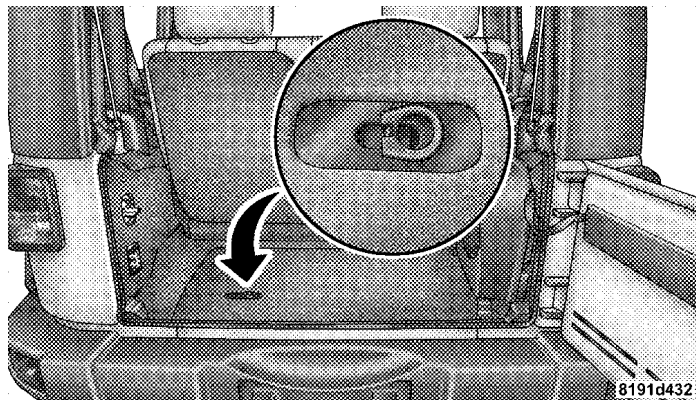
**Center Console**

### Rear Storage Compartment

The rear storage compartment cover is held by a spring-loaded latch. In order to remove the rear storage compartment cover, use the following procedure:

**NOTE:** The rear storage compartment latch should not be used as cargo tie-down.

1. Flip up the pull loop so it is perpendicular (straight up) to the top surface of the tray.
2. Pull up on the loop and twist it 90 degrees, so it is parallel to the slotted hole in the tray.
3. Open the rear compartment cover.



Rear Storage Cover

### DUAL TOP — IF EQUIPPED

If your vehicle is equipped with a Dual Top, you must remove one of the tops from the vehicle. If the soft top is removed, the pivot brackets must also be removed from the sport bar. The soft top was installed at the factory for shipping purposes only. The soft top and the



**hard top are to be used independently.** Removal is mandatory to prevent any possible wear and tear on the soft top. Your vehicle warranty will not cover damage resulting from both tops remaining on the vehicle at the same time for extended periods of time.

### Removing the Soft Top

1. Locate and remove the two boxes that contain the following items:

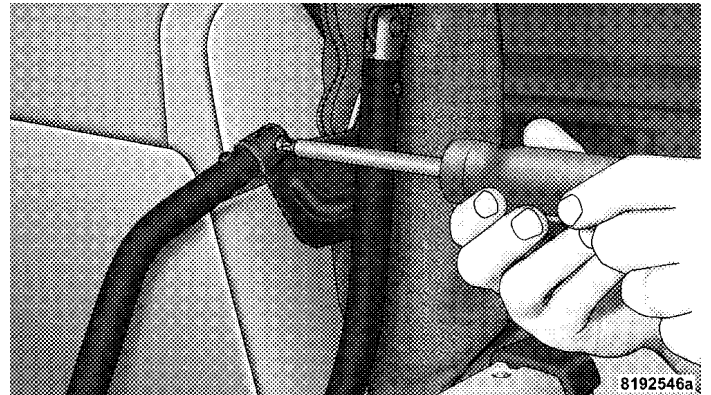
- Right and left door frames
- Door frame attachment knobs (four for two-door models, six for four-door models)
- Right and left quarter windows
- Rear window
- Two rear window roll up straps
- Two Sunrider® secure straps (if equipped)

- Two rear swing gate brackets

2. Remove the hard top. Refer to “Freedom Top Three-Piece Modular Hard Top — Front/Rear Panel Removal” in this section.

3. Remove the soft top bow assembly pivot bracket screws (two per side) using a #T30 Torx® head driver.

3



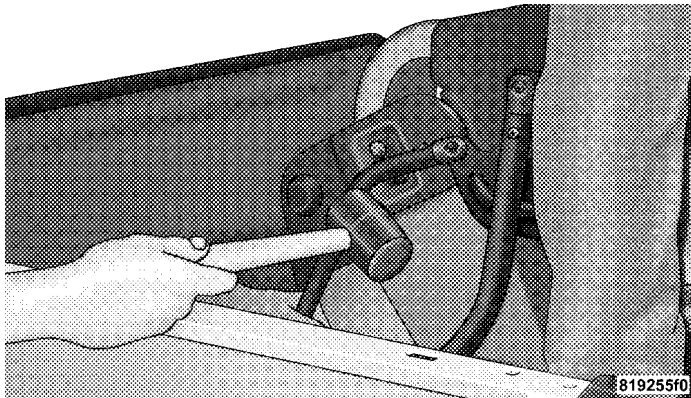
8192546a



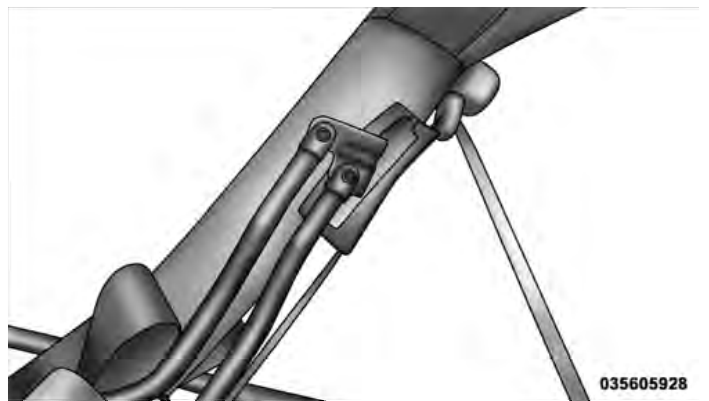
## 156 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

4. Disconnect the knuckles from the left and right metal pivot brackets. Remove the soft top from the vehicle and store in a clean, dry location.

**NOTE:** To aid in disconnecting the knuckles, you may carefully tap on the knuckles using a rubber mallet.



5. Unzip the zipper on the sport bar cover to expose the pivot brackets. Remove the brackets using a #T30 Torx® head driver. Recover and re-zip the sports bar cover. Store the pivot brackets and screws in a safe place.



6. Reinstall the hard top. Refer to “Freedom Top Three-Piece Modular Hard Top — Front/Rear Panel Installation” in this section.

### Installing the Soft Top

**NOTE:** The following procedures are for first time set up only. For future soft top procedures, refer to “Soft Top” in this section.

1. Locate and remove the following items prior to hard top removal:

- Right and left door frames
- Door frame attachment knobs (four for two-door models, six for four-door models)
- Right and left quarter windows
- Rear window

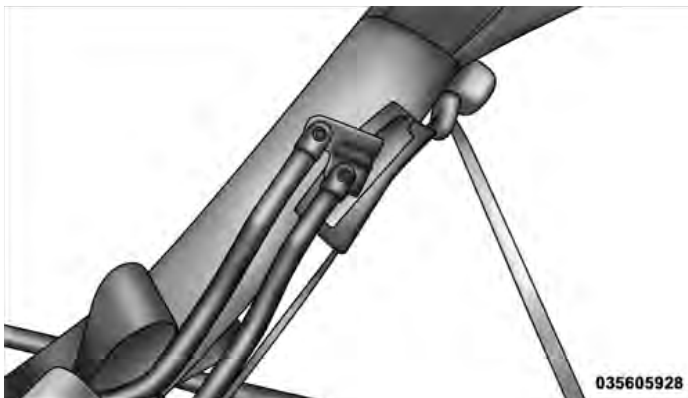
2. Remove the hard top. Refer to “Freedom Top Three-Piece Modular Hard Top — Front/Rear Panel Removal” in this section.

3. Install the door frames. Refer to “Door Frame” in this section.

4. If the soft top has been removed, follow these steps to reinstall the soft top. If the soft top is on the vehicle, proceed to step #5.

## 158 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

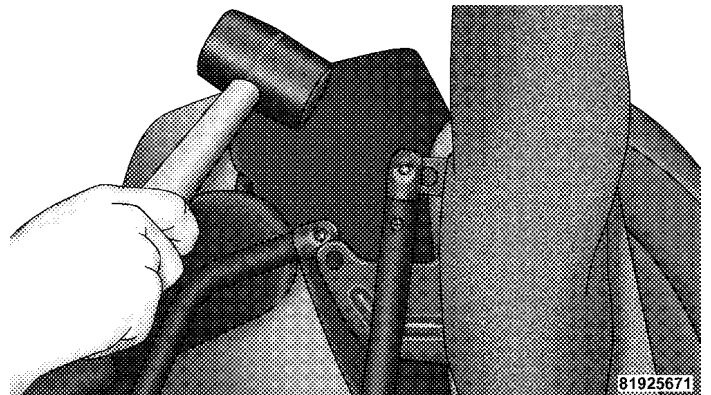
a. If the pivot brackets have been removed, unzip the sport bar covers and attach the pivot brackets to the sports bar with the four screws that were removed using a #T30 Torx® head driver. Re-cover and re-zip the sport bar covers.



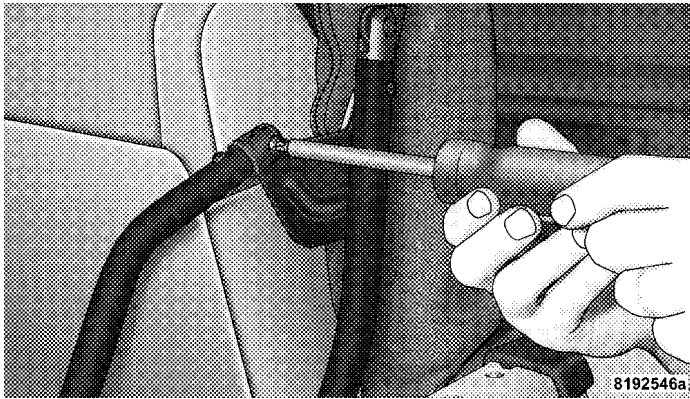
b. Lay the soft top into the rear of the vehicle with the bows pointing forward and the curved portion of the bows facing upward.

c. Reattach the knuckles onto the metal pivot brackets.

**NOTE:** To aid in reattaching the knuckles, you may carefully tap on the knuckles using a rubber mallet.



d. Screw the pivot screws back into place using a #T30 Torx® head driver. Secure them until they are snug, being careful not to cross-thread the screws or over-tighten.



### CAUTION!

**Do not overtighten the screws. You can strip the screws if they are overtightened.**

5. Remove the swing gate bar (black metal bar for bottom of rear window) and set aside.

**3**

**NOTE:** Be sure the wire harness in the left rear corner is not tangled in the soft top bows before you lift the top.

6. Unsnap and remove the black boot cover. This cover should be discarded. It was intended as a protective cover for shipping only.

**NOTE:** A visual instruction sheet is enclosed in the dual top wrap.

7. Put up the soft top. Refer to “Soft Top — Putting Up the Soft Top” in this section.

**FREEDOM TOP™ THREE-PIECE MODULAR  
HARD TOP — IF EQUIPPED**

**CAUTION!**

- The hard top is not designed to carry any additional loads such as roof racks, spare tires, building, hunting, or camping supplies, and/or luggage, etc. Also, it was not designed as a structural member of the vehicle, and thus cannot properly carry any additional loads other than environmental (rain, snow, etc.).
- Do not move your vehicle until the top has been either fully attached to the windshield frame and bodyside, or fully removed.

**CAUTION!**

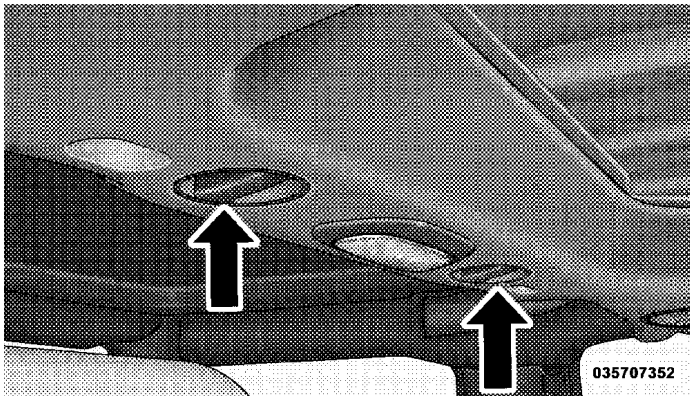
Failure to follow these cautions may cause interior water damage, stains or mildew:

- It is recommended that the top be free of water prior to panel removal. Removing the top, opening a door or lowering a window while the top is wet may allow water to drip into the vehicles interior.
- The hard top assembly must be positioned properly to ensure sealing. Improper installation can cause water to leak into the vehicles interior.
- Careless handling and storage of the removable roof panels may damage the seals, causing water to leak into the vehicles interior.
- The front panel(s) must be positioned properly to ensure sealing. Improper installation can cause water to leak into the vehicles interior.

### Front Panel(s) Removal

**NOTE:** Left panel must be removed before removing right panel.

1. Fold down the sun visor, and move it to the side.
2. Turn the rear fasteners (knobs) (located on the overhead speaker bar assembly) counterclockwise until they can be removed.



3. Turn the center L-shaped locks (two) from the center of the roof panel.

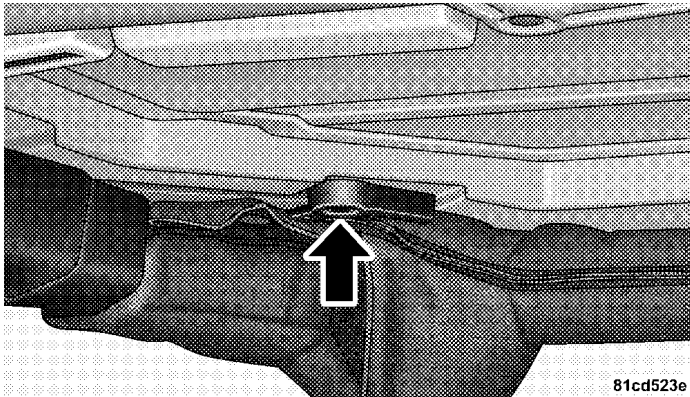


3



162 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

4. Turn the rear L-shaped lock (located above the shoulder belt anchorage).



5. Unlatch the header panel latch located at the top of the windshield.



6. Remove the left-hand panel.

To remove the right panel, follow the steps above except for Step 3.

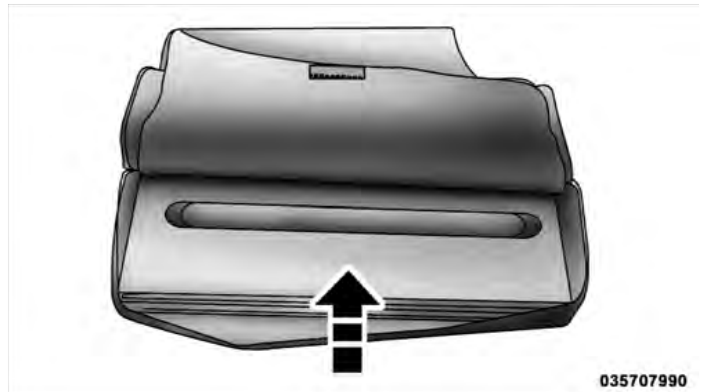
### Freedom Top™ Storage Bag

Your vehicle comes with a Freedom Top™ storage bag that allows you to store your Freedom Top™ panels. The storage bag contains two compartments and fits behind the rear seat.

Lay the Freedom bag down so the loops and hooks are facing downward. Unzip the bag and fold back the outer flap. Release the Velcro on the black panel divider and fold it back.

**NOTE:** Ensure the front Freedom Top™ panel latch is closed prior to inserting the panel into the Freedom bag.

Insert the right side Freedom panel into the bag with the latches facing downward.

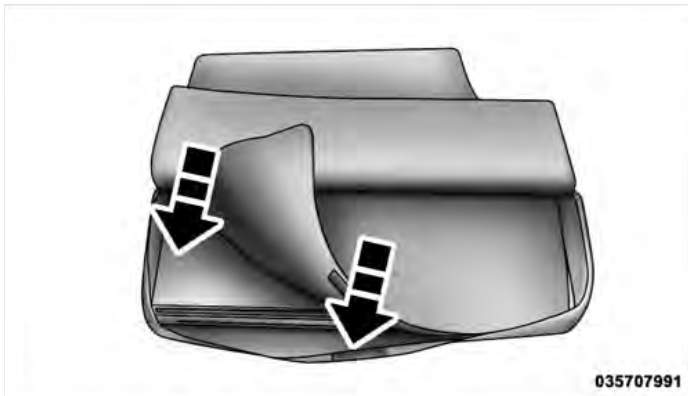




164 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

Unfold the black panel divider (ensure the divider is laying flat). Secure the Velcro, located at the center of the divider.

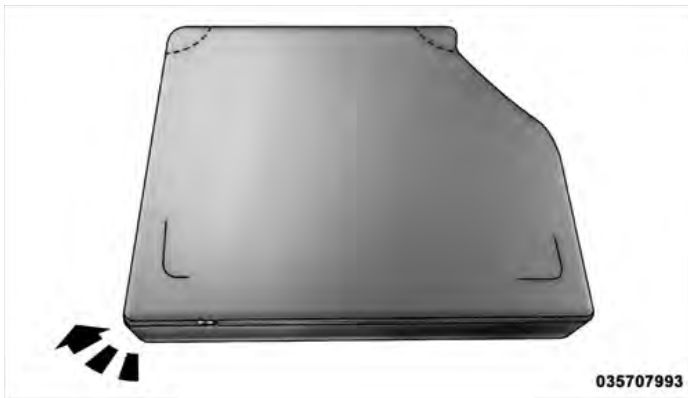
**NOTE:** Ensure the front Freedom panel latch is closed prior to inserting the panel into the bag.



Insert the left-side Freedom panel into the bag with the latches facing upward.



Unfold the outer flap and zip the Freedom bag closed.



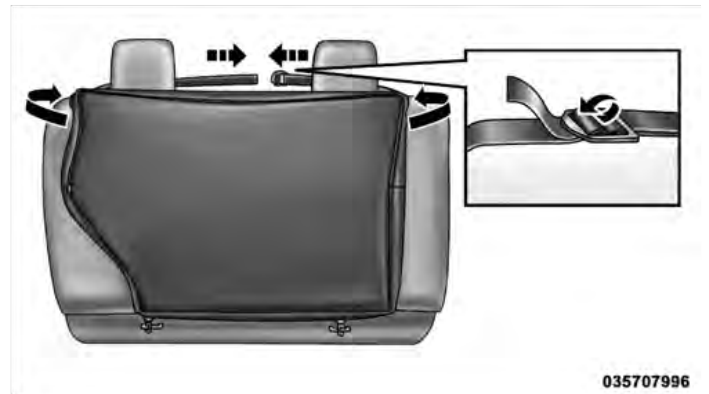
Install the seat attachment strap (at the top of the bag) through the loops.



**166 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE**

Lift the Freedom bag into the vehicle with the hooks and straps facing the back of the rear seat. Attach the clips at the bottom of the bag to the child restraint anchorages, located at the base of the rear seat.

Wrap the upper strap around the rear head restraints and loop the strap through the buckle. Pull on the strap to tighten the Freedom bag securely against the rear seat.



### Front Panel(s) Installation

**NOTE:** Set the panels on the windshield frame so that there is no overhang. Also, make sure that the panels are sitting flush with the body.

1. Install the right panel first, then the left panel.
2. Reinstall the panel(s) using the same steps for removal in reverse order.

### Front Panel(s) Installation with Rear Hard Top Removed

1. Turn the left and right panels over and move the spacer block (located on the rear of the panel) upward 90 degrees.



**NOTE:** The front panel(s) must be positioned properly to ensure sealing. Set the panels on the windshield frame so that there is no overhang. Also, make sure that the panels are sitting flush with the body.

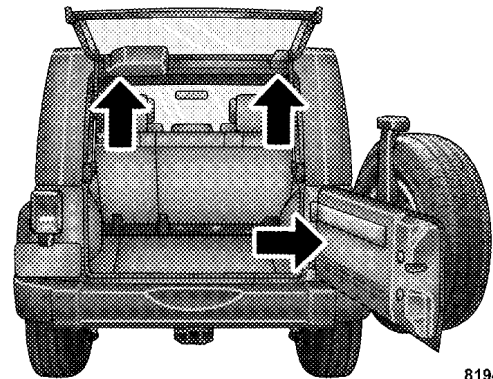
## 168 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

2. Install the right panel first, then the left panel.
3. Reinstall the panel(s) using the same steps for removal in reverse order.

### Rear Hard Top Removal

1. Remove both front panels. Refer to "Front Panel(s) Removal" in this section.
2. Open both doors.
3. Remove the two Torx® head screws that secure the hard top at the B-pillar (near the top of the door) using a #40 Torx® head driver (Four-Door Only).
4. Remove the six Torx® head screws that secure the hard top to the vehicle (along the interior bodyside) using a #40 Torx® head driver.

5. Open the swing gate all the way to ensure clearance of the rear window glass. Lift the rear window glass.

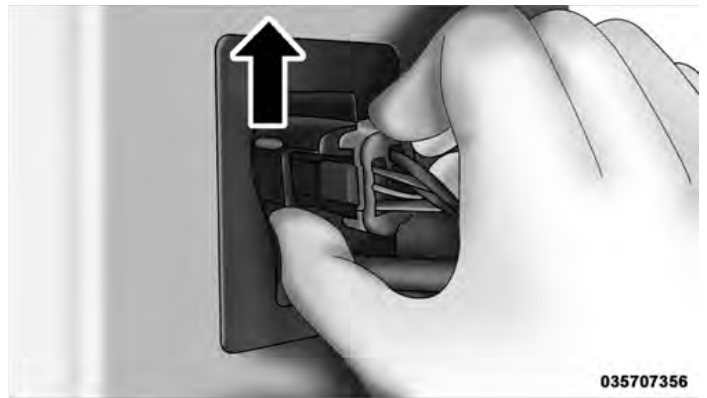


81947a57

6. Locate the wire harness on the left rear inside corner of the vehicle.

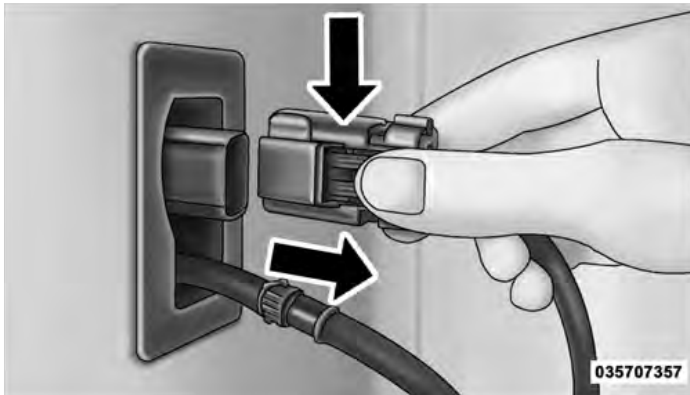


7. Release the red locking tab by pushing upward.



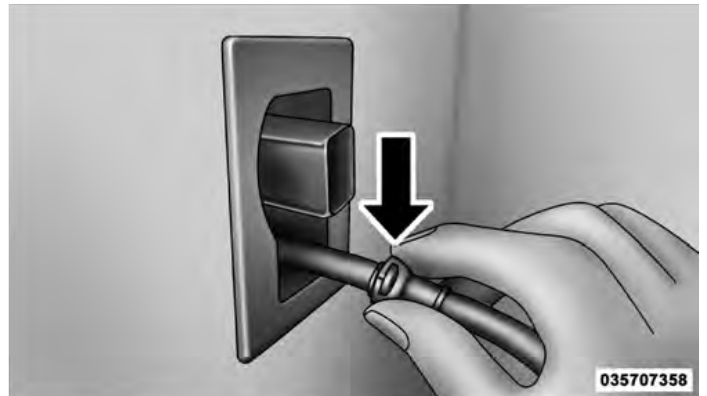
## 170 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

8. To remove the wiring harness press the side tab and pull to disconnect.



**NOTE:** If necessary, pliers can be used to lightly squeeze grips while disconnecting the washer hose.

9. To remove the washer hose, pinch the grips on hose connector and pull.



10. Close the swing gate.

11. Remove the hard top from the vehicle. Place the hard top on a soft surface to prevent damage.

**Rear Hard Top Installation**

**NOTE:** If the door frames are installed from soft top usage, they must be removed prior to installation of the hard top.

1. Inspect the hard top seals for damage and replace if necessary.
2. Install the hard top using the same steps for removal in reverse order.

Make sure that the hard top is sitting flush with the body at the sides and check to ensure that there is a uniform gap between the lift glass and hard top.

**NOTE:**

- The Torx fasteners that attach the hard top to the body should be torqued to 66 in lb +/- 22 in lb (7.5 N·m +/- 2.5 N·m)

- It is not necessary to pinch connection when reinstalling washer hose. Push on until click is heard.

**DOOR FRAME**

**WARNING!**

**Do not drive your vehicle on pavement with the door frame(s) removed as you will lose the protection that they can provide. This procedure is furnished for use during off-road operation only.**

**CAUTION!**

**Failure to follow these cautions may cause interior water damage, stains or mildew:**

- **Opening a door or lowering a window while the top is wet may allow water to drip into the vehicle's interior.**

*(Continued)*

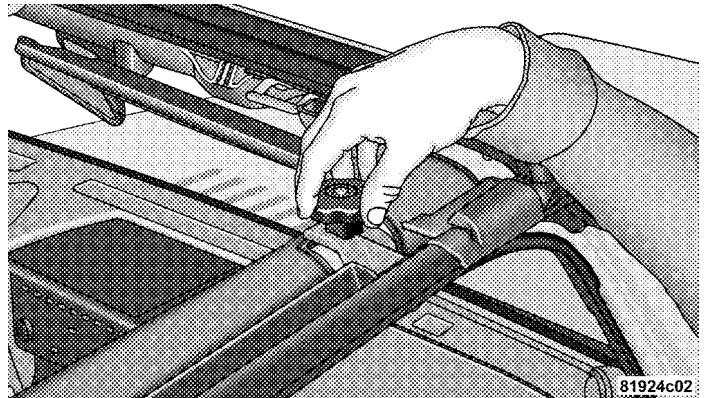


**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Careless handling and storage of the removable door frame(s) may damage the seals, causing water to leak into the vehicle's interior.
- The door frame(s) must be positioned properly to ensure sealing. Improper installation can cause water to leak into the vehicle's interior.

**Door Frame Removal — Two-Door Models**

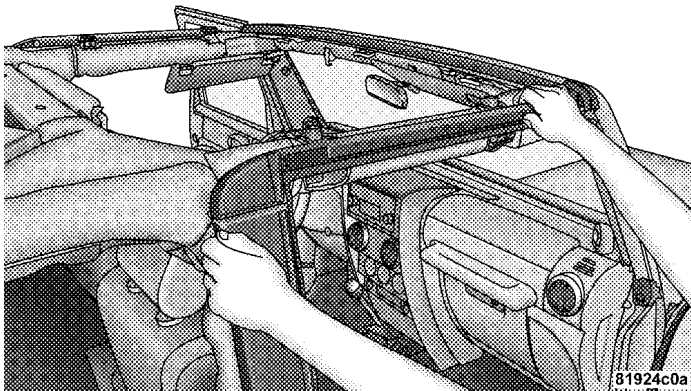
1. Unscrew and remove the door frame attachment knobs (two per side).



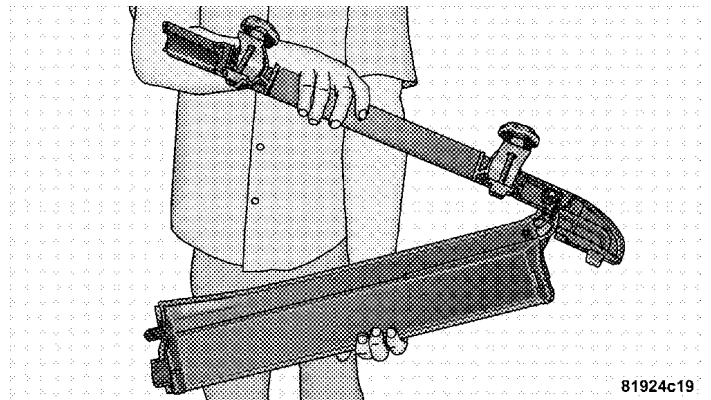
**WARNING!**

Use both hands to remove the door frames. The door frames will fold and could cause injury if both hands are not used.

2. Place one hand on the upper rear and one hand on the front of the door frame.
3. Pull the frame toward you with your rearward hand to remove the frame from the vehicle.



4. Screw the knobs back into the door frame and fold for storage. Store in a secure location.



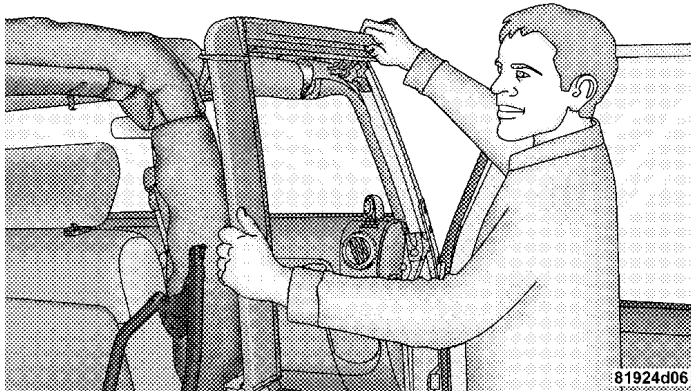
81924c19

**WARNING!**

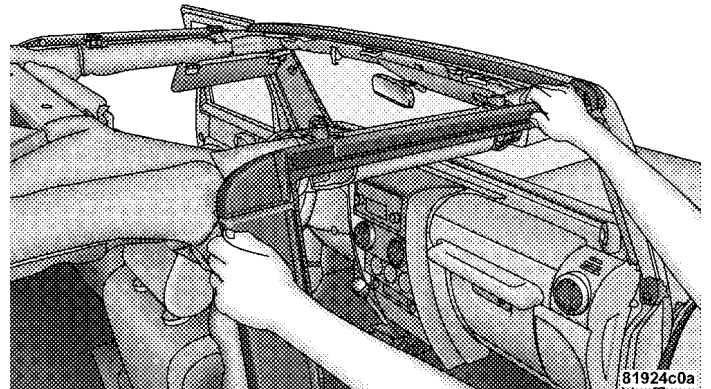
Never store the door frames in your vehicle. In an event of an accident, a loose door frame may cause personal injury. If removed, always store the door frames outside of the vehicle.

### Door Frame Installation — Two-Door Models

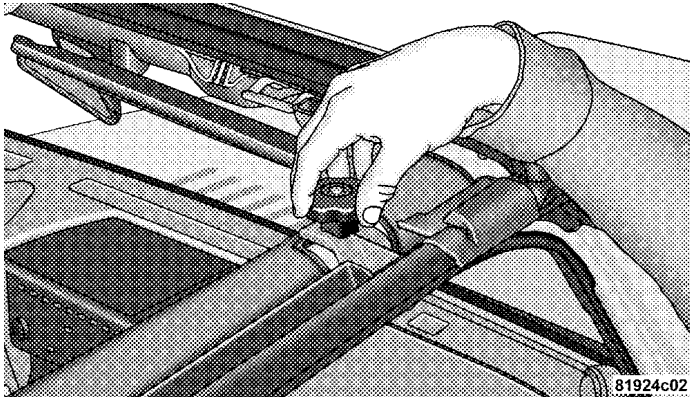
1. Unfold door frame and unscrew thumbscrews.
2. Set the door frame pin into the hole on top of the body side, behind the door opening.



3. After the door frame pin has been set into the body side hole, carefully set the front of the door frame into the rubber seal at the top of the windshield.
4. Starting with the front of the door frame, clip it over the metal side bar and then clip the rear, making sure that the material for the side bar covers is not pinched by the door frame.

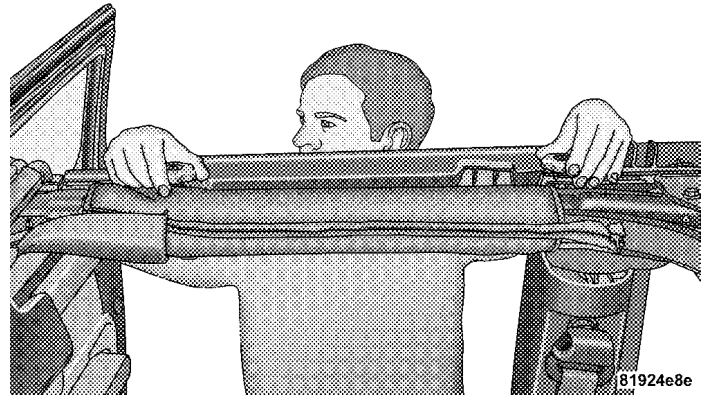


5. Starting with the front knob, screw in and tighten both knobs. Repeat on the other side.



**Door Frame Removal — Four-Door Models**

1. Unscrew and remove the two forward most door frame attachment knobs.



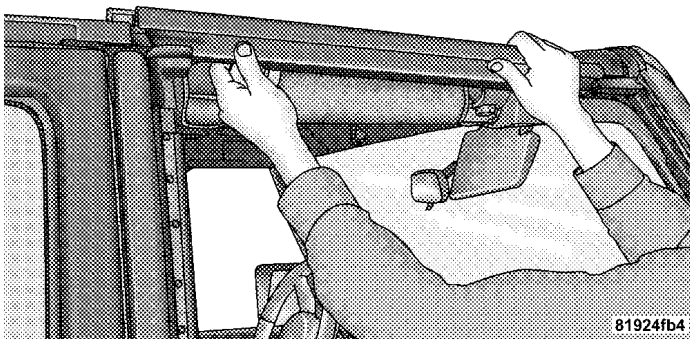
3

**WARNING!**

Use both hands to remove the door frames. The door frames will fold and could cause injury if both hands are not used.

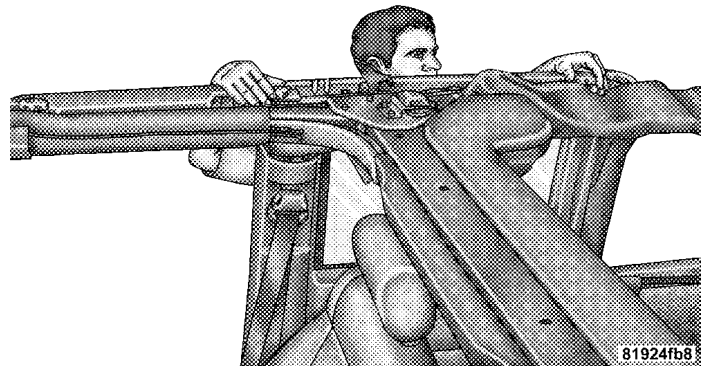
176 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

2. Place one hand on the upper rear and one hand on the upper front of the front door frame.



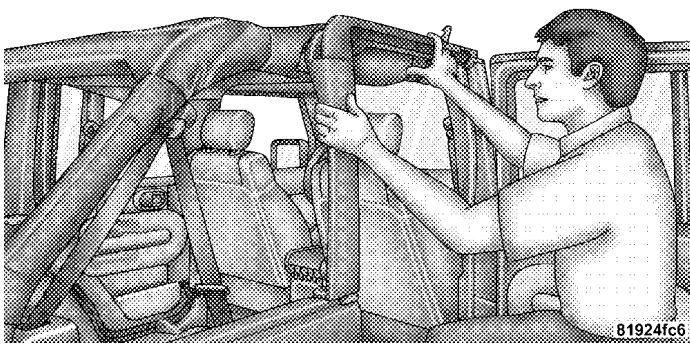
3. Pull the frame toward you with your front hand to remove the frame from the vehicle.

4. Unscrew and remove the remaining door frame attachment knob on the rear door frame.

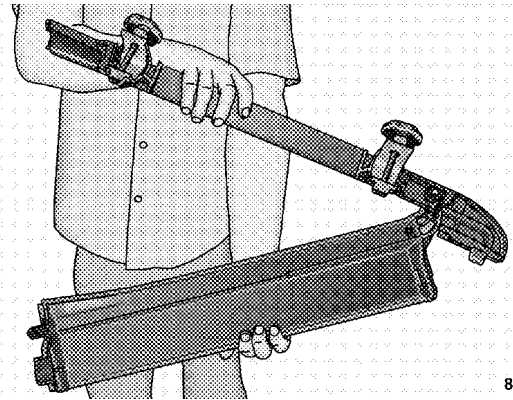




5. Place one hand on the upper rear and one hand on the upper front of the rear door frame. Pull the frame toward you with your rear hand to remove the frame from the vehicle.



6. Screw the knob back into the door frame and fold for storage. Store in a secure location.

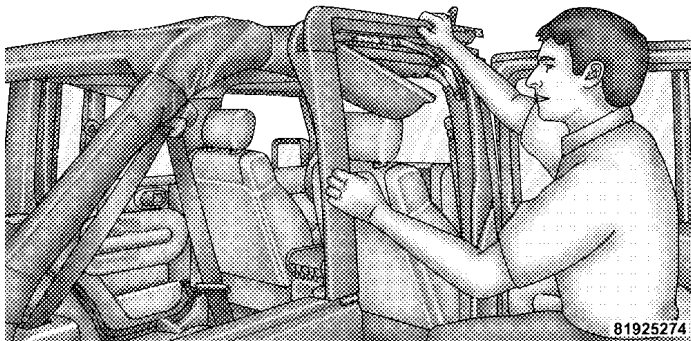


### WARNING!

Never store the door frames in your vehicle. In an event of an accident, a loose door frame may cause personal injury. If removed, always store the door frames outside of the vehicle.

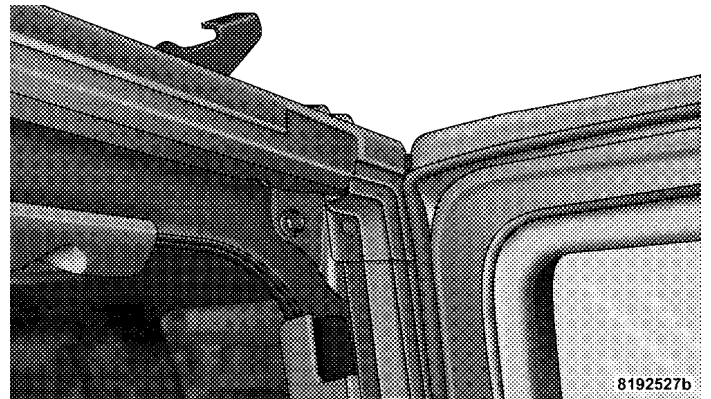
### Door Frame Installation — Four-Door Models

1. Install the rear door frame first.
2. Set the door frame pin into the hole on top of the body side, just behind the rear door opening.



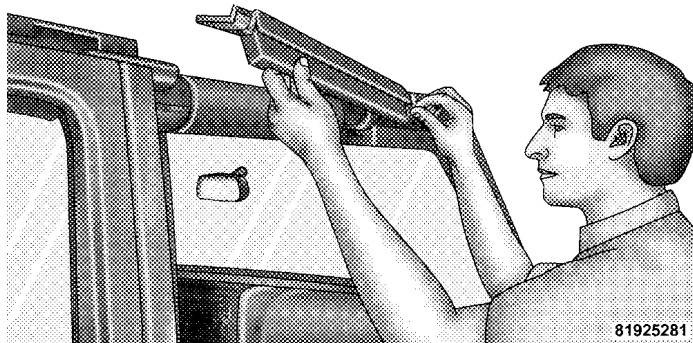
3. Position the top of the door frame against the metal sport bar and press onto the side bar making sure not to

pinch the material of the sports bar covers and to ensure it is properly positioned on the seal above the front of the rear door.



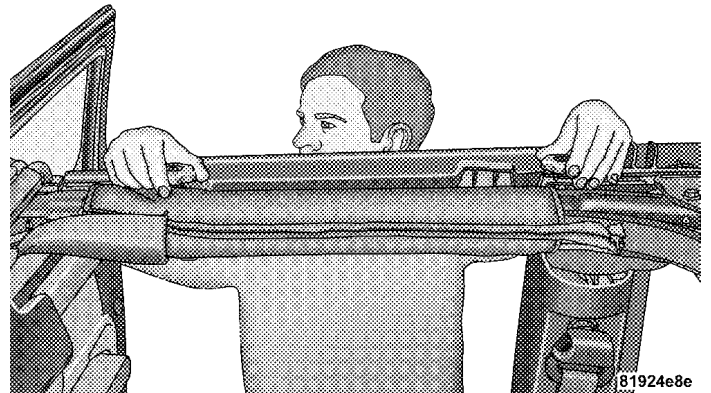
4. Loosely install the rear knob (long knob) to hold the door rail in position.

5. Carefully set the front of the front door frame in the rubber seal at the top of the windshield. Then, clip the front of the door rail over the side bar making sure that the material for the side bar cover is not pinched by the door frame. Position the rear of the front door frame to lay on top of the front of the rear door frame.



6. Loosely install both knobs beginning with the front knob (long knob). Then, install the middle knob (short knob) through the front and rear door frames and screw into the top of the B-pillar.

7. Tighten the front knob, then the rear most knob, and then the middle knob. Repeat this procedure for the other side.





**SOFT TOP — TWO DOOR MODELS**

Please visit the owners section of [Jeep.com](http://Jeep.com) for instructional videos.

**CAUTION!**

The soft top is not designed to carry any additional loads such as roof racks, spare tires, building, hunting, or camping supplies, and/or luggage, etc. Also, it was not designed as a structural member of the vehicle and, thus, cannot properly carry any additional loads other than environmental (rain, snow, etc.).

If the temperature is below 72°F (24°C) and/or the top has been folded down for a period of time, the top will appear to have shrunk when you raise it, making it difficult to put up. This is caused by a natural contraction of the vinyl coating on the fabric top.

Place the vehicle in a warm area. Pull steadily on the top fabric. The vinyl will stretch back to its original size and the top can then be installed. **If the temperature is 41°F (5°C) or below, do not attempt to put the top down or roll the rear or side curtains.**

**CAUTION!**

- Do not run a fabric top through an automatic car wash. Window scratches and wax build up may result.
- Do not lower the top when the temperature is below 41°F (5°C). Damage to the top may result.
- Do not move your vehicle until the top has been either fully attached to the windshield frame, or fully lowered.
- Do not lower the top with the windows installed. Window and top damage may occur.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Refer to "Appearance Care for Fabric Top Models" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information. It contains important information on cleaning and caring for your vehicle's fabric top.
- Do not use any tools (screwdrivers, etc.) to pry or force any of the clamps, clips, or retainers securing the soft top. Do not force or pry the soft top framework when opening or closing. Damage to the top may result.

**WARNING!**

- Do not drive the vehicle with the rear window curtain up unless the side curtains are also removed. Dangerous exhaust gases could enter the vehicle causing harm to the driver and passengers.

*(Continued)***WARNING! (Continued)**

- The fabric upper doors and fabric top are designed only for protection against the elements. Do not rely on them to contain occupants within the vehicle or to protect against injury during an accident. Remember, always wear seat belts.

**CAUTION!**

Failure to follow these cautions may cause interior water damage, stains or mildew on the top material:

- It is recommended that the top be free of water prior to opening it. Operating the top, opening a door or lowering a window while the top is wet may allow water to drip into the vehicle's interior.

*(Continued)*

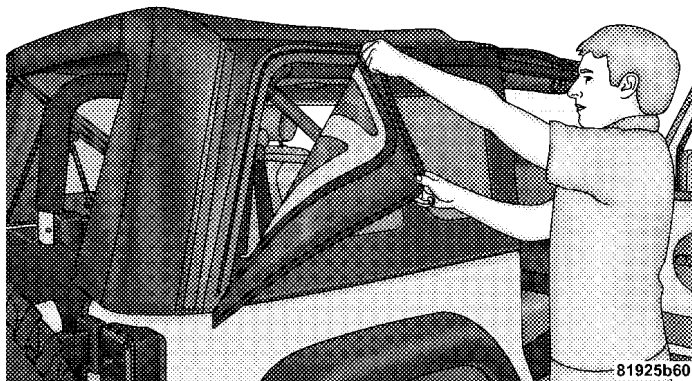
**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Careless handling and storage of the soft top may damage the seals, causing water to leak into the vehicle's interior.
- The soft top must be positioned properly to ensure sealing. Improper installation can cause water to leak into the vehicle's interior.

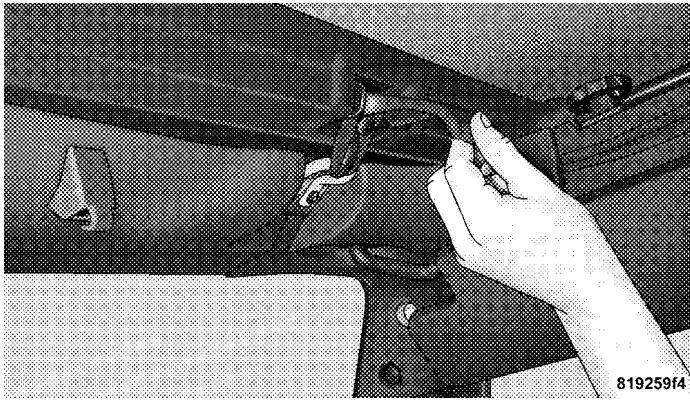
**Quick Steps to Lowering the Soft Top**

Refer to "Lowering the Soft Top" in this section for further information.

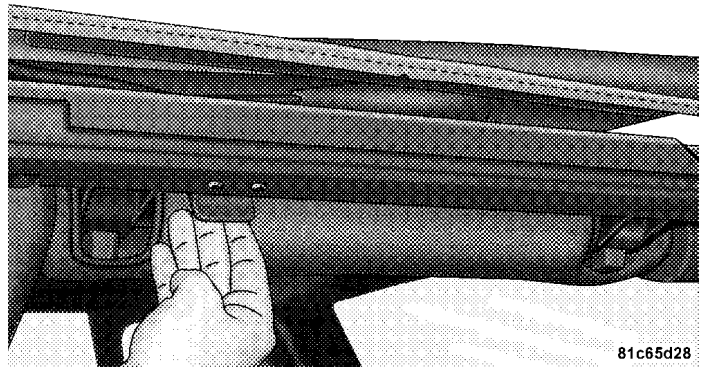
1. Remove the side and back windows.



2. Release header latches from the windshield frame.



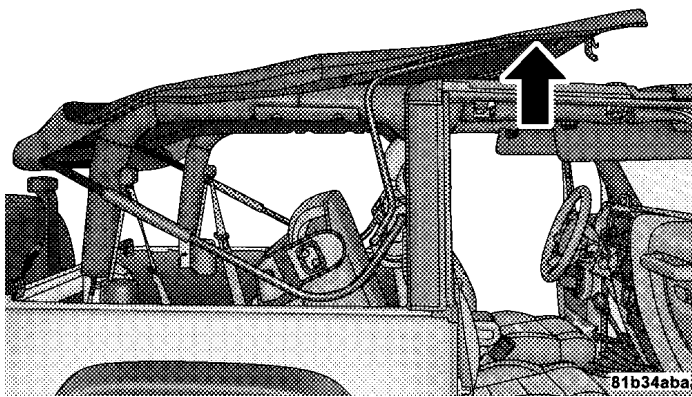
3. Release the Sunrider® latch (both sides).



## 184 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

4. Open the swing gate and lower the top.

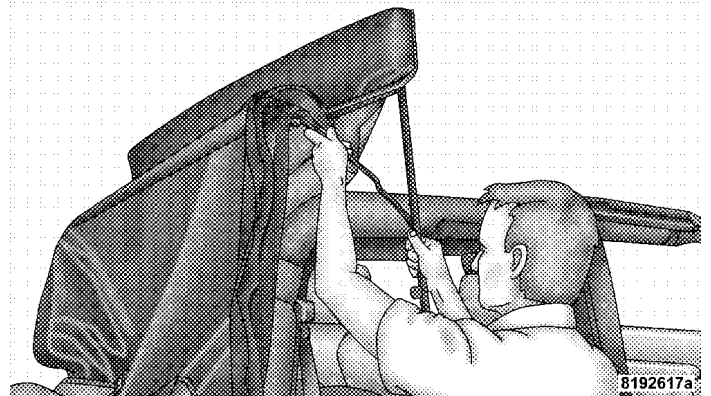
**NOTE:** Ensure fabric does not overhang the sides of the vehicle.

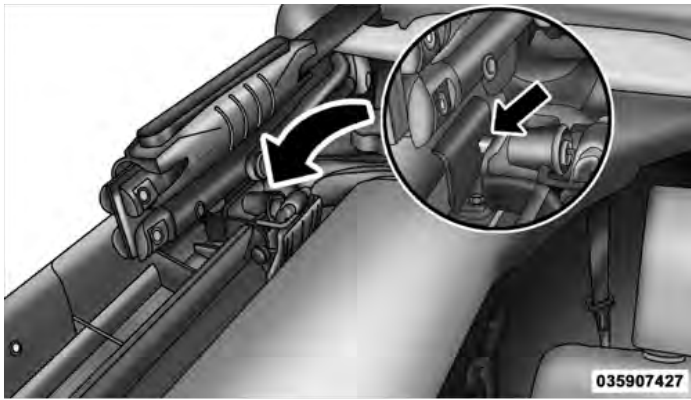


### Quick Steps to Raising the Soft Top

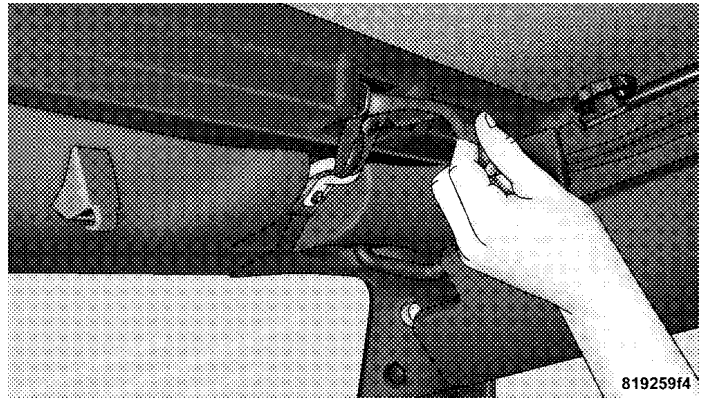
Refer to "Raising the Soft Top" in this section for further information.

1. Open the swing gate and raise the top, engaging the Sunrider® latches (another person may be needed to help with this operation).



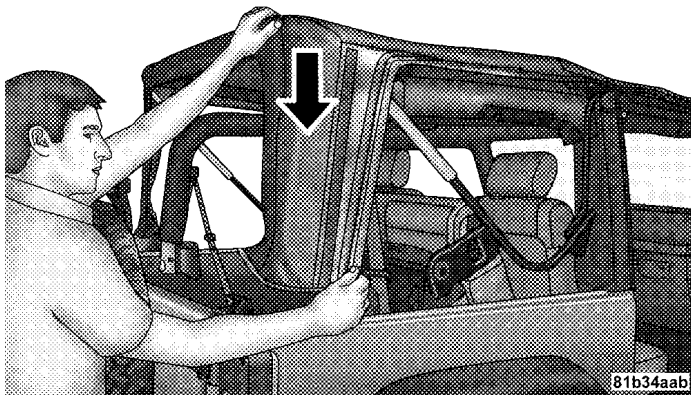


2. Engage header latches.

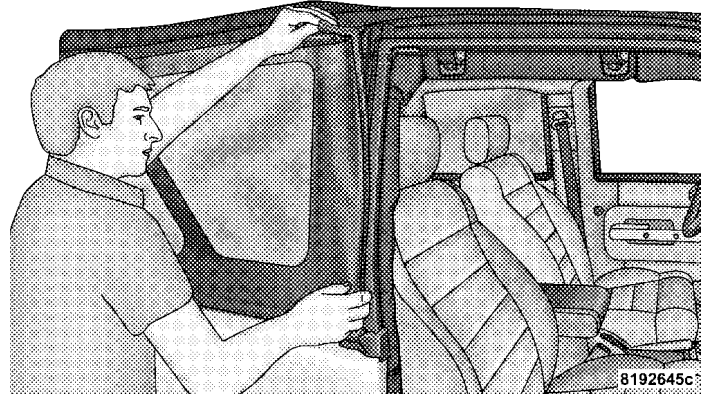




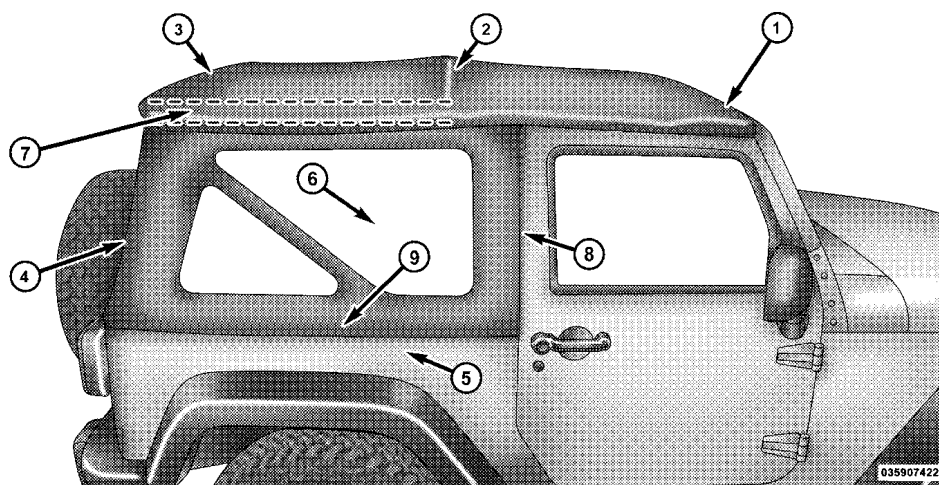
3. Install rear corner panels.



4. Install side and back windows.



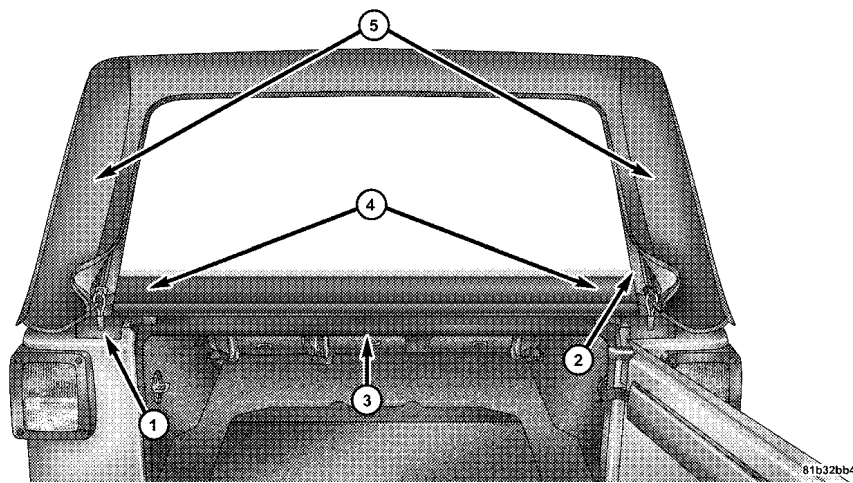
Lowering The Soft Top



- 1 — Header Bow
- 2 — 2-Bow
- 3 — 3-Bow
- 4 — Sail Panel
- 5 — Body Side Retainer

- 6 — Quarter Window
- 7 — Check Strap
- 8 — Front Retainer — Quarter Window
- 9 — Bottom Retainer — Quarter Window





- 1 — Zipper Start
- 2 — Zipper Finish
- 3 — Swing Gate Bar
- 4 — Swing Gate Brackets
- 5 — Sail Panels

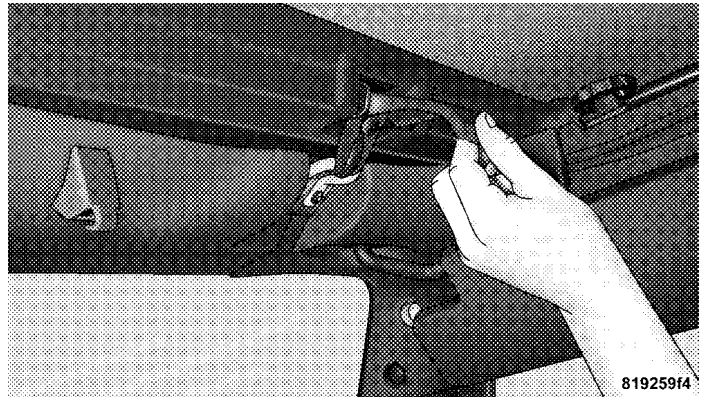
**NOTE:** Clean side and rear windows before removal to assist in preventing scratching during removal of the soft top. If zippers are difficult to operate due to road dust, etc., clean them with a mild soap solution and a small brush. Cleaning products are available through your authorized dealer.

1. If your vehicle has half doors, remove each half-door window by opening the door and lifting the half-door window out.

**NOTE:** Stow the half-door windows carefully outside of the vehicle, never inside, to avoid scratches.

2. Unclip and move the sun visors to the side.

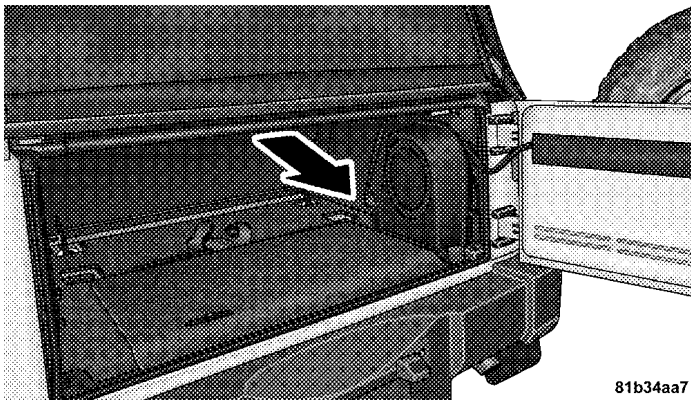
3. Release the header latches and leave the hooks in the loops on the windshield.



4. Open the swing gate.

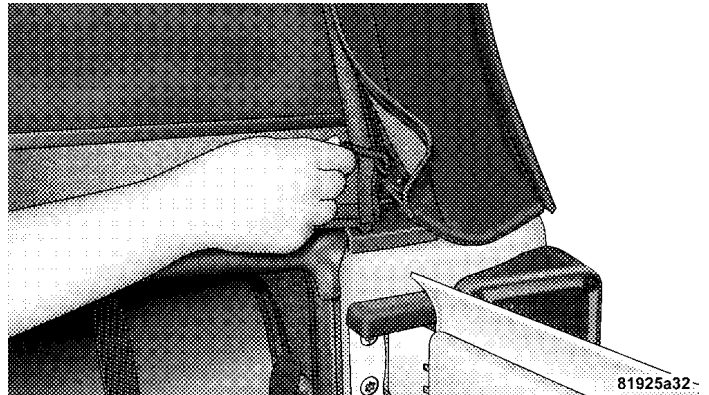
## 190 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

5. Before unzipping the rear window, release the first 3 in (7.6 cm) of both sail panels from the channel. Remove the swing gate bar by pulling it straight rearward out of the swing gate brackets.



81b34aa7

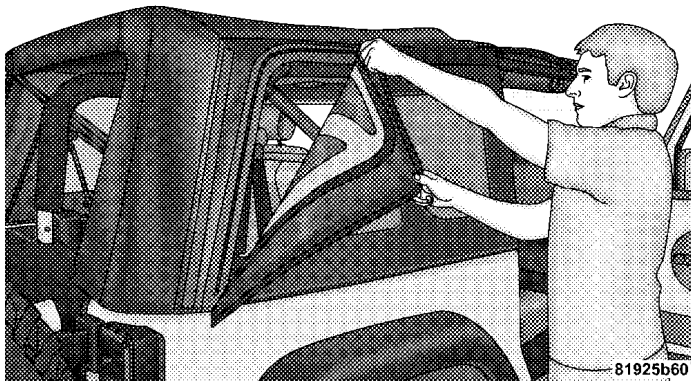
- Unzip the rear window starting at the right lower corner of the window. Pull the zipper up, across the top and down to the left lower corner. **Zipper pulls will stay on the rear window.** Pull down on the rear window to disengage it from the zipper on the top cover. Stow the windows carefully to avoid scratching.



81925a32-

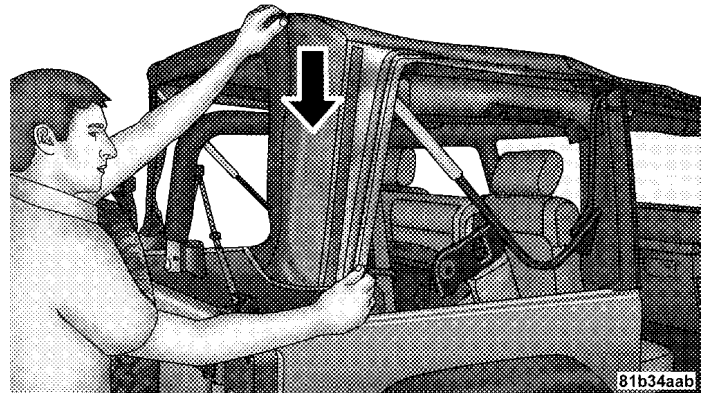
6. Undo the Velcro® that runs along the top and rear edge of the side window.

7. Beginning from the rear lower corner, completely unzip the window.



8. Once unzipped, remove the side window retainers from the door channel and body side channel. Repeat this step on the opposite side.

9. Finish releasing the sail panel retainers from the body side channel at the rear corners of the vehicle.

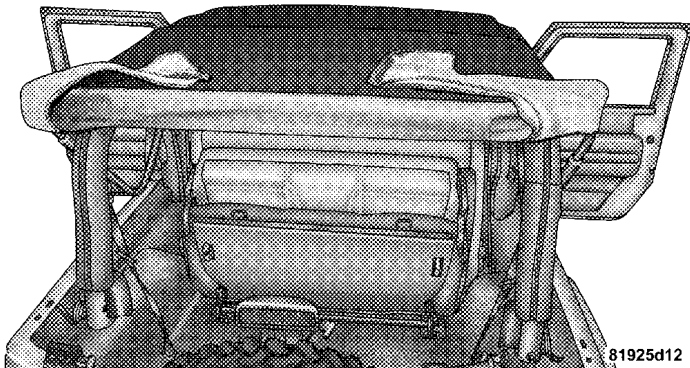


3

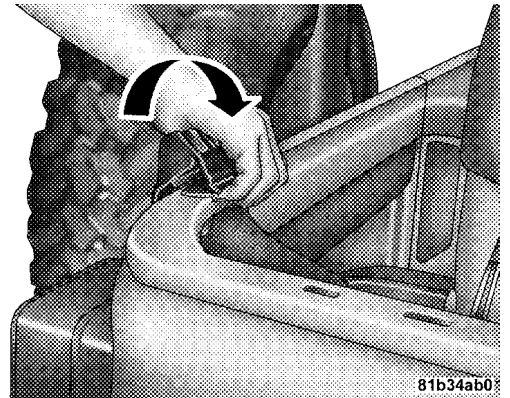
**NOTE:** When releasing the sail panel retainers, it is helpful to pull down on the rear roof bow.

192 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

10. As you begin to lower the top, fold the sail panels so that they rest on top of the soft top.



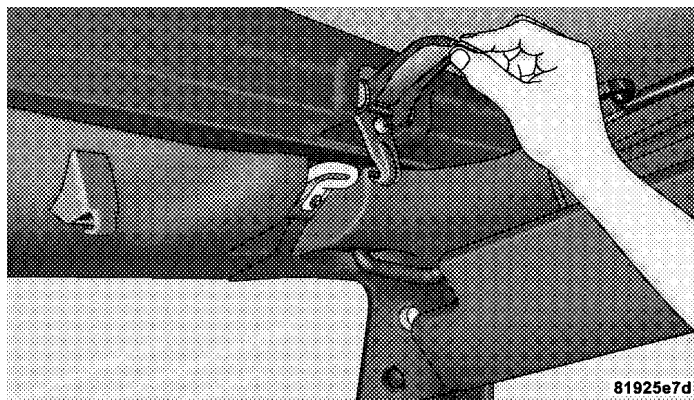
11. The swing gate brackets do not need to be removed unless the hard top is being installed. To remove the swing gate brackets, pull the front of the bracket forward while rolling the entire bracket back in toward the vehicle to disengage.



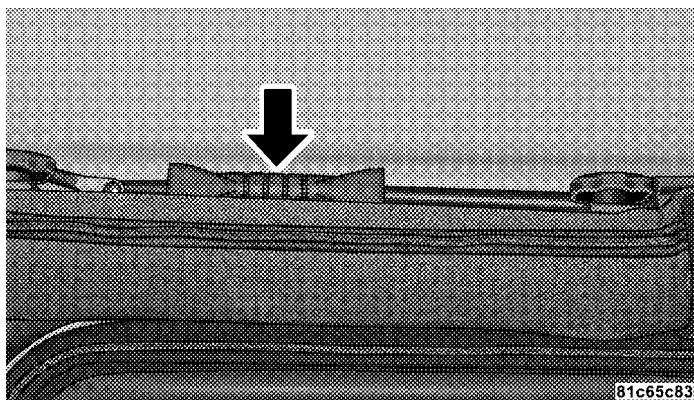
12. Completely release the latches from the loops on the windshield frame. **If your vehicle is not equipped with**



the Sunrider® package, proceed to Step 15.



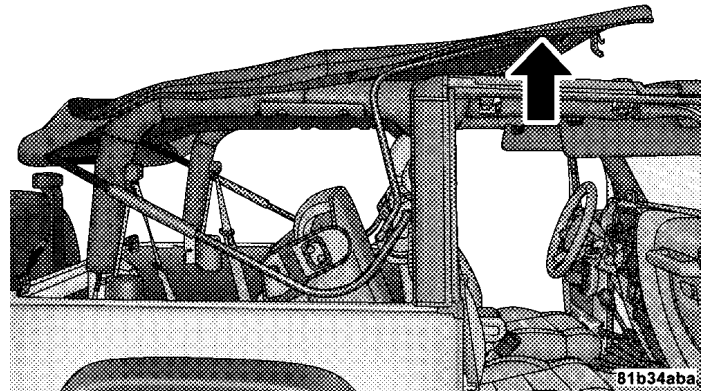
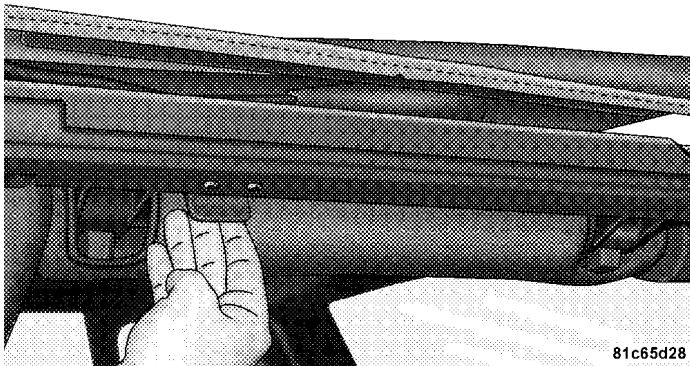
13. Make sure the plastic sleeves are slid rearward over the Sunrider® link (Sunrider® Models only).



194 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

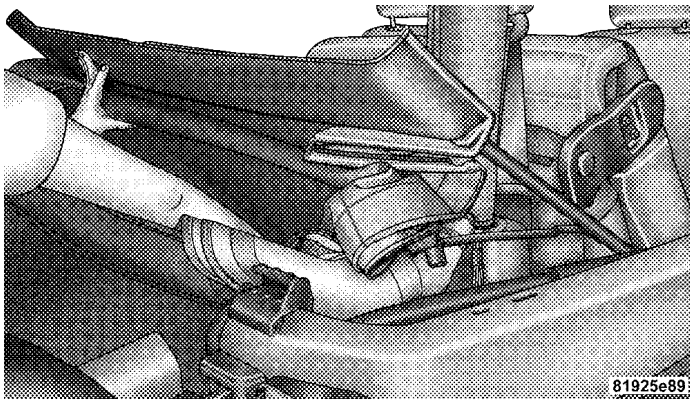
14. Unlatch the side bows from both door rails (Sunrider® Models only).

**NOTE:** Help from another person will ease this operation.



15. Before lowering the top, open the swing gate to prevent possible damage to the rear center high-mounted brake light. Move to the front of the vehicle. Grasp the side bow behind the header and lift the top, folding it toward the rear of the vehicle.

16. Tuck the fabric and the check straps between the bows and as far inward as possible. This will keep any portion of the top from flapping outside of the vehicle.



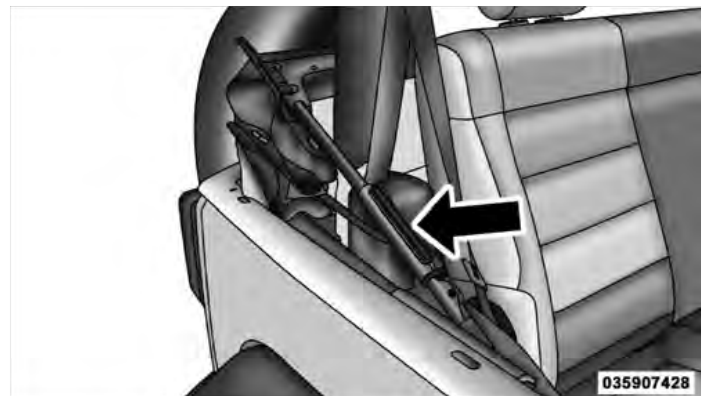
17. Close the front header latches.

18. Remove the door frames, if desired. Refer to “Door Frame” in this section for further information.

### Raising the Soft Top

1. Unclip and move the sun visors to the side.
2. Install door frames, if removed. Refer to “Door Frame” in this section for further information.
3. Make sure the plastic sleeve is slid over Sunrider® link (Sunrider® Models only).

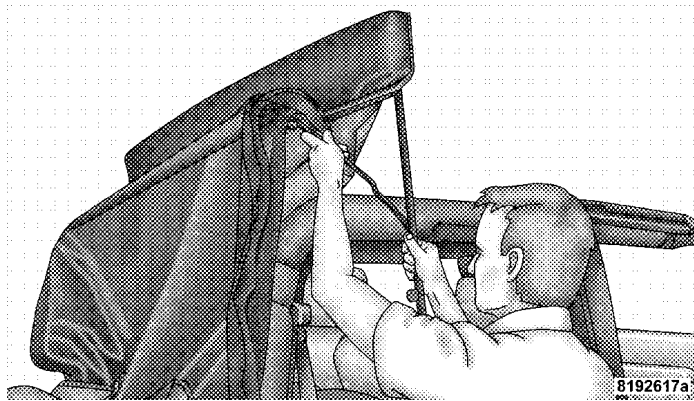
3



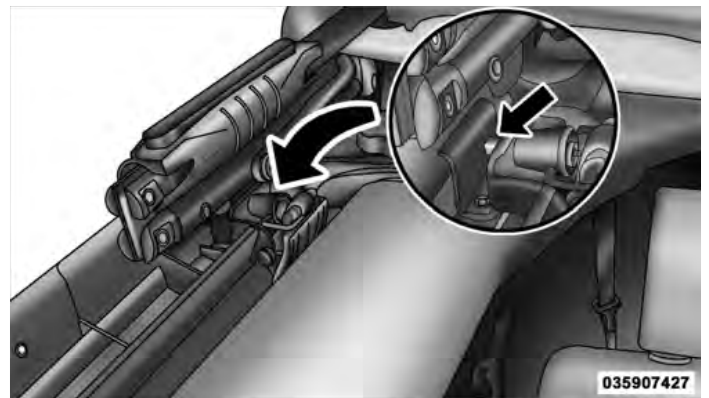


196 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

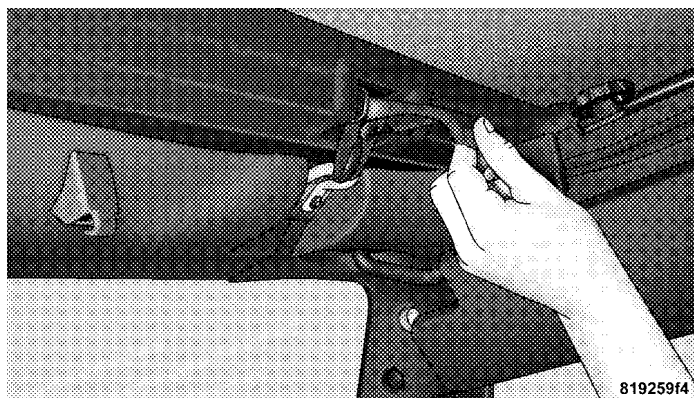
4. Standing on the side of the vehicle, lift the top by the side bow and the 2-bow (middle bow) up and over the sports bar until the header rests on the top of the windshield frame.



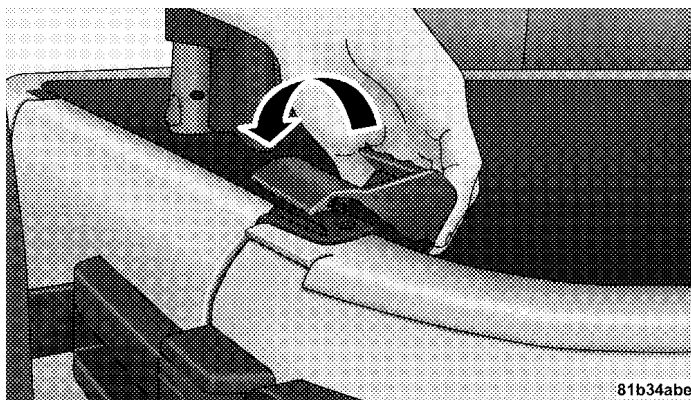
5. Make sure the Sunrider® bracket on the side bows latches to the door rails (Sunrider® Models only).



6. Open the header latches and engage the hook on each side onto the windshield loops (do not close the latches).

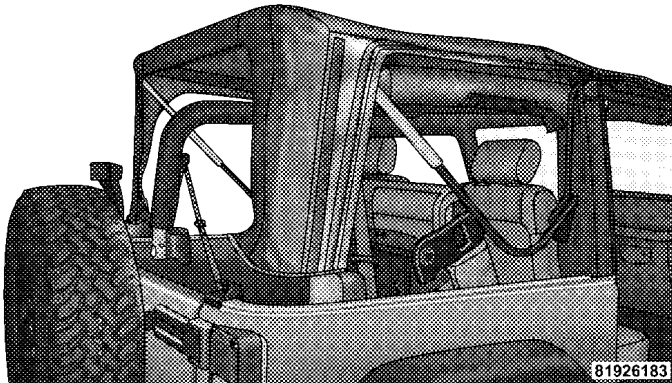


7. If the swing gate brackets were removed, install them by hooking the rear edge of the bracket on the interior side of the body channel. Then, rotate it rearward and over the channel until it snaps onto the exterior part of the rail. To be properly located, the bracket must only be clipped to the shortened rail edge.

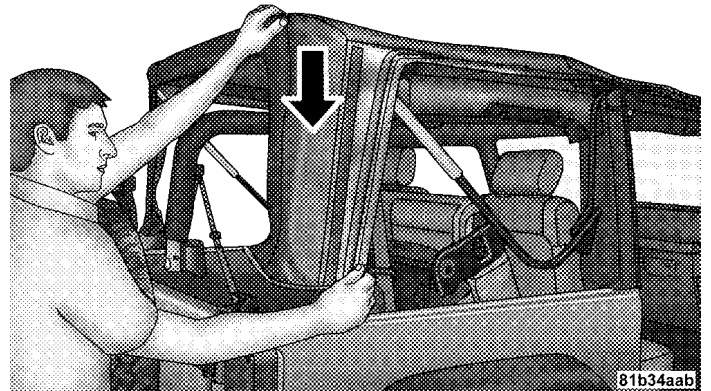


198 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

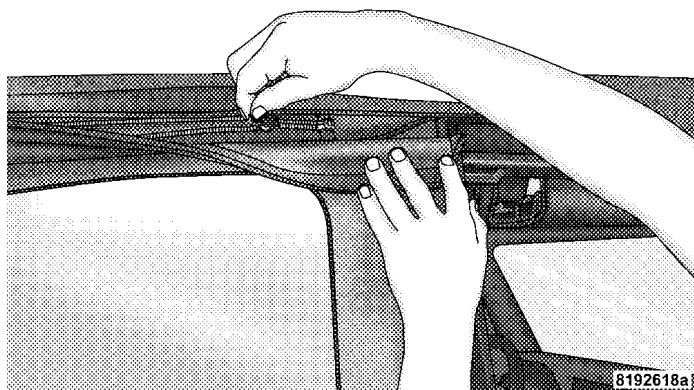
8. Move to the rear of the vehicle and gently pull the sail panels over the rear roof bow.



9. Partially install the sail panel retainers into the body side channel, leaving the last 3 in (7.6 cm) toward the rear window loose (on both sides). Pulling down on the rear roof bow (3-bow) will aid to reach the channel with the retainers.



10. To install the side windows, affix the window temporarily by attaching to the Velcro® in the rear corner. Start the zipper but close only about 1 in (2.5 cm).

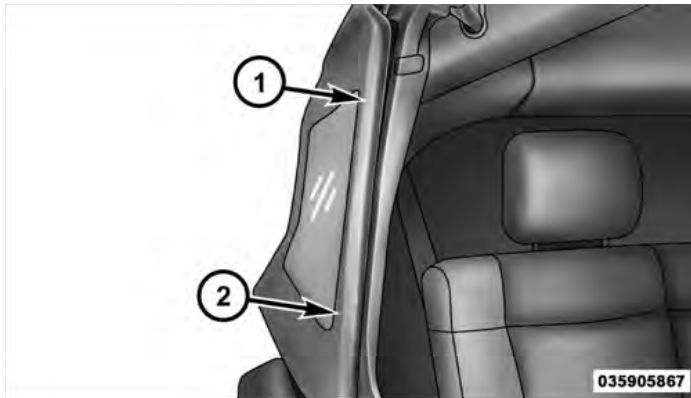


8192618a

11. Insert the front retainer of the window into the door channel, making sure the retainer is fully seated and properly positioned on the door frame. Failure to do so can result in wind and water leaks or damage to the window.

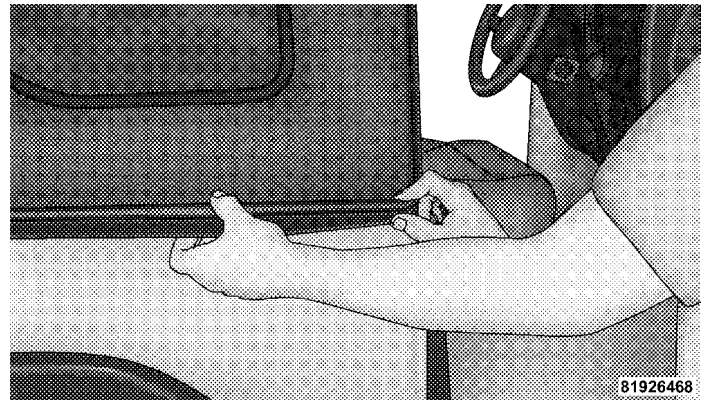


8192645c

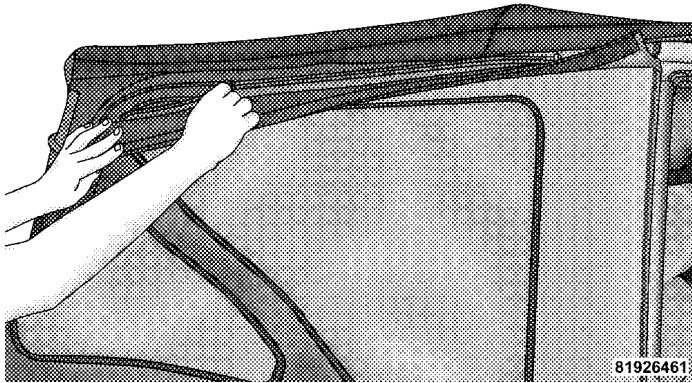


- 1 — Incorrect Insertion
- 2 — Correct Insertion

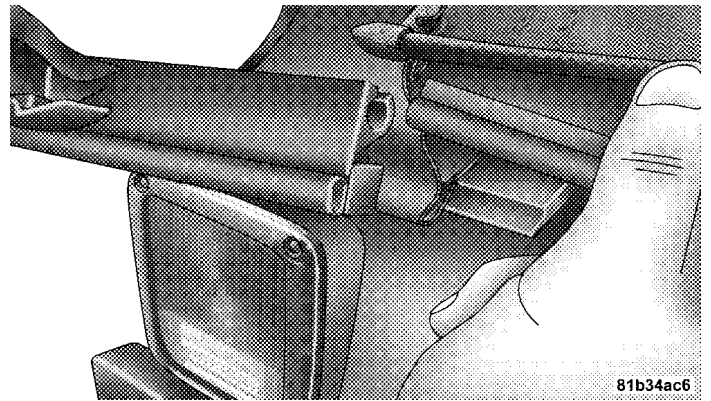
12. Insert the retainer along the bottom edge of the window into the bottom side channel, beginning at the front and working to the rear of the vehicle. Finish by closing the zipper completely and attaching the Velcro® along the top and rear of the window. Repeat this step for the opposite side.





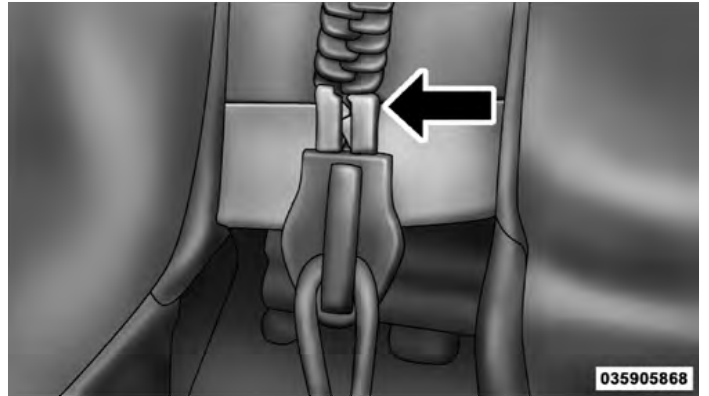
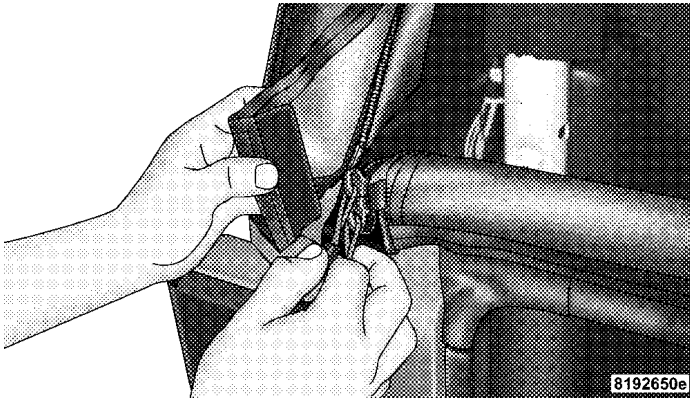


13. Locate the black swing gate bar. Slide the swing gate bar over the receiver at the bottom inside of the rear window. The spongy part of the seal should be down and pointed outward to seal with the swing gate when closed.



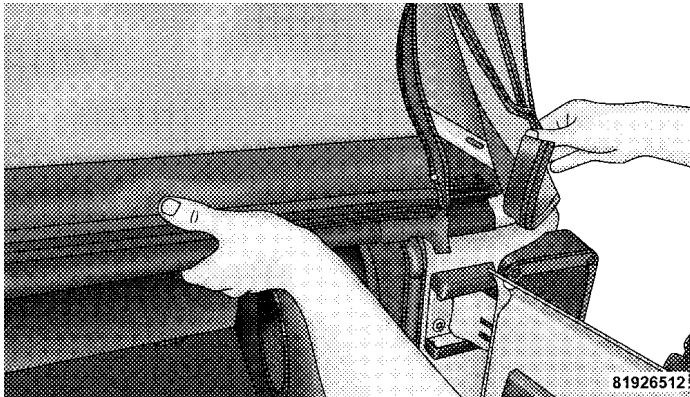
**202 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE**

14. Install the rear window by starting both zipper ends at the lower left corner of the rear window opening. Ensure that the zippers are properly started and aligned before zipping to prevent damage.



15. Run the zipper fully around to the right side of the window.

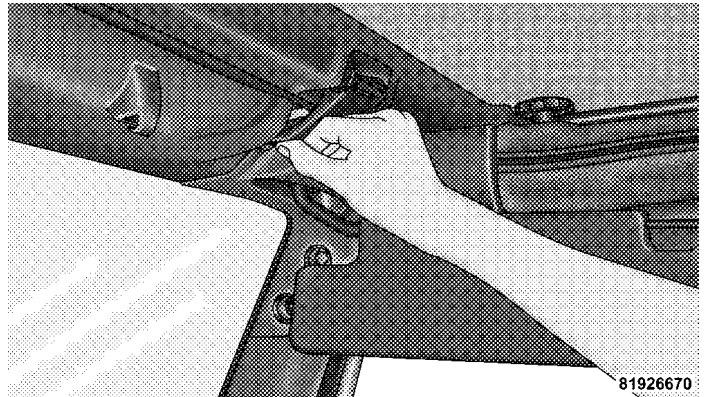
16. Grasp the swing gate bar and position it into the swing gate brackets.



81926512

17. Apply downward pressure on the top corner of the rear soft top bow (3-bow), then complete attaching the sail panel retainers into the body side channel.

18. Close the header latches and return the sun visors to their secured position.



81926670

**SOFT TOP (FOUR-DOOR MODELS)**

Please visit the owner's section of [Jeep.com](http://Jeep.com) for instructional videos.



**CAUTION!**

The soft top is not designed to carry any additional loads such as roof racks, spare tires, building, hunting, or camping supplies, and/or luggage, etc. Also, it was not designed as a structural member of the vehicle, and thus cannot properly carry any additional loads other than environmental (rain, snow, etc.).

If the temperature is below 72°F (24°C) and/or the top has been folded down for a period of time, the top will appear to have shrunk when you raise it, making it difficult to put up. This is caused by a natural contraction of the vinyl coating on the fabric top.

Place the vehicle in a warm area. Pull steadily on the top fabric. The vinyl will stretch back to its original size and

the top can then be snapped into place. If the temperature is 41°F (5°C) or below, do not attempt to put the top down or roll the rear or side curtains.

**CAUTION!**

- Do not run a fabric top through an automatic car wash. Window scratches and wax buildup may result.
- Do not lower the top when the temperature is below 41°F (5°C). Damage to the top may result.
- Do not lower the top when the windows are dirty. Grit may scratch the window.
- Do not move your vehicle until the top has been either fully attached to the windshield frame, or fully lowered.
- Do not lower the top with the windows installed. Window and top damage may occur.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Refer to "Appearance Care for Fabric Top Models" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information. It contains important information on cleaning and caring for your vehicle's fabric top.
- Do not use any tools (screwdrivers, etc.) to pry or force any of the clamps, clips, or retainers securing the soft top. Do not force or pry the soft top framework when opening or closing. Damage to the top may result.

**WARNING!**

- Do not drive the vehicle with the rear window curtain up unless the side curtains are also open. Dangerous exhaust gases which can kill could enter the vehicle.

*(Continued)***WARNING! (Continued)**

- The fabric upper doors and fabric top are designed only for protection against the elements. Do not rely on them to contain occupants within the vehicle or to protect against injury during an accident. Remember, always wear seat belts.

**CAUTION!**

Failure to follow these cautions may cause interior water damage, stains or mildew on the top material:

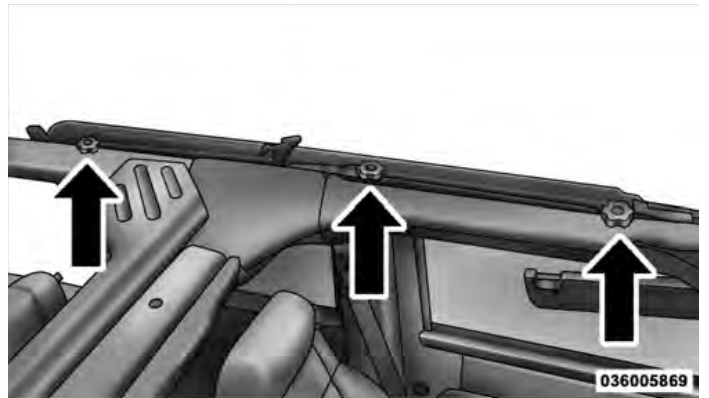
- It is recommended that the top be free of water prior to opening it. Operating the top, opening a door or lowering a window while the top is wet may allow water to drip into the vehicle's interior.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Careless handling and storage of the soft top may damage the seals, causing water to leak into the vehicle's interior.
- The soft top must be positioned properly to ensure sealing. Improper installation can cause water to leak into the vehicle's interior.

**NOTE:** Do not remove any of the three attachment knobs unless you are planning on installing the hard top.

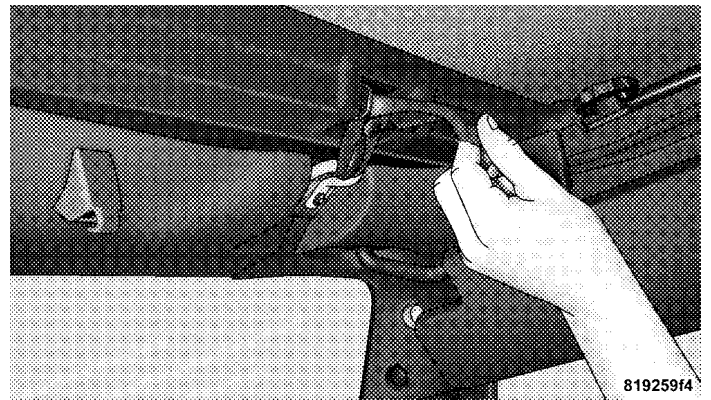


### Quick Steps for Lowering the Soft Top

1. Remove the side and back windows.



2. Release header latches from the windshield frame.

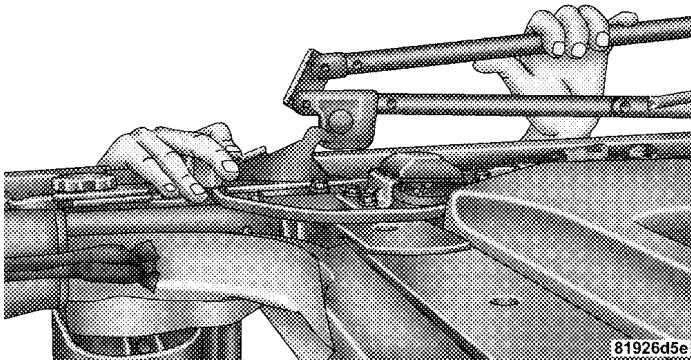


208 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

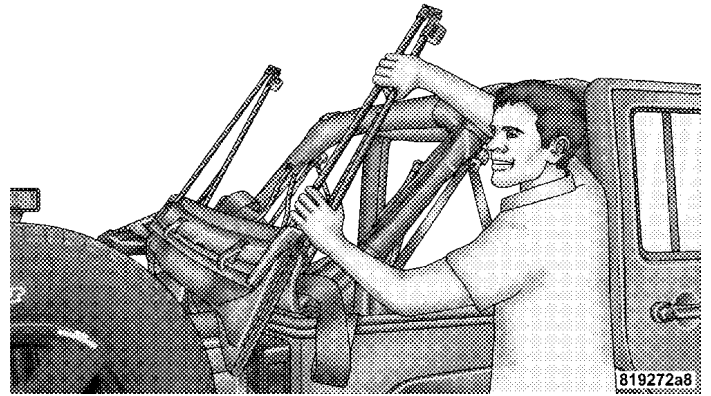
3. Fold header rearward, pulling the fabric to the rear.



4. Release Sunrider® latch (both sides).



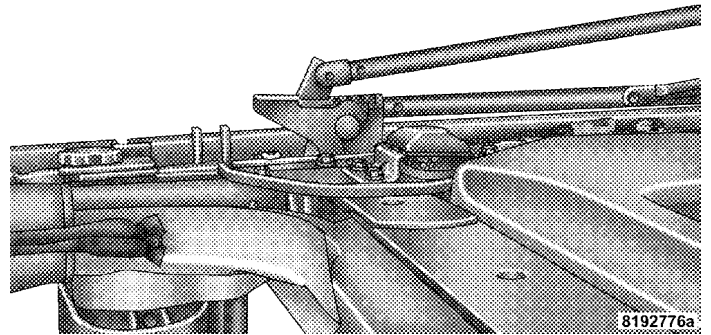
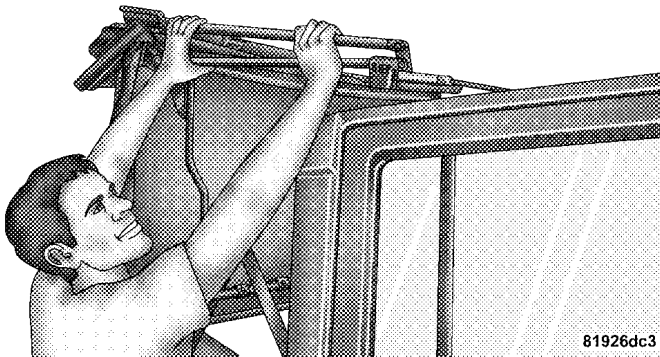
5. Open the swing gate and lower the top.



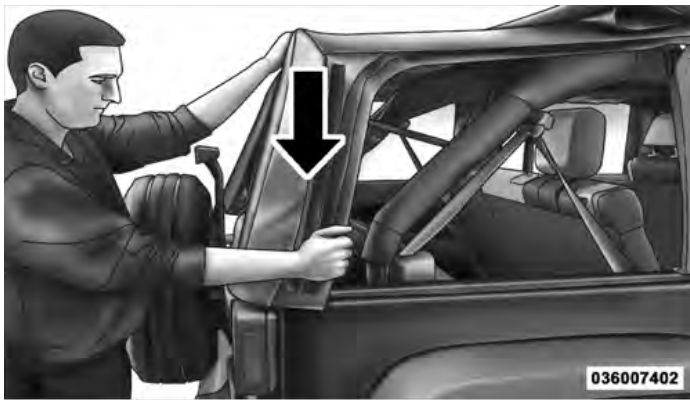
**NOTE:** Ensure the fabric does not overhang the sides of the vehicle.

### Quick Steps for Raising the Soft Top

1. Open the swing gate and raise the top, engaging the Sunrider® latches (another person may be needed to help with this operation).



2. Install rear corner panels.



3. Rotate the header forward.

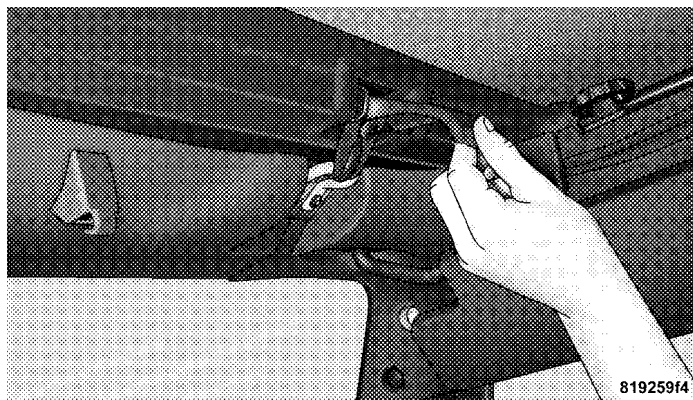


3

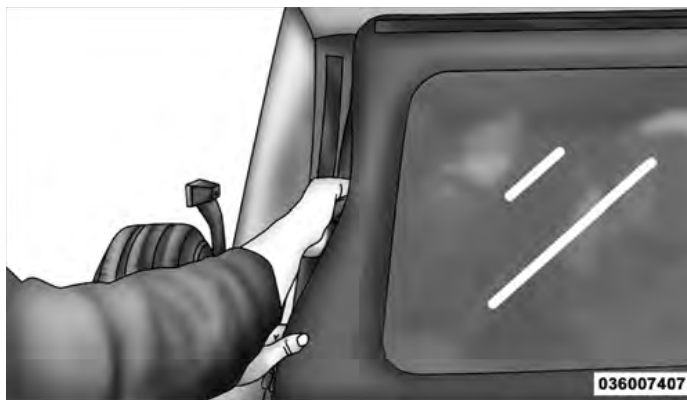


212 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

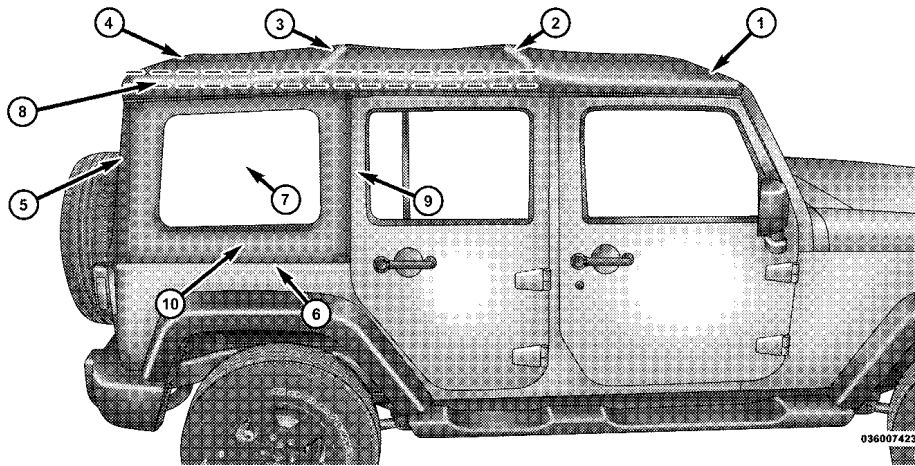
4. Engage the header latches.



5. Install the side and back windows.



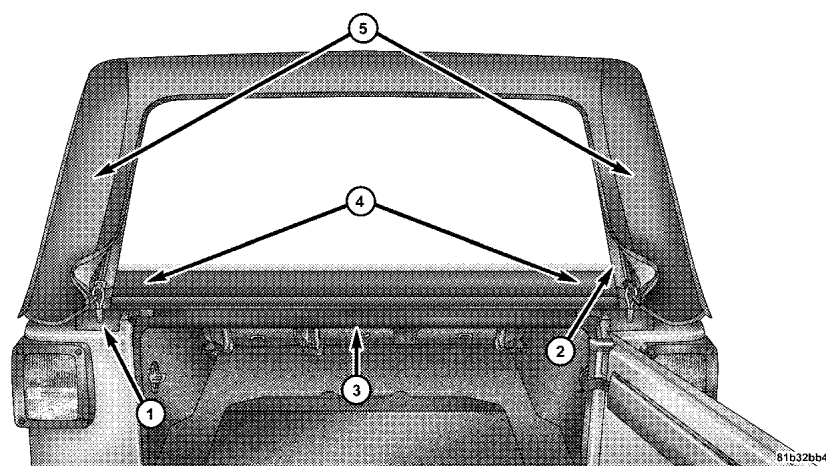
Folding Down The Soft Top



3

- 1 — Header Bow
- 2 — 2-Bow
- 3 — 3-Bow
- 4 — 4-Bow
- 5 — Sail Panel

- 6 — Body Side Retainer
- 7 — Quarter Window
- 8 — Check Strap
- 9 — Front Retainer — Quarter Window
- 10 — Bottom Retainer — Quarter Window



- 1 — Zipper Start
- 2 — Zipper Finish
- 3 — Swing Gate Bar
- 4 — Swing Gate Brackets
- 5 — Sail Panels

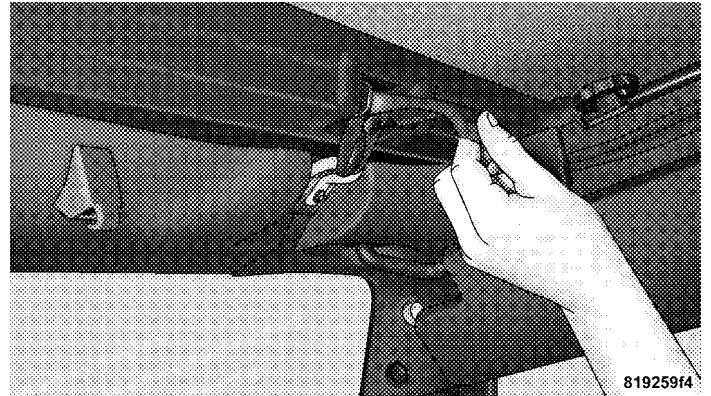
**NOTE:** Clean side and rear windows before removal to assist in preventing scratching during removal of the soft top. If zippers are difficult to operate due to road dust, etc., clean them with a mild soap solution and a small brush. Cleaning products are available through your authorized dealer.

1. If your vehicle has half-doors, remove each half-door window by opening the door and lifting the half-door window out.

**NOTE:** Stow half-door windows carefully outside of the vehicle, never inside, to avoid scratches.

2. Unclip and move the sun visors to the side.

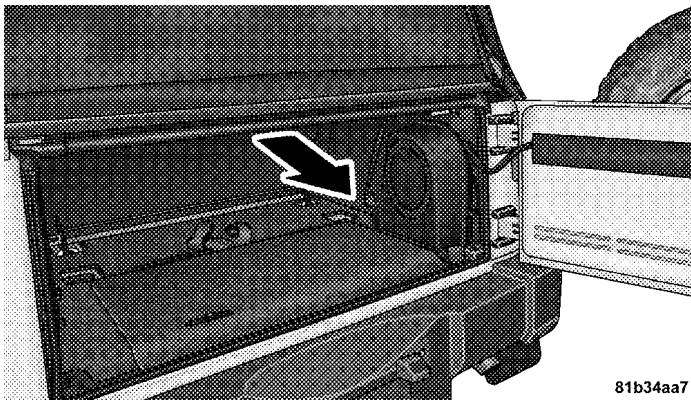
3. Release the header latches and hooks from the loops on the windshield frame.



4. Open the swing gate.

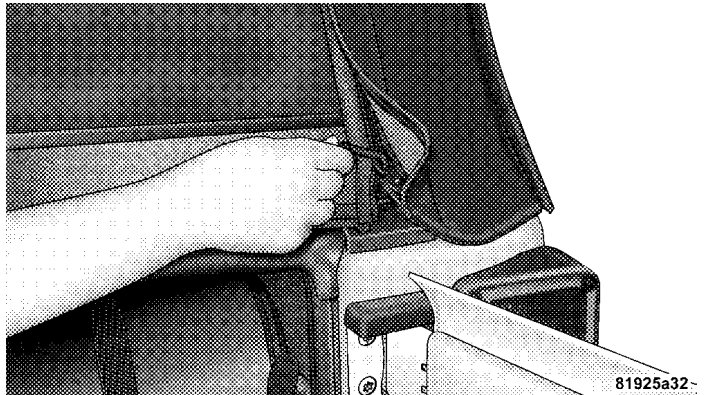
## 216 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

5. Before unzipping the rear window, release the first 3 in (7.6 cm) of both sail panels from the channel. Remove the swing gate bar by pulling it straight rearward out of the swing gate brackets.



81b34aa7

- Unzip the rear window starting at the right lower corner of the window. Pull the zipper up, across the top and down to the left lower corner. **Zipper pulls will stay on the rear window.** Pull down on the rear window to disengage it from the zipper on the top cover. Stow the windows carefully to avoid scratching.



81925a32-

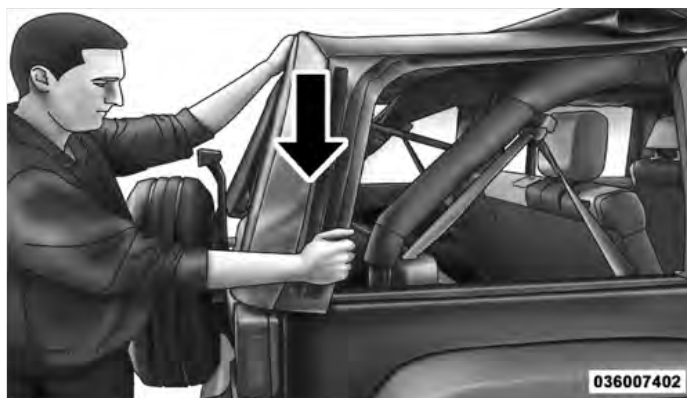
6. Undo the Velcro® that runs along the top and rear edge of the side window.

7. Beginning from the rear lower corner, completely unzip the window.



8. Once unzipped, remove the side window retainers from the door channel and body side channel. Repeat this step on the opposite side.

9. Finish releasing the sail panel retainers from the body side channel at the rear corners of the vehicle.

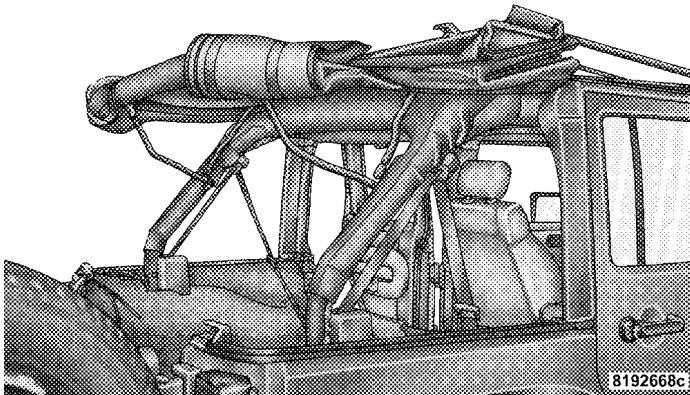


**NOTE:** When releasing the sail panel retainers, it is helpful to pull down on the rear roof bow.

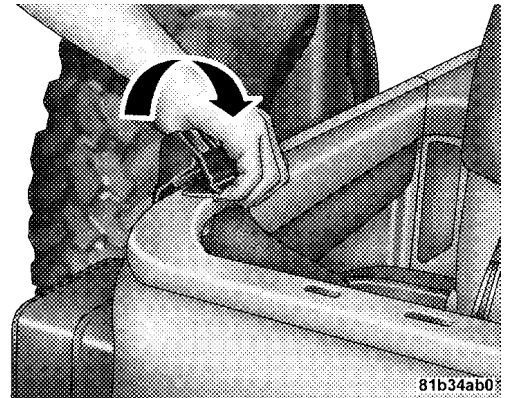


**218 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE**

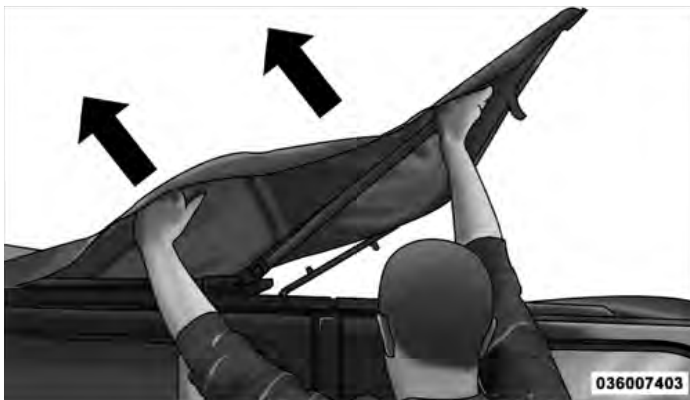
10. Fold the sail panels so that they rest on top of the soft top.



11. The swing gate brackets do not need to be removed unless the hard top is being installed. To remove the swing gate brackets, pull the front of the bracket forward while rolling the entire bracket back in toward the vehicle to disengage.



12. Grasp the front side bow behind the header, and lift the top.



13. Fold back the front section of the top, pulling the fabric rearward. Gently rest the header on top of the rear portion of the deck.



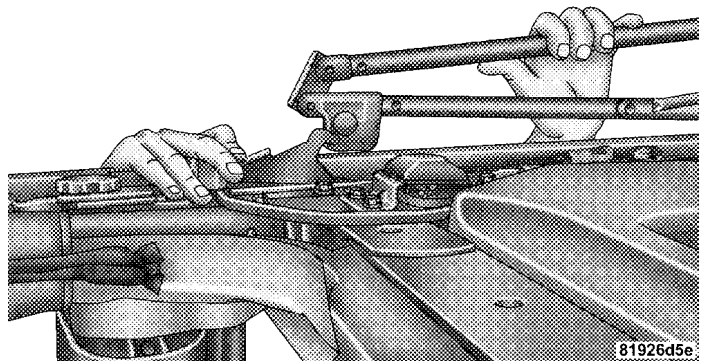


220 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

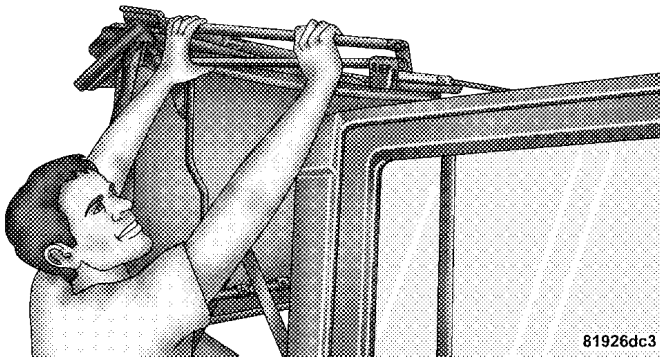
14. Fold the top so that the material forms a "W" as shown. Enter the vehicle and move the material into two folds.



15. Release the side bows by pressing down on the latch above the front of the rear door. Push the top rearward to disengage. Repeat this step on the other side.

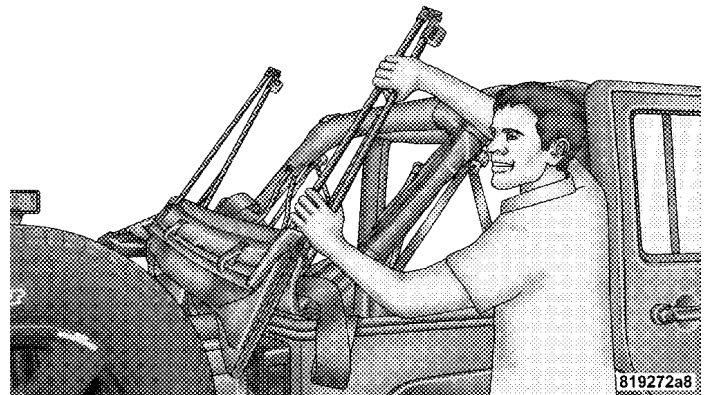


16. Before lowering the top, open the swing gate to prevent possible damage to the rear center high-mounted brake light. Grasp the folded side bows and slide the top along the door frame track to the rear door frame.



17. Gently slide the side bows off the door frame track and lower the top down into the vehicle.

**NOTE:** Help from another person will ease this operation.

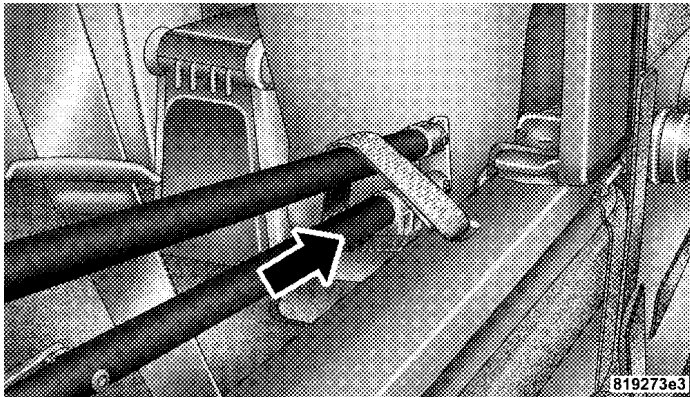


18. Tuck the fabric and the check straps between the bows as far inside as possible. This will keep any portion of the top from flapping outside of the vehicle.

19. Once the top is fully down, use the Velcro® straps provided to secure the top to the vehicle by wrapping the

## 222 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

strap around the side bows and through the slot on the body.



20. Close the front header latches.

21. Remove the door frames, if desired. Refer to “Door Frame” in this section for further information.

### Putting Up The Soft Top

**NOTE:** Be extremely careful when putting up the soft top to prevent the doors from getting scratched. It may be helpful to open the rear doors.

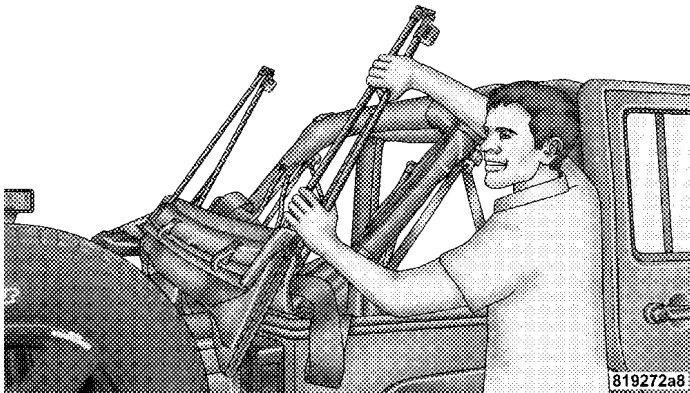
1. Install the door frames, if removed. Refer to “Door Frame” in this section for further information.

2. Undo the straps used to secure the top in the down position and store in secure location.

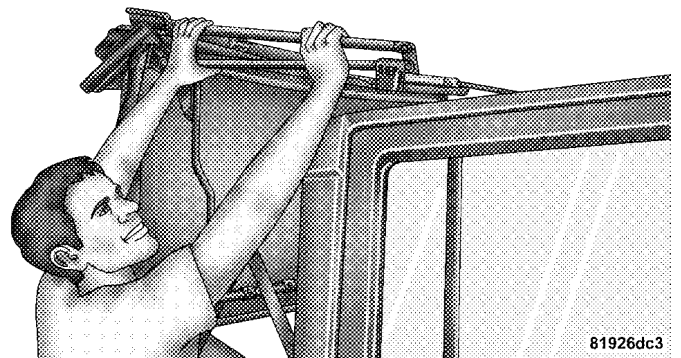
3. Open the swing gate.

4. Grasp the folded side bows and lift to the top of the rear door frames.

**NOTE:** Help from another person will ease this operation.

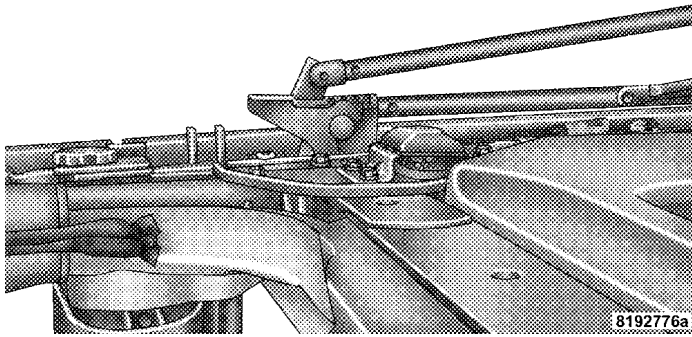


5. Insert the slider feature of the knuckles into the door frame tracks and slide the top forward.



## 224 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

6. Ensure that the top locks into the Sunrider® locking mechanisms that are located above the front of the rear doors.



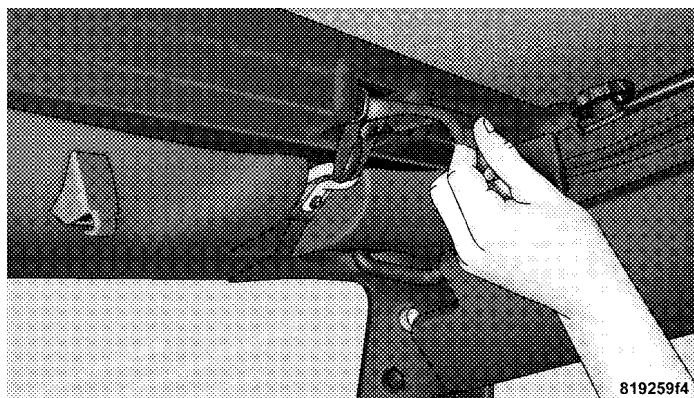
7. Unclip and move the sun visors to the side.

8. Standing on the side of the vehicle, lift the top by the side bow until it rests on the windshield frame.

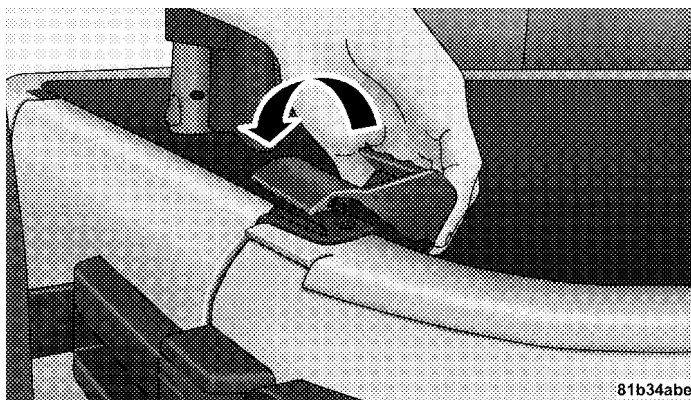




9. Open the header latches and engage the hook on each side onto the windshield loops (do not close the latches).

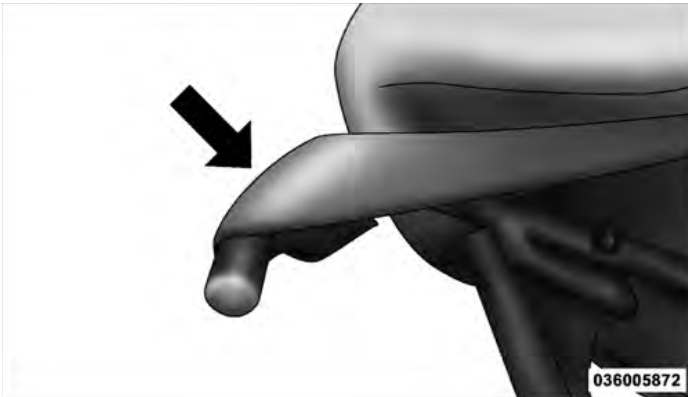


10. If the swing gate brackets were removed, install them by hooking the rear edge of the bracket on the interior side of the body channel. Then, rotate it rearward and over the channel until it snaps onto the exterior part of the rail. To be properly located, the bracket must only be clipped to the shortened rail edge.

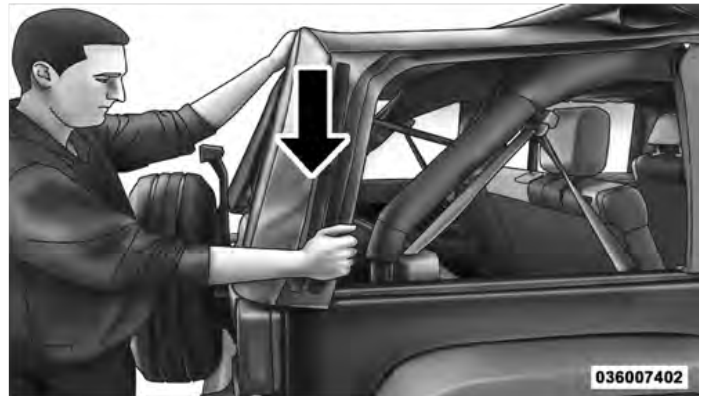


226 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

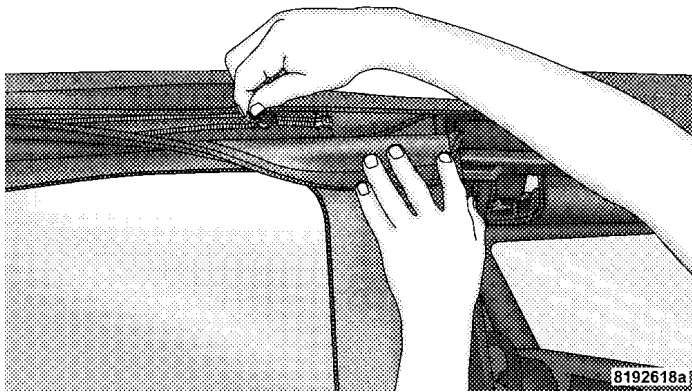
11. Ensure that the straps are positioned correctly before pulling the sail panels over the rear roof bow (4-bow).



Partially install the sail panel retainers into the body side channel, leaving the last 3 in (7.6 cm) toward the rear window loose (on both sides). Pulling down on the rear roof bow (4-bow) will aid in reaching the channel with the retainers.



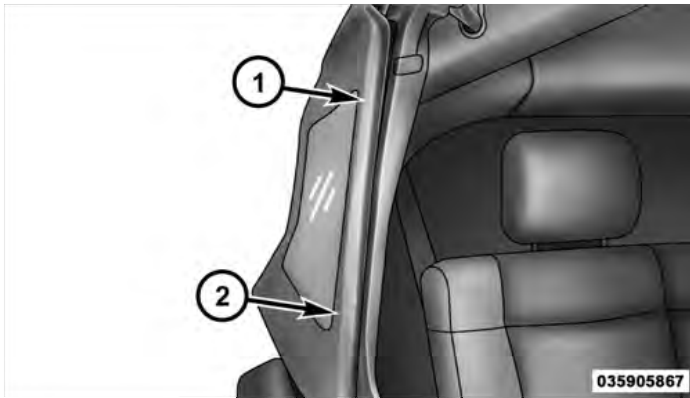
12. To install the side windows, affix the window temporarily by attaching it to the Velcro® in the upper rear corner. Start the zipper but close only about 1 in (2.5 cm).



13. Insert the front retainer of the window into the door channel, making sure the retainer is fully seated and properly positioned on the door frame. Failure to do so can result in wind and water leaks or damage to the window.

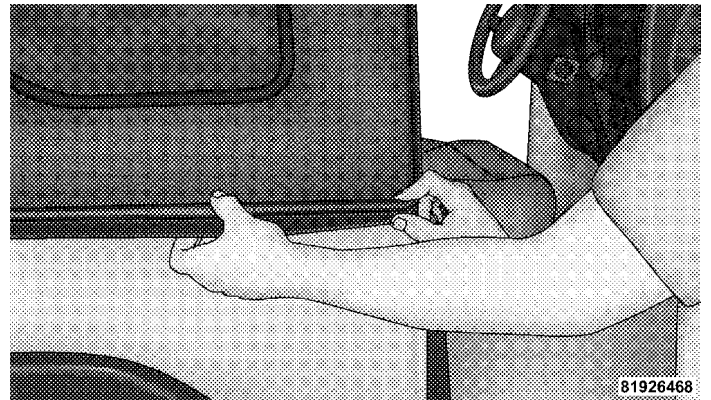


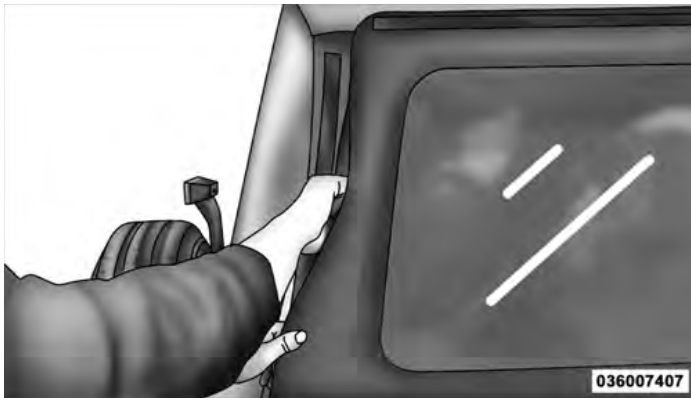




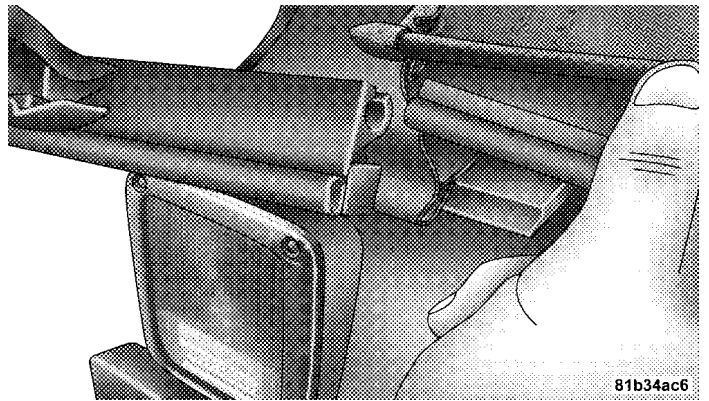
- 1 — Incorrect Insertion
- 2 — Correct Insertion

14. Insert the retainer along the bottom edge of the window into the bottom side channel, beginning at the front and working to the rear of the vehicle. Finish by closing the zipper completely and attaching the Velcro® along the top and rear of the window. Repeat this step for the opposite side.



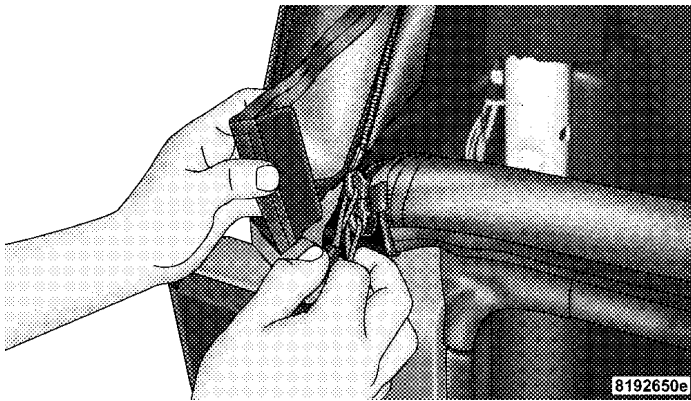


15. Locate the black swing gate bar. Slide the swing gate bar over the receiver at the bottom inside of the rear window. The spongy part of the seal should be down and pointed outward to seal with the swing gate when closed.



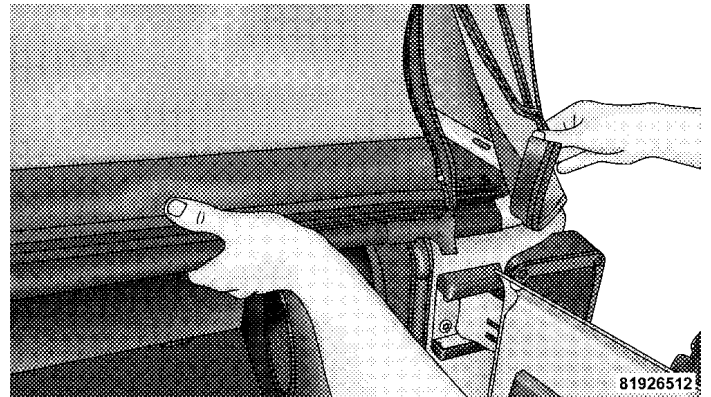
**230 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE**

16. Install the rear window by starting both zipper ends at the lower left corner of the rear window opening. Ensure that the zippers are properly started and aligned before zipping to prevent damage.



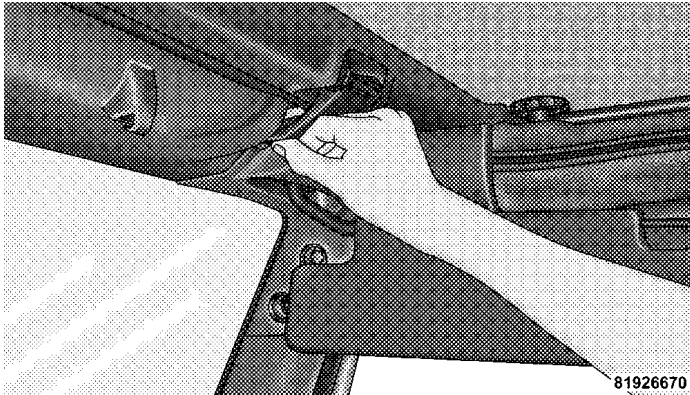
17. Run the first zipper fully around to the right side of the window.

18. Grasp the swing gate bar and position it into the swing gate brackets.



19. Complete the installation of the sail panel by inserting the rest of the retainer into the body channel.

20. Close the header latches and return the sun visors to their secured position.



### SUNRIDER® (TWO-DOOR MODELS) — IF EQUIPPED

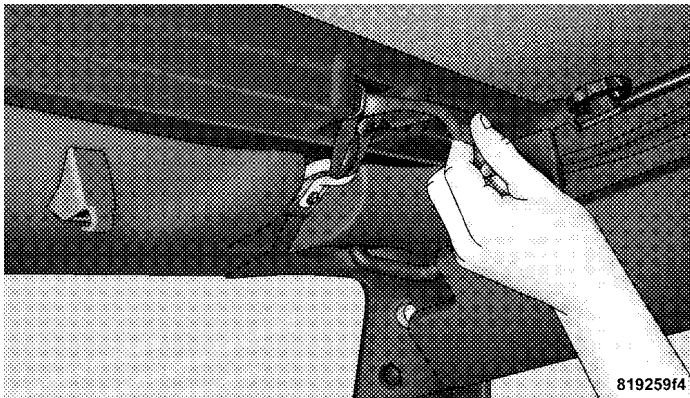
#### CAUTION!

Operating the top, opening a door or lowering a window while the top is wet may allow water to drip into the vehicle's interior.

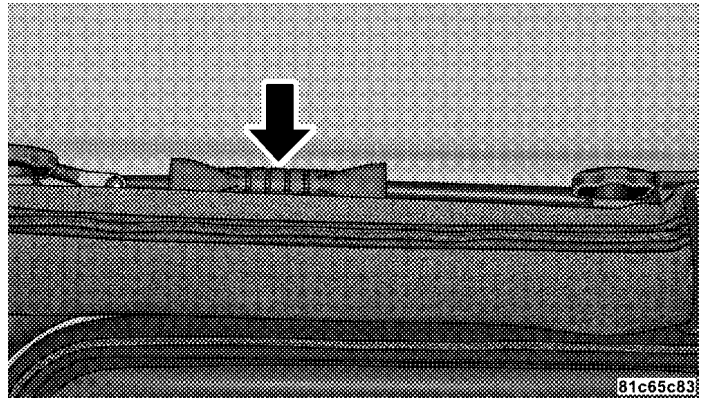
**NOTE:** If you are going to be driving faster than 40 mph (64 km/h) with the Sunrider® feature open, it is recommended that you remove the rear window of the vehicle.

### Opening the Sunrider®

1. Unclip and move the sun visors to the side.
2. Release the header latches from the loops on the windshield frame.



3. Slide the plastic sleeve forward.



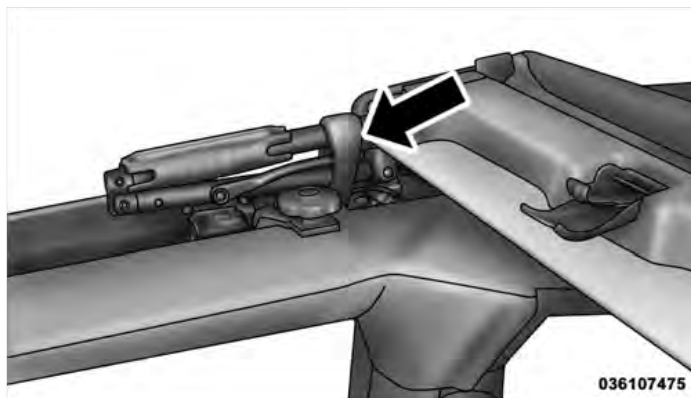


4. Grasp the header and lift the top back. Make sure the material is folded back as shown.

**NOTE:** The Sunrider® latch on the door rail should not be activated for Sunrider® use. If activated, the soft top must be reinstalled starting from the sail panels.



5. Locate the straps to secure the side bows. Wrap the straps around the bows as shown. Repeat on the other side.



3

6. Reposition the sun visors.

### Closing the Sunrider®

1. Remove the straps from the side bows.
2. Unclip and move the sun visors to the side.
3. Grasp the front header and pull it to the front of the vehicle.
4. Hook the header latches to the loops on the windshield frame, close latches, and return the sun visors to their original positions.
5. Slide the plastic sleeve rearward over the Sunrider® link.

### SUNRIDER® (FOUR-DOOR MODELS) — IF EQUIPPED

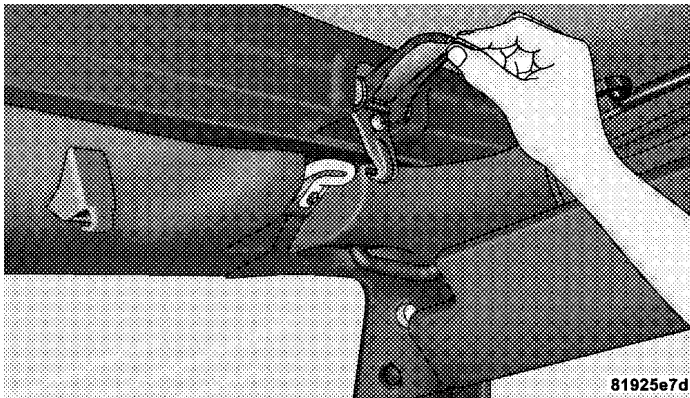
**CAUTION!**

**Operating the top, opening a door or lowering a window while the top is wet may allow water to drip into the vehicle's interior.**

**NOTE:** If you are going to be driving faster than 40 mph (64 km/h) with the Sunrider® feature open, it is recommended that you remove the rear window of the vehicle.

**Opening the Sunrider®**

1. Unclip and move the sun visors to the side.
2. Release the header latches from the loops on the windshield frame.



3. Grasp the front side bow behind the header, and lift the top.



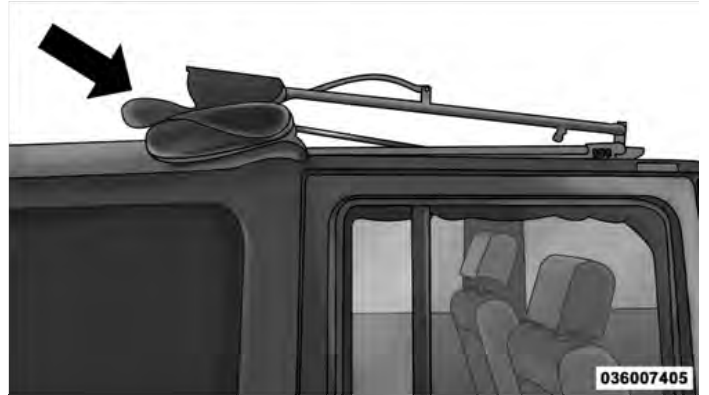


236 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

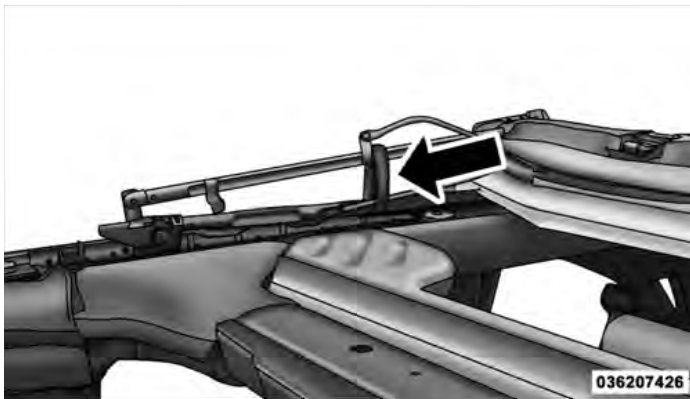
4. Fold back the front section of the top and gently rest the header on top of the rear portion of the deck.



5. Fold the top so that the material forms a "W" as shown. Enter the vehicle and move the material into two folds.



6. Secure the top by using the two provided straps. Each strap will wrap around the side bow and Velcro® to itself; use one strap on each side of the vehicle.



### Closing the Sunrider®

Perform the above steps in the opposite order.

**NOTE:** Failure to fold the fabric rearward will allow the material to sag and may block the rearview mirror.


## REAR WINDOW FEATURES — HARD TOP ONLY


### Rear Window Wiper/Washer — If Equipped

A rotary switch on the center portion of the control lever (located on the right side of the steering column) controls the operation of the rear wiper/washer function.



Rear Wiper/Washer Control

 Rotate the switch upward to the first detent position for rear wiper operation.

 Rotate the switch upward past the first detent to activate the rear washer. The washer pump will continue to operate as long as the switch is held.

Upon release, the wiper will cycle two to three times before returning to the set position.

If the rear wiper is operating when the ignition is turned to the LOCK position, the wiper will automatically return to the "Park" position. When the vehicle is restarted, the wiper will resume function at whichever position the switch is set at.

### Rear Window Defroster — If Equipped



The rear window defroster button is located on the bottom right-side of the blower control knob. Press this button to turn on the rear window defroster. An indicator in the button will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 10 minutes. For an additional five minutes of operation, press the button a second time.

**NOTE:** To prevent excessive battery drain, use the rear window defroster only when the engine is operating.

#### CAUTION!

Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:

- Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.
- Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.
- Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.



---

# UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

## CONTENTS

---

|  |     |  |     |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| ■ Instrument Panel Features . . . . .  | 244 | □ Operating Instructions - Radio Mode . . . . .  | 267 |
| ■ Instrument Cluster . . . . .   | 245 | □ Operation Instructions - (Disc Mode For CD<br>And MP3/WMA Audio Play, DVD-Video) . . .                     | 275 |
| ■ Instrument Cluster Descriptions . . . . .  | 246 | □ Notes On Playing MP3/WMA Files . . . . .   | 277 |
| ■ Compass And Trip Computer — If Equipped . .  | 261 | □ List Button (Disc Mode For MP3/WMA<br>Play) . . . . .  | 280 |
| □ Control Buttons . . . . .  | 261 | □ Info Button (Disc Mode For MP3/WMA<br>Play) . . . . .  | 280 |
| □ Trip Conditions . . . . .  | 262 | ■ Media Center 730N/430 (RER/REN/RBZ) —<br>AM/FM Stereo Radio And CD/DVD/HDD/<br>NAV — If Equipped . . . . . | 282 |
| □ Compass/Temperature Display . . . . .  | 263 |  |     |
| ■ Media Center 230 (REQ) — AM/FM Stereo<br>Radio And 6-Disc CD/DVD Changer<br>(MP3/WMA AUX Jack) . . . . . | 267 |  |     |

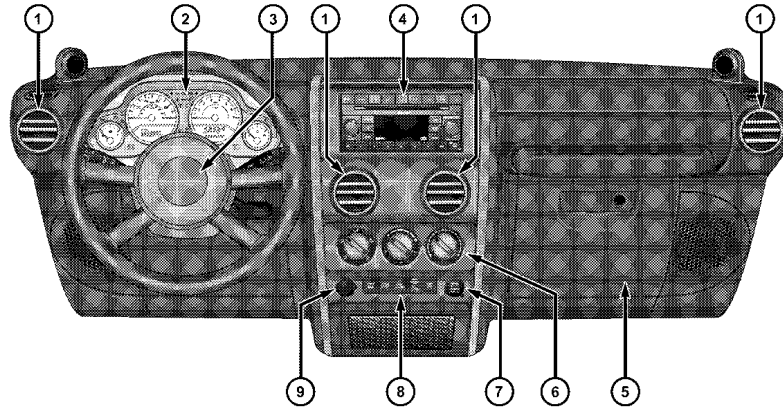
**242 UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL**

|  |     |  |     |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| □ Operating Instructions — Voice Command System — If Equipped . . . . .              | 283 | ■ Media Center 130 (RES/RSC) — AM/FM Stereo Radio With CD Player (MP3 AUX Jack) And Sirius Radio . . . . . | 295 |
| □ Operating Instructions — Uconnect™ Phone — If Equipped . . . . .                   | 283 | □ Operating Instructions — Radio Mode . . . . .  | 296 |
| □ Clock Setting Procedure — RBZ Radio . . . . .                                      | 283 | □ Operation Instructions — CD Mode For CD And MP3 Audio Play . . . . .                                     | 301 |
| □ Clock Setting Procedure — RER/REN Radio . . . . .                                  | 285 | □ Notes On Playing MP3 Files . . . . .   | 303 |
| ■ Media Center 130 (RES) — AM/FM Stereo Radio With CD Player (MP3 AUX Jack). . . . . | 287 | □ List Button (CD Mode For MP3 Play) . . . . .   | 306 |
| □ Operating Instructions — Radio Mode . . . . .                                      | 287 | □ Info Button (CD Mode For MP3 Play) . . . . .   | 306 |
| □ Operation Instructions — CD Mode For CD And MP3 Audio Play . . . . .               | 290 | □ Uconnect™ Multimedia (Satellite Radio) — If Equipped . . . . .   | 307 |
| □ Notes On Playing MP3 Files . . . . .   | 292 | ■ Uconnect™ Multimedia (Satellite Radio) — If Equipped (REN/REQ/RER/RES/REU/RBZ Radios Only). . . . .      | 311 |
| □ Operation Instructions - Auxiliary Mode . . . . .                                  | 295 | □ System Activation . . . . .  | 312 |

|  |     |  |     |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| □ Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID) . . . . .          | 312 | ■ CD/DVD Disc Maintenance . . . . .                                  | 316 |
| □ Selecting Uconnect™ Multimedia (Satellite) Mode . . . . .                          | 313 | ■ Radio Operation And Cellular Phones . . . . .                      | 317 |
| □ Satellite Antenna . . . . .  | 313 | ■ Climate Controls . . . . .   | 317 |
| □ Reception Quality . . . . .  | 313 | □ Manual Heater Only . . . . .                                       | 317 |
| □ Operating Instructions — Uconnect™ Multimedia (Satellite) Mode . . . . .           | 313 | □ Manual Heating And Air Conditioning System — If Equipped . . . . . | 319 |
| □ Operating Instructions — Uconnect™ Phone (If Equipped) . . . . .                   | 316 | □ Air Conditioning . . . . .   | 323 |
| □ Operating Instructions — Video Entertainment System (VES)™ (If Equipped) . . . . . | 316 | □ Operating Tips . . . . .   | 324 |



**INSTRUMENT PANEL FEATURES**

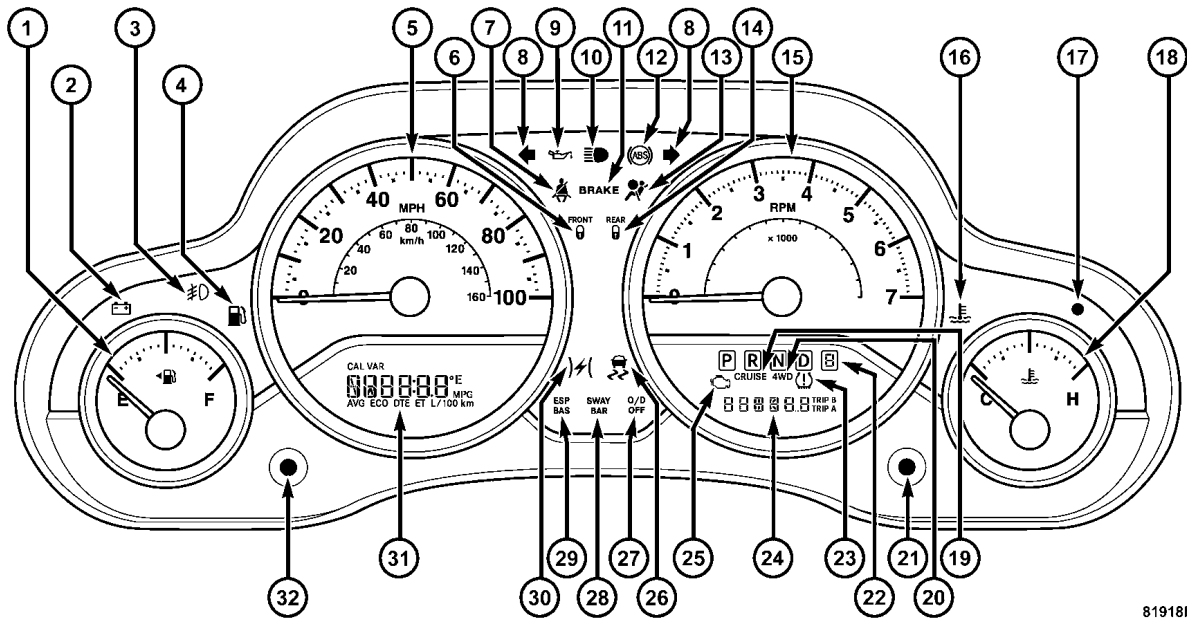


040109115

- 1 — Air Outlet
- 2 — Instrument Cluster
- 3 — Horn
- 4 — Radio
- 5 — Glove Compartment

- 6 — Climate Controls
- 7 — Power Outlet
- 8 — Lower Switch Bank
- 9 — Auxiliary Power Outlet / Cigar Lighter

**INSTRUMENT CLUSTER**



**4**


81918b50

**INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DESCRIPTIONS****1. Fuel Gauge**

The pointer shows the level of fuel in the fuel tank.


**NOTE:** When the ignition switch is turned to OFF, the fuel gauge and temperature gauge may not show accurate readings. When the engine is not running, turn the ignition switch to ON to obtain accurate readings.

**2. Charging System Light**


 This light shows the status of the electrical charging system. The light should come on when the ignition switch is first turned ON, and remain on briefly as a bulb check. If the light stays on or comes on while driving, turn off some of the vehicle's non-essential electrical devices or increase engine speed (if at idle). If the charging system light remains on, it means that the vehicle is experiencing a problem with the charging system. Obtain SERVICE IMMEDIATELY. See an authorized dealer.

If jump starting is required, refer to "Jump Starting Procedures" in "What To Do In Emergencies".

**3. Front Fog Light Indicator — If Equipped**

 This indicator will illuminate when the front fog lights are on.


**4. Low Fuel Warning Light**

 When the fuel level reaches approximately 2.8 gal (10.6L) this light will turn on and a single chime will sound.

**5. Speedometer**

Indicates vehicle speed.

**6. Front Axle Lock Indicator — If Equipped**

**FRONT**  
 Indicates when the front axle lock has been activated.

### 7. Seat Belt Reminder Light



A warning chime and an indicator light will alert you to buckle the seat belts. When the belt is buckled, the chime will stop, but the light will stay on for about six seconds, until it times out. Refer to "Occupant Restraints" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information.

### 8. Turn Signal Indicators



The arrows will flash with the exterior turn signals when the turn signal lever is operated. A tone will chime if the turn signals are left on for more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

### 9. Oil Pressure Warning Light



This light indicates low engine oil pressure. The light should turn on momentarily when the engine is started, if the bulb does not come on, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the light turns on

while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. A chime will sound when this light turns on.

Do not operate the vehicle until the cause is corrected. This light does not indicate how much oil is in the engine. The engine oil level must be checked under the hood.

### 10. High Beam Indicator



This indicator shows that the high beam headlights are on. Push the multifunction control lever away from you to switch the headlights to high beam. Pull the lever towards you to switch the headlights back to low beam. If the driver's door is open, and the headlights or park lights are left on, the high beam indicator light will remain illuminated and a chime will sound.

### 11. Brake Warning Light

**BRAKE** This light monitors various brake functions, including brake fluid level and parking brake application. If the brake light turns on, it may indicate that the parking brake is applied, that the brake fluid level is low, or that there is a problem with the anti-lock brake system reservoir.

If the light remains on when the parking brake has been disengaged, and the fluid level is at the full mark on the master cylinder reservoir, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction or that a problem with the Brake Booster has been detected by the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) / Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system. In this case, the light will remain on until the condition has been corrected. If the problem is related to the brake booster, the ABS pump will run when applying the brake and a brake pedal pulsation may be felt during each stop.

The dual brake system provides a reserve braking capacity in the event of a failure to a portion of the hydraulic system. A leak in either half of the dual brake system is indicated by the Brake Warning Light, which will turn on when the brake fluid level in the master cylinder has dropped below a specified level.

The light will remain on until the cause is corrected.

**NOTE:** The light may flash momentarily during sharp cornering maneuvers, which change fluid level conditions. The vehicle should have service performed, and the brake fluid level checked.

If brake failure is indicated, immediate repair is necessary.

**WARNING!**

**Driving a vehicle with the red brake light on is dangerous. Part of the brake system may have failed. It will take longer to stop the vehicle. You could have an accident. Have the vehicle checked immediately.**


Vehicles equipped with the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), are also equipped with Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD). In the event of an EBD failure, the Brake Warning Light will turn on along with the ABS Light. Immediate repair to the ABS system is required.

Operation of the Brake Warning Light can be checked by turning the ignition switch from the OFF position to the ON position. The light should illuminate for approximately two seconds. The light should then turn off unless the parking brake is applied or a brake fault is detected. If the light does not illuminate, have the light inspected by an authorized dealer.

The light also will turn on when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the ON position.

**NOTE:** This light shows only that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.

### 12. *Anti-Lock Brake (ABS) Light*

 After the ignition is turned on, the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) light illuminates to indicate function check at vehicle start-up. If the light remains on after start-up or comes on and stays on at road speeds, it may indicate that the ABS has detected a malfunction or has become inoperative. The system reverts to standard non-anti-lock brakes.

If both the Brake Warning Light and the ABS Warning Light are on, see an authorized dealer immediately. Refer to “Anti-Lock Brake System” in “Starting And Operating”.

**13. Airbag Warning Light**

This light will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned ON. If the light is either not on during starting, stays on, or turns on while driving, then have the system inspected at an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Refer to "Occupant Restraints" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information.

**14. Rear Axle Lock Indicator — If Equipped**

This light indicates when the rear axle lock has been activated.

**15. Tachometer**

Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).

**CAUTION!**

**Do not operate the engine with the tachometer pointer in the red area. Engine damage will occur.**

**16. Engine Temperature Warning Light**

This light warns of an overheated engine condition. If the engine is critically hot, a warning chime will sound 10 times. After the chime turns off, the engine will still be critically hot until the light goes out.

**17. Vehicle Security Light — If Equipped**

This light will flash at a fast rate for approximately 15 seconds, when the vehicle security alarm is arming, and then will flash slowly until the vehicle is disarmed.

### 18. Temperature Gauge

The temperature gauge shows engine coolant temperature. Any reading within the normal range indicates that the engine cooling system is operating satisfactorily.

The gauge pointer will likely indicate a higher temperature when driving in hot weather, up mountain grades, or when towing a trailer. It should not be allowed to exceed the upper limits of the normal operating range.

#### CAUTION!

Driving with a hot engine cooling system could damage your vehicle. If temperature gauge reads "H" pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on the "H" and you hear continuous chimes, turn the engine off immediately, and call an authorized dealership for service.

#### WARNING!

A hot engine cooling system is dangerous. You or others could be badly burned by steam or boiling coolant. You may want to call an authorized dealership for service if your vehicle overheats. If you decide to look under the hood yourself, see "Maintaining Your Vehicle". Follow the warnings under the Cooling System Pressure Cap paragraph.

4

### 19. Cruise Indicator

**CRUISE** This indicator shows when the electronic speed control system is turned on.

### 20. 4WD Indicator Light — If Equipped

**4WD** This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive mode, and the front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed.



### 21. Odometer / Trip Odometer / ECO (Fuel Saver Indicator) Button

Press this button to change the display from odometer to either of the two trip odometer settings or the "ECO" display. Trip A or Trip B will appear when in the trip odometer mode. Press and hold the button for two seconds to reset the trip odometer to 0 miles or kilometers. The odometer must be in trip mode to reset.

### 22. Shift Lever Indicator

The Shift Lever Indicator is self-contained within the instrument cluster. It displays the gear position of the automatic transmission.

### 23. Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly, when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle

has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to

maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more

tires or wheels on your vehicle, to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

#### CAUTION!

**The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Do not use tire sealant from a can, or balance beads if your vehicle is equipped with a TPMS, as damage to the sensors may result.**

**24. Odometer / Trip Odometer Display Area**

The odometer shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven. The trip odometer shows individual trip mileage. Refer to “Odometer / Trip Odometer / ECO (Fuel Saver Indicator) Button” for additional information.

U.S. Federal regulations require that upon transfer of vehicle ownership, the seller certify to the purchaser the correct mileage that the vehicle has been driven. If your odometer needs to be repaired or serviced, the repair technician should leave the odometer reading the same as it was before the repair or service. If s/he cannot do so, then the odometer must be set at zero, and a sticker must be placed in the door jamb stating what the mileage was before the repair or service. It is a good idea for you to make a record of the odometer reading before the repair/service, so that you can be sure that it is properly reset, or that the door jamb sticker is accurate if the odometer must be reset at zero.

**Vehicle Odometer Messages**

When the appropriate conditions exist, the following odometer messages will display:

- ECO** . . . . . Fuel Saver Indicator Off
- ECO-ON** . . . . . Fuel Saver Indicator On
- door** . . . . . Door Ajar
- gATE** . . . . . Liftgate Ajar
- LoW tirE.** . . . . . Low Tire Pressure
- HOTOIL** . . . . . Transmission Oil Temperature Above Normal Limits
- gASCAP** . . . . . Fuel Cap Fault
- noFUSE** . . . . . Fuse Fault
- CHAngE OIL** . . . . . Oil Change Required
- ESPOFF** . . . . . ESP Deactivated

**ECO / ECO-ON (Fuel Saver Indicator) — If Equipped**

The ECO-ON indicator will illuminate when you are driving in a fuel efficient manner and can be used to modify driving habits in order to increase fuel economy.

The ECO display will toggle between ECO and ECO-ON depending on driving habits and vehicle usage. Press the Odometer / Trip Odometer / ECO (Fuel Saver Indicator) button to change the display from odometer to either of the two trip odometer settings or the "ECO" display.

**LoW tirE**

When the appropriate condition exists, the odometer display will toggle between LoW and tirE for three cycles.

**"HOTOIL" Transmission Temperature Warning Message**

The "HOTOIL" cluster message will appear in the odometer accompanied with a chime to indicate that there is excessive transmission fluid temperature that might occur with severe usage such as trailer towing. It may also occur when operating the vehicle in a high torque converter slip condition, such as 4-wheel drive operation

(e.g., snow plowing, off-road operation). If this "HOTOIL" message turns on, stop the vehicle and run the engine at idle or faster, with the transmission in NEUTRAL until the message turns off.

|  |
|--|
| <b>CAUTION!</b>  |
| <b>Continuous driving with the Transmission Temperature "HOTOIL" Warning message illuminated will eventually cause severe transmission damage or transmission failure.</b> |

|  |
|--|
| <b>WARNING!</b>  |
| <b>Continued operation with the Transmission Temperature "HOTOIL" Warning message illuminated could cause the fluid to boil over, come in contact with hot engine or exhaust components causing a fire that may result in personal injury.</b> |

***gASCAP***

If the vehicle diagnostic system determines that the fuel filler cap is loose, improperly installed, or damaged, a "gASCAP" message will display in the odometer display area. Tighten the fuel filler cap properly and press the TRIP ODOMETER button to turn off the message. If the problem continues, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started.

***noFUSE***

If the vehicle diagnostic system determines that the Ignition Off Draw (IOD) fuse is improperly installed, or damaged, a "noFUSE" message will display in the odometer display area. For further information on fuses and fuse locations refer to "Fuses" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle".

***CHAngE OIL Message***

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The "CHAngE OIL" message will flash in the instrument cluster odometer for approximately 12 seconds after a single chime has sounded to indicate the next scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty-cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate dependent upon your personal driving style.

Unless reset, this message will continue to display each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position. To turn off the message temporarily, press and release the Trip Odometer button on the instrument cluster. To reset the oil change indicator system (after performing the scheduled maintenance), refer to the following procedure:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position (Do not start the engine).
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal slowly three times within 10 seconds.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF/LOCK position.

**NOTE:** If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the oil change indicator system did not reset. If necessary repeat this procedure.

### 25. *Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)*



The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is a part of an Onboard Diagnostic System called OBD II that monitors engine and automatic transmission control systems. The light will illuminate when the ignition is in the ON position, before engine start. If the bulb does not come on when turning the key from OFF to ON, have the condition checked promptly.

Certain conditions such as a loose or missing gas cap, poor quality fuel, etc. may illuminate the light after engine start. The vehicle should be serviced if the light stays on through several typical driving styles. In most situations, the vehicle will drive normally and will not require towing.

When the engine is running, the MIL may flash to alert serious conditions that could lead to immediate loss of power or severe catalytic converter damage. The vehicle should be serviced as soon as possible if this occurs.

#### **CAUTION!**

**Prolonged driving with the MIL on could cause damage to the engine control system. It also could affect fuel economy and drivability. If the MIL is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.**

**WARNING!**

A malfunctioning catalytic converter, as referenced above, can reach higher temperatures than in normal operating conditions. This can cause a fire if you drive slowly or park over flammable substances such as dry plants or wood or cardboard, etc. This could result in death or serious injury to the driver, occupants or others.

### 26. *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Activation/ Malfunction Indicator Light — If Equipped*



The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster will come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. It should go out with the engine running. If the “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESC system. If this

light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles (kilometers) at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see your authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

**NOTE:**

- The “ESC Off Indicator Light” and the “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” come on momentarily each time the ignition switch is turned ON.
- Each time the ignition is turned ON, the ESC system will be ON even if it was turned off previously.
- The ESC system will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESC becomes inactive following the maneuver that caused the ESC activation.

**WARNING!**

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. ESC cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents. The capabilities of an ESC-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

**27. O/D (Overdrive) Off Indicator Light**

**O/D OFF** This light will illuminate when the O/D OFF button has been selected and overdrive has been turned off. The O/D OFF button is located on the center console.

**28. Sway Bar Indicator Light — If Equipped****SWAY  
BAR**

This indicator will illuminate when the front sway bar is disconnected.

**29. Electronic Stability Program (ESP) / Brake Assist System (BAS) Warning Light****ESP  
BAS**

The Electronic Stability Program (ESP) / Brake Assist System (BAS) warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. The light should go out with the engine running. If the ESP/BAS warning light comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in either the ESP or the BAS system. If this light stays illuminated, have the ESP and BAS checked at an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Refer to "Electronic Brake Control System" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.



**WARNING!**

If a warning light remains on the system may not be working and you will not have the benefit of ESP or BAS. Under certain driving conditions, where ESP or BAS would be beneficial, you - if you have not adjusted your driving speeds and stopping in or to account for the lack of the feature, may be in accident.

**30. Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) Light**

This light informs you of a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) system. If a problem is detected while the engine is running, the light will either stay on or flash depending on the nature of the problem. Cycle the ignition key when the vehicle is safely and completely stopped and the shift lever is placed in the PARK position. The light should turn off. If the light remains on

with the engine running, your vehicle will usually be drivable; however, see an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

If the light continues to flash when the engine is running, immediate service is required and you may experience reduced performance, an elevated/rough idle, or engine stall and your vehicle may require towing. The light will come on when the ignition is first turned ON and remain on briefly as a bulb check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

**31. Compass / Mini-Trip Computer Display — If Equipped**

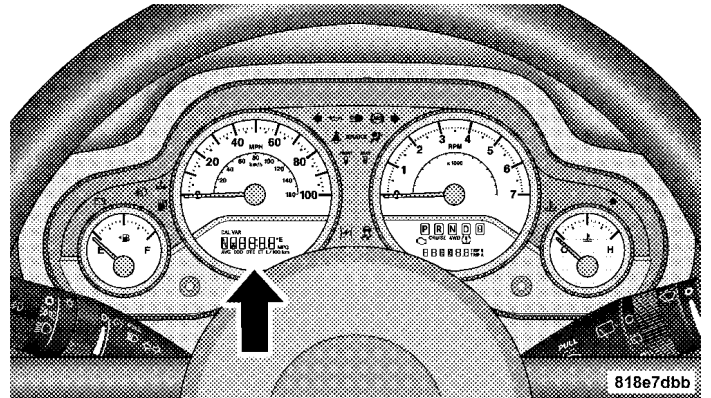
When the appropriate conditions exist, this display shows the Mini-Trip Computer messages. Refer to “Mini-Trip Computer”.

### 32. *Compass / Mini-Trip Computer Button—If Equipped*

Press this button to switch between the different functions.

#### COMPASS AND TRIP COMPUTER — IF EQUIPPED

The Compass/Trip Computer is located in the instrument cluster. It features a driver-interactive display (displays information such as outside temperature, compass direction, and trip information).



Compass/Trip Computer Display

#### Control Buttons

**NOTE:** The system will display the last known outside temperature when starting the vehicle and may need to be driven several minutes before the updated temperature is displayed. Engine temperature can also affect the

displayed temperature, therefore temperature readings are not updated when the vehicle is not moving.

Press and release the left button (on the instrument cluster) to access the computer displays.

Press and hold the left button (on the instrument cluster) for two to three seconds to switch from English to Metric displays.

#### **Reset / Change Display**

Press and hold the left button (on the instrument cluster) while function is being displayed to reset or change the display.

The following trip displays can be reset or changed:

- AVG ECO (changes to present fuel economy)
- ET (will reset display)

#### **Trip Conditions**

##### **Average Fuel Economy (AVG ECO)**

This display shows the average fuel economy.

##### **Estimated Range (DTE)**

This display shows the estimated distance that can be traveled with the fuel remaining in the tank. This estimated distance is based on the most recent trip information: (Average Fuel Economy) × (Fuel Remaining).

This display cannot be reset.

##### **Elapsed Time (ET)**

This display shows the accumulated ignition ON time since the last reset.

**Trip Odometer (ODO) / ECO (Fuel Saver Indicator) — If Equipped**

This display shows the distance traveled since the last reset. Press and release the right button (on the instrument cluster) to switch from odometer, to Trip A or Trip B, or to ECO. Press and hold the right button while the odometer/trip odometer is displayed to reset.

**Trip A**

Shows the total distance traveled for Trip A since the last reset.

**Trip B**

Shows the total distance traveled for Trip B since the last reset.

**ECO (Fuel Saver Indicator) — If Equipped**

The ECO-ON indicator will illuminate when you are driving in a fuel efficient manner and can be used to modify driving habits in order to increase fuel economy.

The ECO display will toggle between ECO and ECO-ON depending on driving habits and vehicle usage.

**Compass/Temperature Display**

**NOTE:** If the vehicle is equipped with a Chrysler Uconnect™ gps (Navigation Radio), the NAV system will provide the compass direction, and the variance and calibration menus will be unavailable. The compass will perform accurately, based on GPS signals instead of the Earth's magnetic field.

This display provides the outside temperature and one of eight compass readings to indicate the direction the vehicle is facing.

**WARNING!**

Even if the display still reads a few degrees above 32°F ( 0°C), the road surface may be icy, particularly in woods or on bridges. Drive carefully under such conditions to prevent an accident and possible personal injury or property damage.

**Compass Calibration**

The compass on your vehicle will automatically calibrate when new, and will continuously adjust itself over the life of the vehicle. If the CAL indicator is on (or flashing), drive slowly (under 10 mph [16 kmh]) in an open area until the CAL indicator is off.

**NOTE:**

- A good calibration requires a level surface and an environment free from large metallic objects such as buildings, bridges, underground cables, railroad tracks, etc.

- Magnetic and battery powered devices, (such as cell phones, iPod's, radar detectors, PDA's and laptops) should be kept away from the top of the instrument panel. This is where the compass module is located and such devices may interfere and cause false compass readings.

**Automatic Compass Calibration**

The self-calibrating feature of the compass eliminates the need to calibrate the compass for normal conditions. During a short initial period, the compass may appear erratic and the CAL symbol will appear (blinking) on the display. After the vehicle has completed at least one complete circle under 5 mph (8 km/h) in an area free from large metal objects, calibration will be complete when the CAL symbol is extinguished.

After initial calibration, the compass will continue to automatically update this calibration whenever the vehicle is in motion.

### Manual Compass Calibration

**NOTE:** Before attempting a manual compass calibration, the engine must be running and the transmission in the PARK position (if equipped).

If the compass appears erratic or inaccurate and the variance has been properly set, you may wish to manually recalibrate the compass. To manually calibrate the compass:

1. First enter the variance mode. Press and hold the left button (located on the instrument cluster) for approximately 10 seconds to enter the variance mode, and release the button when the VAR (Compass Variance) symbol appears.
2. The current variance value will also be displayed. Once in the variance mode, it is necessary to release the button, and then press and hold it again (approximately 10 seconds) until CAL is displayed (solid, not blinking).

3. Manual compass calibration has been initiated. Drive the vehicle slowly in one or more circles under 5 mph (8 km/h) in an area free from large metal objects until the CAL symbol is extinguished.

When the CAL symbol is no longer displayed, the compass is calibrated and should display correct headings. Verify proper calibration by checking North (N), South (S), East (E), and West (W). If the compass does not appear accurate, repeat the calibration procedure in another area.

### Compass Variance (VAR)

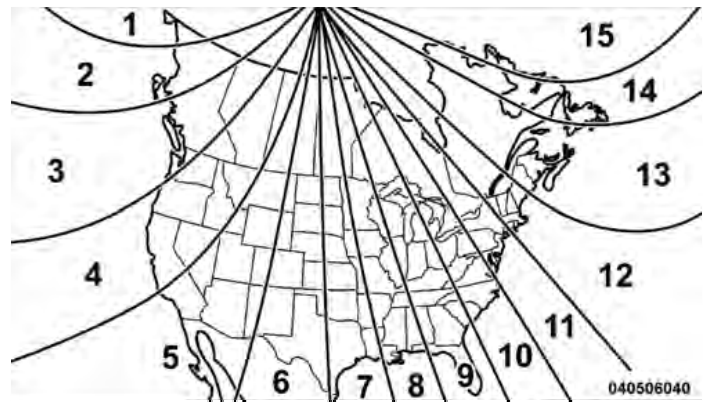
Compass Variance is the difference between Magnetic North and Geographic North. To ensure compass accuracy, the compass variance should be properly set according to the variance map for the zone where the vehicle will be driven. When properly set, the compass will automatically account for this difference.

### Setting the Compass Variance

Refer to the variance map for the correct compass variance zone. To check the variance zone, the ignition must be ON. Press and hold the left button (located on the instrument cluster) for approximately 10 seconds to enter the variance mode and release the button when the VAR symbol appears. The current variance value will also be displayed. To change the zone, press the left button once to increment the zone. The default is Zone 8. After Zone 15, the values will wrap around to Zone 1. When the correct zone is displayed (per the Compass Variance Zone Map) for the zone that the vehicle is located in, wait for about five seconds; then the trip computer will store the variance value in memory and the compass will resume normal operation.

**NOTE:** The U.S./Metric display will change from English to Metric or Metric to English before the VAR

symbol appears, however, it will revert back to its original setting after programming the compass functions.



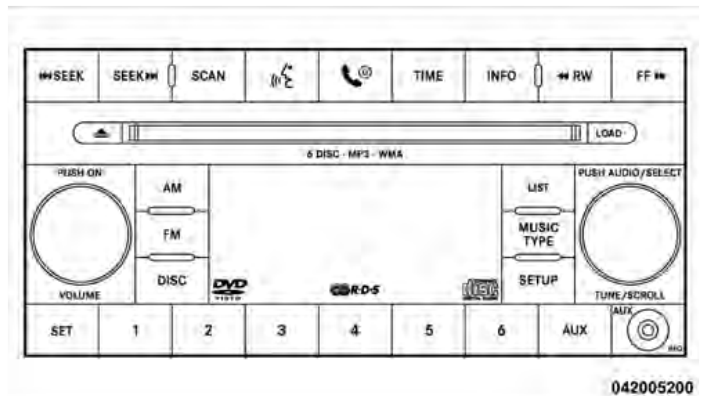
Compass Variance Map

**Outside Temperature**

If the outside temperature is more than 131°F (55°C), the display will show 131°F (55°C). When the outside temperature is less than -40°F (-40°C), the display will show -40°F (-40°C).

**MEDIA CENTER 230 (REQ) — AM/FM STEREO RADIO AND 6-DISC CD/DVD CHANGER (MP3/WMA AUX JACK)**

**NOTE:** The radio sales code is located on the lower right side of the radio faceplate.



4

**Media Center 230 (REQ)  
Operating Instructions - Radio Mode**

**NOTE:** The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.



**Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)**

Push the ON/VOLUME control knob to turn on the radio. Press the ON/VOLUME control knob a second time to turn off the radio.

**Electronic Volume Control**

The electronic volume control turns continuously (360 degrees) in either direction without stopping. Turning the ON/VOLUME control knob to the right increases the volume and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned ON, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

**SEEK Buttons**

Press and release the SEEK buttons to search for the next listenable station in AM/FM mode. Press the right switch to seek up and the left switch to seek down. The radio will remain tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding either button will bypass stations without stopping until you release it.

**SCAN Button**

Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next listenable station in AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for five seconds at each listenable station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press the SCAN button a second time.

**Voice Command Button Uconnect™ Phone — If Equipped**

Press this button to operate the Uconnect™ Phone feature (if equipped). Refer to “Uconnect™ Phone” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle”.

If your vehicle is not equipped with or this feature is not available on your vehicle, a “Not Equipped With Uconnect” message will display on the radio screen.

**Phone Button Uconnect™ Phone — If Equipped**

Press this button to operate the Uconnect™ Phone feature (if equipped). Refer to “Uconnect™ Phone” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle”.

If your vehicle is not equipped with or this feature is not available on your vehicle, a "Not Equipped With Uconnect" message will display on the radio screen.

**TIME Button**

Press the TIME button to alternate locations of the time and frequency display.

**Clock Setting Procedure**

1. Press and hold the TIME button until the hours blink.
2. Adjust the hours by turning the right side TUNE/SCROLL control knob.
3. After adjusting the hours, press the right side TUNE/SCROLL control knob to set the minutes. The minutes will begin to blink.
4. Adjust the minutes using the right side TUNE/SCROLL control knob. Press the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to save the time change.

5. To exit, press any button/knob or wait five seconds.

The clock can also be set by pressing the SETUP button and selecting the "SET HOME CLOCK" entry. Once in this display follow the above procedure, starting at step 2.

**INFO Button**

Press the INFO button for an RDS station (one with call letters displayed). The radio will return a Radio Text message broadcast from an FM station (FM mode only).

**RW/FF**

Pressing the RW (Rewind) or FF (Fast Forward) buttons causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies.

**TUNE Control**

Turn the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the frequency.

### **Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade**

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob and BASS will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to increase or decrease the bass tones.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a second time and MID will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to increase or decrease the mid-range tones.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a third time and TREBLE will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to increase or decrease the treble tones.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a fourth time and BALANCE will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a fifth time and FADE will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the left or right to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob again to exit setting tone, balance, and fade.

### **MUSIC TYPE Button**

Pressing this button once will turn on the Music Type mode for five seconds. Pressing the MUSIC TYPE button or turning the TUNE/SCROLL control knob within five seconds will allow the program format type to be selected. Many radio stations do not currently broadcast Music Type information.

Toggle the MUSIC TYPE button to select the following format types:

| Program Type                 | 16-Digit Character Display |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| No program type or undefined | None                       |
| Adult Hits                   | Adlt Hit                   |
| Classical                    | Classicl                   |
| Classic Rock                 | Cls Rock                   |
| College                      | College                    |
| Country                      | Country                    |
| Foreign Language             | Language                   |
| Information                  | Inform                     |
| Jazz                         | Jazz                       |
| News                         | News                       |
| Nostalgia                    | Nostalga                   |
| Oldies                       | Oldies                     |
| Personality                  | Persnlty                   |
| Public                       | Public                     |

| Program Type          | 16-Digit Character Display |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Rhythm and Blues      | R & B                      |
| Religious Music       | Rel Musc                   |
| Religious Talk        | Rel Talk                   |
| Rock                  | Rock                       |
| Soft                  | Soft                       |
| Soft Rock             | Soft Rck                   |
| Soft Rhythm and Blues | Soft R & B                 |
| Sports                | Sports                     |
| Talk                  | Talk                       |
| Top 40                | Top 40                     |
| Weather               | Weather                    |

By pressing the SEEK button when the Music Type icon is displayed, the radio will be tuned to the next frequency station with the same selected Music Type name. The Music Type function only operates when in the FM mode.

## 272 UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

If a preset button is activated while in the Music Type (Program Type) mode, the Music Type mode will be exited and the radio will tune to the preset station.

### SETUP Button

Pressing the SETUP button allows you to select between the following items:

**NOTE:** Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to scroll through the entries. Push the AUDIO/SELECT button to select an entry and make changes.

- **DVD Enter** - When the disc is in DVD Menu mode, selecting DVD Enter will allow you to play the current highlighted selection. Use the remote control to scroll up and down the menu (if equipped).



- **DISC Play/Pause** - You can toggle between playing the DVD and pausing the DVD by pushing the SELECT button (if equipped).

- **DVD Play Options** - Selecting the DVD Play Options will display the following:

- **Subtitle** – Repeatedly pressing SELECT will switch subtitles to different subtitle languages that are available on the disc (if equipped).
- **Audio Stream** – Repeatedly pressing SELECT will switch to different audio languages (if supported on the disc) (if equipped).
- **Angle** – Repeatedly pressing SELECT will change the viewing angle if supported by the DVD disc (if equipped).

### NOTE:

- The available selections for each of the above entries varies depending upon the disc.
- These selections can only be made while playing a DVD.

- **VES™ Power** - Allows you to turn VES™ ON and OFF (if equipped).
- **VES™ Lock** - Locks out rear VES™ remote controls (if equipped).
- **VES™ CH1/CH2** - Allows the user to change the mode of either the IR1 or IR2 wireless headphones by pressing the AUDIO/SELECT button (if equipped).
- **Set Home Clock** - Pressing the SELECT button allows you to set the clock. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to adjust the hours and then press and turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to adjust the minutes. Press the TUNE/SCROLL control knob again to save changes.
- **Player Defaults** - Selecting this item will allow the user to scroll through the following items and set defaults according to customer preference.

#### *Menu Language — If Equipped*

Selecting this item will allow the user to choose the default startup DVD menu language (effective only if language supported by disc). If you want to select a language not listed, then scroll down and select "other." Enter the four-digit country code using the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to scroll up and down to select the number and then push to select.

#### *Audio Language — If Equipped*

Selecting this item allows you to choose a default audio language (effective only if the language is supported by the disc). You can select a language not listed by scrolling down and selecting "other." Enter the country code using the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to scroll up and down to select the number and then push to select.

***Subtitle Language — If Equipped***

Selecting this item allows you to choose a default subtitle language (effective only if the language is supported by the disc). You can select a language not listed by scrolling down and selecting "other." Enter the country code using the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to scroll up and down to select the number and then push to select.

***Subtitles — If Equipped***

Selecting this item allows you to choose between subtitle Off or On.

***Audio DRC — If Equipped***

Selecting this item allows you to limit maximum audio dynamic range. The default is set to "High," and under this setting, dialogues will play at 11 db higher than if the setting is "Normal."

***Aspect Ratio — If Equipped***

Selecting this item allows you to choose between wide screen, pan scan, and letter box.

***AutoPlay — If Equipped***

When this is set to On and a DVD video is inserted, it will bypass the DVD menu screen and automatically play the movie. In some rare cases, the DVD player may not auto-play the main title. In such cases, use the MENU button on the remote control to select desired title to play.

**NOTE:** The user will have to set these defaults before loading a disc. If changes are made to these settings after a disc is loaded, changes will not be effective. Also, the defaults are effective only if the disc supports the customer-preferred settings.

**AM and FM Buttons**

Press the buttons to select AM or FM mode.

**SET Button — To Set the Pushbutton Memory**

When you are receiving a station that you wish to commit to pushbutton memory, press the SET button. The symbol SET 1 will now show in the display window. Select the button (1-6) you wish to lock onto this station

and press and release that button. If a button is not selected within five seconds after pressing the SET button, the station will continue to play but will not be stored into pushbutton memory.

You may add a second station to each pushbutton by repeating the above procedure with this exception: Press the SET button twice and SET 2 will show in the display window. Each button can be set for SET 1 and SET 2 in both AM and FM. This allows a total of 12 AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations to be stored into pushbutton memory. The stations stored in SET 2 memory can be selected by pressing the pushbutton twice.

Every time a preset button is used, a corresponding button number will display.

#### **Buttons 1 - 6**

These buttons tune the radio to the stations that you commit to pushbutton memory (12 AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations).

#### **DISC Button**

Pressing the DISC button will allow you to switch from AM/FM modes to Disc modes.

#### **Operation Instructions - (DISC MODE for CD and MP3/WMA Audio Play, DVD-VIDEO)**

The radio DVD player and many DVD discs are coded by geographic region. These region codes must match in order for the disc to play. If the region code for the DVD disc does not match the region code for the radio DVD player, it will not play the disc. Customers may take their vehicle to an authorized dealer to change the region code of the player a maximum of five times.



**CAUTION!**

The radio may shut down during extremely hot conditions. When this occurs, the radio will indicate "Disc Hot" and shut off until a safe temperature is reached. This shutdown is necessary to protect the optics of the DVD player and other radio internal components.

**NOTE:** The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

**LOAD Button — Loading Compact Disc(s)**

Press the LOAD button and the pushbutton with the corresponding number (1-6) where the CD is being loaded. The radio will display PLEASE WAIT and prompt when to INSERT DISC. After the radio displays "INSERT DISC," insert the CD into the player.

Radio display will show "LOADING DISC" when the disc is loading and "READING DISC" when the radio is reading the disc.

**CAUTION!**

This CD player will accept 4-3/4 in (12 cm) discs only. The use of other sized discs may damage the CD player mechanism.

**Eject Button — Ejecting Compact Disc(s)**

Press the EJECT button and the pushbutton with the corresponding number (1-6) where the CD was loaded and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. Radio display will show "EJECTING DISC" when the disc is being ejected and prompt the user to remove the disc.

Press and hold the EJECT button for five seconds and all CDs will be ejected from the radio.

The disc can be ejected with the radio and ignition OFF.

**SEEK Button (CD MODE)**

Press the right SEEK button for the next selection on the CD. Press the left SEEK button to return to the beginning of the current selection, or return to the beginning of the previous selection if the CD is within the first second of the current selection. Pressing and holding the SEEK button will allow you to scroll through the tracks faster in CD and MP3/MWA modes.

**SCAN Button (CD MODE)**

Press the SCAN button to scan through each track on the CD currently playing.

**TIME Button (CD MODE)**

Press this button to change the display from a large CD playing time display to a small CD playing time display.

**RW/FF (CD MODE)**

Press and hold FF (Fast Forward) and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is released, or RW or another CD button is pressed. The RW (Rewind) button works in a similar manner.

**AM or FM Button (CD MODE)**

Switches the radio into the AM or FM radio mode.

**Notes On Playing MP3/WMA Files**

The radio can play MP3/WMA files; however, acceptable MP3/WMA file recording media and formats are limited. When writing MP3/WMA files, pay attention to the following restrictions.

**Supported Media (Disc Types)**

The MP3/WMA file recording media supported by the radio are CDDA, CD-R, CD-RW, MP3, WMA, DVD Video, DVD-R, DVD-RW, DVD+R, DVD+RW, and CDDA+MP3.

**Supported Medium Formats (File Systems)**

The medium formats supported by the radio are ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2 and includes the Joliet extension. When reading discs recorded using formats other than ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2, the radio may fail to read files properly and may be unable to play the file normally. UDF and Apple HFS formats are not supported.

The radio uses the following limits for file systems:

- Maximum number of directory levels: 8
- Maximum number of files: 255
- Maximum number of folders: 100
- Maximum number of characters in file/folder names:
  - Level 1: 12 (including a separator "." and a three-character extension)
  - Level 2: 31 (including a separator "." and a three-character extension)

Multisession disc formats are supported by the radio. Multisession discs may contain combinations of normal CD audio tracks and computer files (including MP3/WMA files). Discs created with an option such as "keep disc open after writing" are most likely multisession discs. The use of multisession for CD audio or MP3/WMA playback may result in longer disc loading times.

If a disc contains multi-formats, such as CD audio and MP3/WMA tracks, the radio will only play the MP3/WMA tracks on that disc.

**Supported MP3/WMA File Formats**

The radio will recognize only files with the \*.MP3/WMA extension as MP3/WMA files. Non-MP3/WMA files named with the \*.MP3/WMA extension may cause playback problems. The radio is designed to recognize the file as an invalid MP3/WMA and will not play the file.

When using the MP3/WMA encoder to compress audio data to an MP3/WMA file, the bit rate and sampling frequencies in the following table are supported. In addition, variable bit rates (VBR) are also supported. The majority of MP3/WMA files use a 44.1 kHz sampling rate and a 192, 160, 128, 96 or VBR bit rates.

| MPEG Specification   | Sampling Frequency (kHz) | Bit Rate (kbps)                                       |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3 | 48, 44.1, 32             | 320, 256, 224, 192, 160, 128, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48 |
| MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3 | 24, 22.05, 16            | 160, 128, 144, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48                |
| WMA Specification    | Sampling Frequency (kHz) | Bit Rate (kbps)                                       |
| WMA                  | 44.1 and 48              | 48, 64, 96, 128, 160, 192 VBR                         |

ID3 Tag information for artist, song title, and album title are supported for ID3 version 1 tags. ID3 version 2 is not supported by the radios.

Playlist files are not supported. MP3 Pro files are not supported.

**Playback of MP3/WMA Files**

When a medium containing MP3/WMA data is loaded, the radio checks all files on the medium. If the medium contains a lot of folders or files, the radio will take more time to start playing the MP3/WMA files.

Loading times for playback of MP3/WMA files may be affected by the following:

- Media - CD-RW media may take longer to load than CD-R media
- Medium formats - Multisession discs may take longer to load than non-multisession discs

- Number of files and folders - Loading times will increase with more files and folders

To increase the speed of disc loading, it is recommended to use CD-R media and single-session discs. To create a single-session disc, enable the "Disc at Once" option before writing to the disc.

#### **LIST Button (DISC Mode for MP3/WMA Play)**

Pressing the LIST button will bring up a list of all folders on the disc. Scrolling up or down the list is done by turning the TUNE/SCROLL control knob. Selecting a folder by pressing the TUNE/SCROLL control knob will begin playing the files contained in that folder (or the next folder in sequence if the selection does not contain playable files).

The folder list will time out after five seconds.

#### **INFO Button (DISC Mode for MP3/WMA Play)**

Pressing the INFO button repeatedly will scroll through the following TAG information: Song Title, Artist, File Name, and Folder Name (if available).

Press the INFO button once more to return to "elapsed time" priority mode.

Press and hold the INFO button for three seconds or more and radio will display song titles for each file.

Press and hold the INFO button again for three seconds to return to "elapsed time" display.

#### **Operation Instructions - Auxiliary Mode**

The auxiliary (AUX) jack is an audio input jack which allows the user to plug in a portable device such as an MP3/WMA player, cassette player, or microphone and utilize the vehicle's audio system to amplify the source and play through the vehicle speakers.

Pressing the AUX button will change the mode to auxiliary device if the AUX jack is connected.

**NOTE:** The AUX device must be turned on and the device's volume set to the proper level. If the AUX audio is not loud enough, turn the device's volume up. If the AUX audio sounds distorted, turn the device's volume down.

**SEEK Button (Auxiliary Mode)**

No function.

**SCAN Button (Auxiliary Mode)**

No function.

**EJECT Button (Auxiliary Mode)**

No function.



**TIME Button (Auxiliary Mode)**

Press the TIME button to change the display from elapsed playing time to time of day. The time of day will display for five seconds.

**RW/FF (Auxiliary Mode)**

No function.

**SET Button (Auxiliary Mode)**

No function.

**Operating Instructions — Voice Command System (If Equipped)**

For the radio, refer to "Voice Command" in "Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle".

For Uconnect™ "Voice Command," refer to "Uconnect™ Phone" in "Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle".

**Operating Instructions - Uconnect™ Phone (If Equipped)**

Refer to "Uconnect™ Phone" in "Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle".

**Operating Instructions - Uconnect™ Multimedia (Satellite Radio) (If Equipped)**

Refer to "Uconnect™ Multimedia (Satellite Radio)".

**Operating Instructions - Video Entertainment System (VES)™ (If Equipped)**

Refer to separate "Video Entertainment System (VES)™ Guide."

**Dolby®**

Manufactured under license from Dolby® Laboratories. "Dolby®" and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby® Laboratories.

**Macrovision**

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only, unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

**DTS™**

"DTS™" and "DTS™ 2.0" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

**MEDIA CENTER 730N/430 (RER/REN/RBZ) — AM/FM STEREO RADIO AND CD/DVD/HDD/NAV — IF EQUIPPED**

**NOTE:** The sales code is located on the lower right side of the unit's faceplate.

The REN, RER and RBZ radios contain a CD/DVD player, USB port, and a 30-gigabyte hard drive (HDD). Sirius Satellite Radio is optional. The 6.5 in (16.5 cm) touch screen allows for easy menu selection.

The RER radio also contains a Global Positioning System (GPS)-based Navigation system.

Refer to your Uconnect™ Multimedia REN, RER or RBZ user's manual for detailed operating instructions.

#### **Operating Instructions — Voice Command System — If Equipped**

Refer to "Voice Command" in the Uconnect™ User Manual located on the DVD for further details.

#### **Operating Instructions — Uconnect™ Phone — If Equipped**

Refer to "Uconnect™ Phone" in the Uconnect™ User Manual located on the DVD for further details.

### **Clock Setting Procedure — RBZ Radio**

#### **To Manually Set the Clock**

1. Turn on the radio.
2. Touch the screen where the time is displayed, the clock setting menu will appear on the screen.
3. To move the hour forward, touch the screen where the word "Hour" with the arrow pointing upward is displayed. To move the hour backward, touch the screen where the word "Hour" with the arrow pointing downward is displayed.
4. To move the minute forward, touch the screen where the word "Min" with the arrow pointing upward is displayed. To move the minute backward, touch the screen where the word "Min" with the arrow pointing downward is displayed.



5. To save the new time setting, touch the screen where the word "Save" is displayed.

### **Changing Daylight Savings Time**

When selected, this feature will display the time of day in daylight savings time. Proceed as follows to change the current setting:

1. Turn on the radio.
2. Touch the screen where the time is displayed. The clock setting menu will appear on the screen.
3. When this feature is on, a check mark will appear in the box next to the words "Daylight Savings." Touch the screen where the words "Daylight Savings" are displayed to change the current setting.

### **Show Time if Radio is Off**

When selected, this feature will display the time of day on the touch screen when the radio is turned off. Proceed as follows to change the current setting:

1. Turn on the radio.
2. Touch the screen where the time is displayed. The clock setting menu will appear on the screen.
3. When this feature is on, a check mark will appear in the box next to the words "Show Time if Radio is Off." Touch the screen where the words "Show Time if Radio is Off" are displayed to change the current setting.

### **Changing the Time Zone**

1. Turn on the radio.
2. Touch the screen where the time is displayed. The clock setting menu will appear on the screen.
3. Touch the screen where the words "Set Time Zone" are displayed. The time zone selection menu will appear on the screen.
4. Select a time zone by touching the screen where your selection appears. If you do not see a time zone that you

want to select, touch the screen where the word "Page" is displayed to view additional time zones in the menu.

5. Touch the screen where the word "Save" is displayed.

### **Clock Setting Procedure — RER/REN Radio**

#### **Uconnect® gps — RER Only**

The GPS receiver used in this system is synchronized to the time data being transmitted by the GPS satellite. The satellite clock is Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). This is the worldwide standard for time. This makes the system's clock very accurate once the appropriate time zone and daylight savings information is set.

#### **To Manually Set the Clock — RER/REN**

1. Turn on the radio.
2. Touch the screen where the time is displayed.
3. Touch the screen where "User Clock" is displayed, the clock setting menu will appear on the screen.

4. To move the hour forward, touch the screen where the word "Hour" with the arrow pointing upward is displayed. To move the hour backward, touch the screen where the word "Hour" with the arrow pointing downward is displayed.

5. To move the minute forward, touch the screen where the word "Min" with the arrow pointing upward is displayed. To move the minute backward, touch the screen where the word "Min" with the arrow pointing downward is displayed.

6. To save the new time setting, touch the screen where the word "Save" is displayed.

#### **Changing Daylight Savings Time**

When selected, this feature will display the time of day in daylight savings time. Proceed as follows to change the current setting:

1. Turn on the radio.

2. Touch the screen where "User Clock" is displayed, the clock setting menu will appear on the screen.

3. When this feature is on, a check mark will appear in the box next to the words "Daylight Savings." Touch the screen where the words "Daylight Savings" are displayed to change the current setting.

#### **Show Time if Radio is Off**

When selected, this feature will display the time of day on the touch screen when the radio is turned off. Proceed as follows to change the current setting:

1. Turn on the radio.
2. Touch the screen where the time is displayed.
3. Touch the screen where "User Clock" is displayed, the clock setting menu will appear on the screen.
4. When this feature is on, a check mark will appear in the box next to the words "Show Time if Radio is Off."

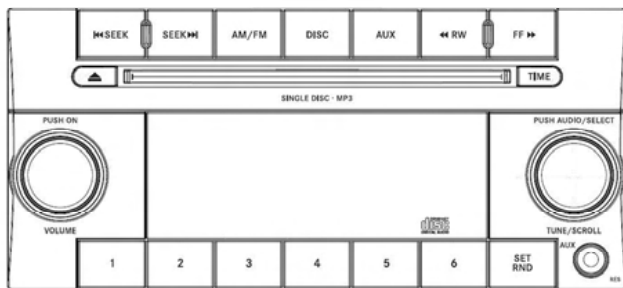
Touch the screen where the words "Show Time if Radio is Off" are displayed to change the current setting.

#### **Changing the Time Zone**

1. Turn on the radio.
2. Touch the screen where the time is displayed.
3. Touch the screen where "User Clock" is displayed, the clock setting menu will appear on the screen.
4. Touch the screen where the words "Set Time Zone" are displayed. The time zone selection menu will appear on the screen.
5. Select a time zone by touching the screen where your selection appears. If you do not see a time zone that you want to select, touch the screen where the word "Page" is displayed to view additional time zones in the menu.
6. Touch the screen where the word "Save" is displayed.

**MEDIA CENTER 130 (RES) — AM/FM STEREO RADIO WITH CD PLAYER (MP3 AUX JACK)**

**NOTE:** The radio sales code is located on the lower right side of the radio faceplate.



042305232

Media Center 130 (RES)

**Operating Instructions — Radio Mode**

**NOTE:** The ignition switch must be in the ON/RUN or ACC position to operate the radio.

**Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)**

Push the ON/VOLUME control knob to turn on the radio. Push the ON/VOLUME control knob a second time to turn off the radio.

**Electronic Volume Control**

The electronic volume control turns continuously (360 degrees) in either direction, without stopping. Turning the ON/VOLUME control knob to the right increases the volume, and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned on, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

**SEEK Buttons**

Press and release the SEEK buttons to search for the next listenable station in AM/FM mode. Press the right switch to seek up and the left switch to seek down. The radio will remain tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding either button will bypass stations without stopping, until you release it.

**TIME Button**

Press the TIME button to alternate display of the time and radio frequency.

**Clock Setting Procedure**

1. Press and hold the TIME button until the hours blink.
2. Adjust the hours by turning the right side TUNE/SCROLL control knob.
3. After adjusting the hours, press the right side TUNE/SCROLL control knob to set the minutes. The minutes will begin to blink.

4. Adjust the minutes using the right side TUNE/SCROLL control knob. Press the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to save time change.

5. To exit, press any button/knob, or wait five seconds.

**RW/FF**

Pressing the RW (Rewind) or FF (Fast Forward) buttons causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in either AM or FM frequencies.

**TUNE Control**

Turn the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the frequency.

**Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade**

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob and BASS will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to increase or decrease the bass tones.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a second time and MID will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to increase or decrease the mid-range tones.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a third time and TREBLE will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to increase or decrease the treble tones.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a fourth time and BALANCE will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a fifth time and FADE will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the left or right to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob again to exit setting tone, balance, and fade.

#### **AM/FM Button**

Press the buttons to select either AM or FM mode.

#### **SET/RND Button — To Set the Pushbutton Memory**

When you are receiving a station that you wish to commit to pushbutton memory, press the SET/RND button. The symbol SET 1 will now show in the display window. Select the button (1 to 6) you wish to lock onto this station and press and release that button. If a button is not selected within five seconds after pressing the SET/RND button, the station will continue to play but will not be stored into pushbutton memory.

You may add a second station to each pushbutton by repeating the above procedure with this exception: Press the SET/RND button twice and SET 2 will show in the display window. Each button can be set for SET 1 and SET 2 in both AM and FM. This allows a total of 12 AM and 12 FM stations to be stored into pushbutton memory. The stations stored in SET 2 memory can be selected by pressing the pushbutton twice.

Every time a preset button is used, a corresponding button number will display.

**Buttons 1 - 6**

These buttons tune the radio to the stations that you commit to pushbutton memory (12 AM and 12 FM stations).

**DISC Button**

Pressing the DISC button will allow you to switch from AM/FM modes to Disc modes.

**Operation Instructions — CD MODE For CD And MP3 Audio Play****NOTE:**

- The ignition switch must be in the ON/RUN or ACC position to operate the radio.
- This radio is capable of playing compact discs (CD), recordable compact discs (CD-R), rewritable compact discs (CD-RW), compact discs with MP3 tracks and multisession compact discs with CD and MP3 tracks.

**Inserting Compact Disc(s)**

Gently insert one CD into the CD player with the CD label facing up. The CD will automatically be pulled into the CD player and the CD icon will illuminate on the radio display. If a CD does not go into the slot more than 1.0 in (2.5 cm), a disc may already be loaded and must be ejected before a new disc can be loaded.

If you insert a disc with the ignition ON/RUN and the radio ON, the unit will switch from radio to CD mode and begin to play when you insert the disc. The display will show the track number, and index time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track 1.

### CAUTION!

- This CD player will accept 4-3/4 in (12 cm) discs only. The use of other sized discs may damage the CD player mechanism.
- Do not use adhesive labels. These labels can peel away and jam the player mechanism.
- RES is a single CD player. Do not attempt to insert a second CD if one is already loaded.
- Dual-media disc types (one side is a DVD, the other side is a CD) should not be used, and they can cause damage to the player.

### EJECT Button - Ejecting a CD

Press the EJECT button to eject the CD.



If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 10 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will reinsert the CD but will not play it.

A disc can be ejected with the radio and ignition OFF.

**NOTE:** Ejecting with the ignition OFF is not allowed on convertible or soft-top models (if equipped).

### SEEK Button

Press the right SEEK button for the next selection on the CD. Press the left SEEK button to return to the beginning of the current selection, or return to the beginning of the previous selection if the CD is within the first second of the current selection. Pressing and holding the SEEK button will allow faster scrolling through the tracks in CD and MP3 modes.



**TIME Button**

Press this button to change the display from a large CD playing time display to a small CD playing time display.

**RW/FF**

Press and hold the FF (Fast Forward) button and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is released, or RW or another CD button is pressed. The RW (Reverse) button works in a similar manner.

**AM/FM Button**

Press the button to select either AM or FM mode.

**SET/RND Button (Random Play Button)**

Press this button while the CD is playing to activate Random Play. This feature plays the selections on the compact disc in random order to provide an interesting change of pace.

Press the right SEEK button to move to the next randomly selected track.

Press the RND button a second time to stop Random Play.

**Notes on Playing MP3 Files**

The radio can play MP3 files; however, acceptable MP3 file recording media and formats are limited. When writing MP3 files, pay attention to the following restrictions.

**Supported Media (Disc Types)**

The MP3 file recording media supported by the radio are CDDA, CD-R, CD-RW, MP3, and CDDA+MP3.

**Supported Medium Formats (File Systems)**

The medium formats supported by the radio are ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2 and includes the Joliet extension. When reading discs recorded using formats other than ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2, the radio may fail to read files properly and may be unable to play the file normally. UDF and Apple HFS formats are not supported.

The radio uses the following limits for file systems:

- Maximum number of folder levels: 8
- Maximum number of files: 255
- Maximum number of folders. (The radio display of file names and folder names is limited. For large numbers of files and/or folders, the radio may be unable to display the file name and folder name, and will assign a number instead. With a maximum number of files, exceeding 20 folders will result in this display. With 200 files, exceeding 50 folders will result in this display.)
- Maximum number of characters in file/folder names:
  - Level 1: 12 (including a separator "." and a three-character extension)
  - Level 2: 31 (including a separator "." and a three-character extension)

Multisession disc formats are supported by the radio. Multisession discs may contain combinations of normal CD audio tracks and computer files (including MP3 files). Discs created with an option such as "keep disc open after writing" are most likely multisession discs. The use of multisession for CD audio or MP3 playback may result in longer disc loading times.

#### Supported MP3 File Formats

The radio will recognize only files with the \*.MP3 extension as MP3 files. Non-MP3 files named with the \*.MP3 extension may cause playback problems. The radio is designed to recognize the file as an invalid MP3 and will not play the file.

When using the MP3 encoder to compress audio data to an MP3 file, the bit rate and sampling frequencies in the following table are supported. In addition, variable bit

rates (VBR) are also supported. The majority of MP3 files use a 44.1 kHz sampling rate and a 192, 160, 128, 96 or VBR bit rate.

| MPEG Specification   | Sampling Frequency (kHz) | Bit Rate (kbps)   |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3 | 48, 44.1, 32             | 320, 256, 224, 192, 160, 128, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32 |
| MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3 | 24, 22.05, 16            | 160, 128, 144, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32, 24, 16, 8     |

ID3 Tag information for artist, song title, and album title are supported for version 1 ID3 tags. ID3 version 2 is not supported by the radios.

Playlist files are not supported. MP3 Pro files are not supported.

### Playback of MP3 Files

When a medium containing MP3 data is loaded, the radio checks all files on the medium. If the medium contains a lot of folders or files, the radio will take more time to start playing the MP3 files.

Loading times for playback of MP3 files may be affected by the following:

- Media - CD-RW media may take longer to load than CD-R media
- Medium formats - Multisession discs may take longer to load than non-multisession discs
- Number of files and folders - Loading times will increase with more files and folders

To increase the speed of disc loading, it is recommended to use CD-R media and single-session discs. To create a single-session disc, enable the "Disc at Once" option before writing to the disc.

**Operation Instructions - Auxiliary Mode**

The auxiliary (AUX) jack is an audio input jack, which allows the user to plug in a portable device, such as an MP3 player, or cassette player, and utilize the vehicle’s audio system to amplify the source and play through the vehicle speakers.

Pressing the DISC/AUX button will change the mode to auxiliary device if the AUX jack is connected.

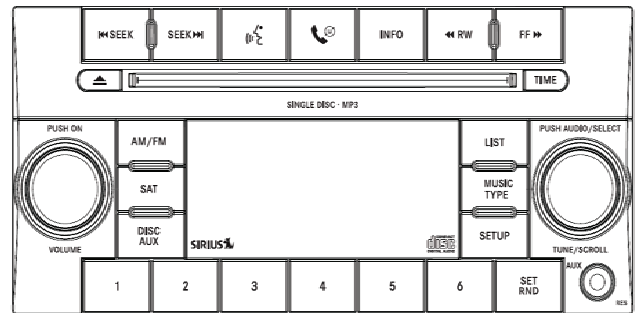
**NOTE:** The AUX device must be turned on and the device’s volume set to proper level. If the AUX audio is not loud enough, turn the device’s volume up. If the AUX audio sounds distorted, turn the device’s volume down.

**TIME Button (Auxiliary Mode)**

Press this button to change the display to time of day. The time of day will display for five seconds (when ignition is OFF).

**MEDIA CENTER 130 (RES/RSC) — AM/FM STEREO RADIO WITH CD PLAYER (MP3 AUX JACK) AND SIRIUS RADIO**

**NOTE:** The radio sales code is located on the lower right side of the radio faceplate.



042305233

Media Center 130 (RES/RSC)

**Operating Instructions — Radio Mode**

**NOTE:** The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

**Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)**

Push the ON/VOLUME control knob to turn on the radio. Push the ON/VOLUME control knob a second time to turn off the radio.

**Electronic Volume Control**

The electronic volume control turns continuously (360 degrees) in either direction without stopping. Turning the ON/VOLUME control knob to the right increases the volume and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned on, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

**SEEK Buttons**

Press and release the SEEK buttons to search for the next listenable station in AM/FM mode. Press the right switch

to seek up and the left switch to seek down. The radio will remain tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding either button will bypass stations without stopping until you release it.

**Voice Command System (Radio) — If Equipped**

Refer to “Voice Command” in “Understanding The Features If Your Vehicle”.

**Voice Command Button Uconnect™ Phone — If Equipped**

Press this button to operate the Uconnect™ Phone feature (if equipped). Refer to “Uconnect™ Phone” in “Understanding The Features If Your Vehicle”.

If your vehicle is not equipped with or this feature is not available on your vehicle, a “Not Equipped With Uconnect” message will display on the radio screen.

**Phone Button Uconnect™ Phone — If Equipped**

Press this button to operate the Uconnect™ Phone feature (if equipped). Refer to “Uconnect™ Phone” in “Understanding The Features If Your Vehicle”.

If your vehicle is not equipped with or this feature is not available on your vehicle, a “Not Equipped With Uconnect” message will display on the radio screen.

**TIME Button**

Press the TIME button to alternate display of the time and radio frequency.

**Clock Setting Procedure**

1. Press and hold the TIME button until the hours blink.
2. Adjust the hours by turning the right side TUNE/SCROLL control knob.

3. After adjusting the hours, press the right side TUNE/SCROLL control knob to set the minutes. The minutes will begin to blink.

4. Adjust the minutes using the right side TUNE/SCROLL control knob. Press the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to save time change.

5. To exit, press any button/knob or wait five seconds.

The clock can also be set by pressing the SETUP button. For vehicles equipped with satellite radio, press the SETUP button, use the TUNE/SCROLL control to select SET CLOCK, and then follow the above procedure, starting at Step 2. For vehicles not equipped with satellite radio, press the SETUP button and then follow the above procedure, starting at Step 2.

**INFO Button**

Press the INFO button for an RDS station (one with call letters displayed). The radio will return a Radio Text message broadcast from an FM station (FM mode only).

**RW/FF**

Pressing the RW (Rewind) or FF (Fast Forward) buttons causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in either AM or FM frequencies.

**TUNE Control**

Turn the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the frequency.

**Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade**

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob and BASS will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to increase or decrease the bass tones.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a second time and MID will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to increase or decrease the mid-range tones.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a third time and TREBLE will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to increase or decrease the treble tones.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a fourth time and BALANCE will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob a fifth time and FADE will display. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to the left or right to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Push the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob again to exit setting tone, balance, and fade.

**MUSIC TYPE Button**

Pressing this button once will turn on the Music Type mode for five seconds. Pressing the MUSIC TYPE button or turning the TUNE/SCROLL control knob within five seconds will allow the program format type to be selected. Many radio stations do not currently broadcast Music Type information.

Toggle the MUSIC TYPE button to select the following format types:

| Program Type                 | 16-Digit Character Display |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| No program type or undefined | None                       |
| Adult Hits                   | Adlt Hit                   |
| Classical                    | Classicl                   |

| Program Type     | 16-Digit Character Display |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| Classic Rock     | Cls Rock                   |
| College          | College                    |
| Country          | Country                    |
| Foreign Language | Language                   |
| Information      | Inform                     |
| Jazz             | Jazz                       |
| News             | News                       |
| Nostalgia        | Nostalga                   |
| Oldies           | Oldies                     |
| Personality      | Persnlty                   |
| Public           | Public                     |
| Rhythm and Blues | R & B                      |
| Religious Music  | Rel Musc                   |
| Religious Talk   | Rel Talk                   |
| Rock             | Rock                       |



| Program Type          | 16-Digit Character Display |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Soft                  | Soft                       |
| Soft Rock             | Soft Rck                   |
| Soft Rhythm and Blues | Soft R&B                   |
| Sports                | Sports                     |
| Talk                  | Talk                       |
| Top 40                | Top 40                     |
| Weather               | Weather                    |

By pressing the SEEK button when the Music Type icon is displayed, the radio will be tuned to the next frequency station with the same selected Music Type name. The Music Type function only operates when in the FM mode.

If a preset button is activated while in the Music Type (Program Type) mode, the Music Type mode will be exited and the radio will tune to the preset station.

### SETUP Button

Pressing the SETUP button allows you to select between the following items:

- **Set Clock** — Pressing the SELECT button will allow you to set the clock. Adjust the hours by turning the TUNE/SCROLL control knob. After adjusting the hours, press the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to set the minutes. The minutes will begin to blink. Adjust the minutes using the right side TUNE/SCROLL control knob. Press the TUNE/SCROLL control knob to save time change.

### AM/FM Button

Press the button to select either AM or FM mode.

### SET/RND Button — To Set the Pushbutton Memory

When you are receiving a station that you wish to commit to pushbutton memory, press the SET/RND button. The symbol SET 1 will now show in the display

window. Select the button (1–6) you wish to lock onto this station and press and release that button. If a button is not selected within five seconds after pressing the SET/RND button, the station will continue to play but will not be stored into pushbutton memory.

You may add a second station to each pushbutton by repeating the above procedure with this exception: Press the SET/RND button twice and SET 2 will show in the display window. Each button can be set for SET 1 and SET 2 in both AM and FM. This allows a total of 12 AM and 12 FM stations to be stored into pushbutton memory. The stations stored in SET 2 memory can be selected by pressing the pushbutton twice.

Every time a preset button is used, a corresponding button number will display.

### **Buttons 1 - 6**

These buttons tune the radio to the stations that you commit to pushbutton memory (12 AM and 12 FM stations).

### **DISC/AUX Button**

Pressing the DISC/AUX button will allow you to switch from AM/FM modes to DISC/AUX mode.

### **Operation Instructions — CD MODE for CD and MP3 Audio Play**

#### **NOTE:**

- The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.
- This radio is capable of playing compact discs (CD), recordable compact discs (CD-R), rewritable compact discs (CD-RW), compact discs with MP3 tracks and multisession compact discs with CD and MP3 tracks.

**Inserting Compact Disc(s)**

Gently insert one CD into the CD player with the CD label facing up. The CD will automatically be pulled into the CD player and the CD icon will illuminate on the radio display. If a CD does not go into the slot more than 1.0 in (2.5 cm), a disc may already be loaded and must be ejected before a new disc can be loaded.

If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio ON, the unit will switch from radio to CD mode and begin to play when you insert the disc. The display will show the track number, and index time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track 1.

**CAUTION!**

- **This CD player will accept 4-3/4 in (12 cm) discs only. The use of other sized discs may damage the CD player mechanism.**

*(Continued)***CAUTION! (Continued)**

- **Do not use adhesive labels. These labels can peel away and jam the player mechanism.**
- **RES is a single CD player. Do not attempt to insert a second CD if one is already loaded.**
- **Dual-media disc types (one side is a DVD, the other side is a CD) should not be used, and they can cause damage to the player.**

**EJECT Button - Ejecting a CD**

Press the EJECT button to eject the CD.



If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 10 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will reinsert the CD but will not play it.

A disc can be ejected with the radio and ignition OFF.

**NOTE:** Ejecting with the ignition OFF is not allowed on convertible or soft-top models (if equipped).

**SEEK Button**

Press the right SEEK button for the next selection on the CD. Press the left SEEK button to return to the beginning of the current selection, or return to the beginning of the previous selection if the CD is within the first second of the current selection. Pressing and holding the SEEK button will allow faster scrolling through the tracks in CD and MP3 modes.

**TIME Button**

Press this button to change the display from a large CD playing time display to a small CD playing time display.

**RW/FF**

Press and hold FF (Fast Forward) and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is released or RW or another CD button is pressed. The RW (Reverse) button works in a similar manner.

**AM/FM Button**

Press the button to select either AM or FM mode.

**SET/RND Button (Random Play Button)**

Press this button while the CD is playing to activate Random Play. This feature plays the selections on the compact disc in random order to provide an interesting change of pace.

Press the right SEEK button to move to the next randomly selected track.

Press the SET/RND button a second time to stop Random Play.

**Notes On Playing MP3 Files**

The radio can play MP3 files; however, acceptable MP3 file recording media and formats are limited. When writing MP3 files, pay attention to the following restrictions.

**Supported Media (Disc Types)**

The MP3 file recording media supported by the radio are CDDA, CD-R, CD-RW, MP3, and CDDA+MP3.

**Supported Medium Formats (File Systems)**

The medium formats supported by the radio are ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2 and includes the Joliet extension. When reading discs recorded using formats other than ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2, the radio may fail to read files properly and may be unable to play the file normally. UDF and Apple HFS formats are not supported.

The radio uses the following limits for file systems:

- Maximum number of folder levels: 8
- Maximum number of files: 255
- Maximum number of folders. (The radio display of file names and folder names is limited. For large numbers of files and/or folders, the radio may be unable to display the file name and folder name and will assign a number instead. With a maximum number of files, exceeding 20 folders will result in this display. With 200 files, exceeding 50 folders will result in this display.)
- Maximum number of characters in file/folder names:
  - Level 1: 12 (including a separator "." and a three-character extension)
  - Level 2: 31 (including a separator "." and a three-character extension)

Multisession disc formats are supported by the radio. Multisession discs may contain combinations of normal CD audio tracks and computer files (including MP3 files). Discs created with an option such as "keep disc open after writing" are most likely multisession discs. The use of multisession for CD audio or MP3 playback may result in longer disc loading times.

#### Supported MP3 File Formats

The radio will recognize only files with the \*.MP3 extension as MP3 files. Non-MP3 files named with the \*.MP3 extension may cause playback problems. The radio is designed to recognize the file as an invalid MP3 and will not play the file.

When using the MP3 encoder to compress audio data to an MP3 file, the bit rate and sampling frequencies in the following table are supported. In addition, variable bit rates (VBR) are also supported. The majority of MP3 files use a 44.1 kHz sampling rate and a 192, 160, 128, 96 or VBR bit rates.

| MPEG Specification   | Sampling Frequency (kHz) | Bit Rate (kbps)   |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3 | 48, 44.1, 32             | 320, 256, 224, 192, 160, 128, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32 |
| MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3 | 24, 22.05, 16            | 160, 128, 144, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32, 24, 16, 8     |

ID3 Tag information for artist, song title, and album title are supported for version 1 ID3 tags. ID3 version 2 is not supported by the radios.

Playlist files are not supported. MP3 Pro files are not supported.

### Playback of MP3 Files

When a medium containing MP3 data is loaded, the radio checks all files on the medium. If the medium contains a lot of folders or files, the radio will take more time to start playing the MP3 files.

Loading times for playback of MP3 files may be affected by the following:

- Media - CD-RW media may take longer to load than CD-R media
- Medium formats - Multisession discs may take longer to load than non-multisession discs
- Number of files and folders - Loading times will increase with more files and folders

To increase the speed of disc loading, it is recommended to use CD-R media and single-session discs. To create a single-session disc, enable the "Disc at Once" option before writing to the disc.

### LIST Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

Pressing the LIST button will bring up a list of all folders on the disc. Scrolling up or down the list is done by turning the TUNE/SCROLL control knob. Selecting a folder by pressing the TUNE/SCROLL control knob will begin playing the files contained in that folder (or the next folder in sequence if the selection does not contain playable files).

The folder list will time out after five seconds.

### INFO Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

Pressing the INFO button repeatedly will scroll through the following TAG information: Song Title, Artist, File Name, and Folder Name (if available).

Press the INFO button once more to return to "elapsed time" priority mode.

Press and hold the INFO button for three seconds or more and the radio will display song titles for each file.

Press and hold the INFO button again for three seconds to return to "elapsed time" display.

#### **Operation Instructions - Auxiliary Mode**

The auxiliary (AUX) jack is an audio input jack which allows the user to plug in a portable device such as an MP3 player or cassette player and utilize the vehicle's audio system to amplify the source and play through the vehicle speakers.

Pressing the AUX button will change the mode to auxiliary device if the AUX jack is connected.

**NOTE:** The AUX device must be turned on and the device's volume set to the proper level. If the AUX audio is not loud enough, turn the device's volume up. If the AUX audio sounds distorted, turn the device's volume down.

#### **TIME Button (Auxiliary Mode)**

Press this button to change the display to time of day. The time of day will display for five seconds (when the ignition is OFF).

#### **Uconnect™ Multimedia (Satellite Radio) — If Equipped**

Satellite radio uses direct satellite-to-receiver broadcasting technology to provide clear digital sound, coast to coast. The subscription service provider is Sirius Satellite Radio. This service offers over 130 channels of music, sports, news, entertainment, and programming for children, directly from its satellites and broadcasting studios.

**NOTE:** Sirius service is not available in Hawaii and has limited coverage in Alaska.

#### **System Activation**

Sirius Satellite Radio service is pre-activated, and you may begin listening immediately to the one year of audio service that is included with the factory-installed satellite



radio system in your vehicle. Sirius will supply a welcome kit that contains general information, including how to setup your on-line listening account. For further information, call the toll-free number 888-539-7474, or visit the Sirius web site at [www.sirius.com](http://www.sirius.com), or at [www.siriuscanada.ca](http://www.siriuscanada.ca) for Canadian residents.

#### **Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID)**

Please have the following information available when calling:

1. The Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID).
2. Your Vehicle Identification Number.

To access the ESN/SID, refer to the following steps:

#### **ESN/SID Access**

With the ignition switch in the ON/RUN or ACC position and the radio on, press the SETUP button and scroll

using the TUNE/SCROLL control knob until Sirius ID is selected. Press the TUNE/SCROLL control knob and the Sirius ID number will display. The Sirius ID number display will time out in two minutes. Press any button on the radio to exit this screen.

#### **Selecting Uconnect™ Multimedia (Satellite) Mode**

Press the SAT button until "SAT" appears in the display. A CD may remain in the radio while in the Satellite radio mode.

#### **Satellite Antenna**

To ensure optimum reception, do not place items on the roof around the rooftop antenna location. Metal objects placed within the line of sight of the antenna will cause decreased performance. Larger luggage items such as bikes should be placed as far rearward as possible, within the loading design of the rack. Do not place items directly on or above the antenna.

**Reception Quality**

Satellite reception may be interrupted due to one of the following reasons:

- The vehicle is parked in an underground parking structure or under a physical obstacle.
- Dense tree coverage may interrupt reception in the form of short audio mutes.
- Driving under wide bridges or along tall buildings can cause intermittent reception.
- Placing objects over or too close to the antenna can cause signal blockage.

**Operating Instructions - Uconnect™ Multimedia (Satellite) Mode**

**NOTE:** The ignition switch must be in the ON/RUN or ACC position to operate the radio.

**SEEK Buttons**

Press and release the SEEK buttons to search for the next channel in Satellite mode. Press the right switch to seek up and the left switch to seek down. The radio will remain tuned to the new channel until you make another selection. Holding either button will bypass channels without stopping until you release it.

**SCAN Button**

Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next channel, pausing for eight seconds before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press the SCAN button a second time.

**INFO Button**

Pressing the INFO button will cycle the display information between Artist, Song Title, and Composer (if available). Also, pressing and holding the INFO button for an

### 310 UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

additional three seconds will make the radio display the Song Title all of the time (press and hold again to return to normal display).

#### **RW/FF**

Pressing the RW (Rewind) or FF (Fast Forward) buttons causes the tuner to search for the next channel in the direction of the arrows.

#### **TUNE Control (Rotary)**

Turn the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the channel.

#### **MUSIC TYPE Button**

Pressing this button once will turn on the Music Type mode for five seconds. Pressing the MUSIC TYPE button or turning the TUNE/SCROLL control knob within five seconds will allow the program format type to be selected.

Toggle the MUSIC TYPE button again to select the music type.

By pressing the SEEK button when the Music Type function is active, the radio will be tuned to the next channel with the same selected Music Type name.

If a preset button is activated while in the Music Type (Program Type) mode, the Music Type mode will be exited and the radio will tune to the preset channel.

#### **SETUP Button**

Pressing the SETUP button allows you to select the following items:

- Display Sirius ID number — Press the AUDIO/SELECT button to display the Sirius ID number. This number is used to activate, deactivate, or change the Sirius subscription.

**SET Button – To Set the Pushbutton Memory**

When you are receiving a channel that you wish to commit to pushbutton memory, press the SET button. The symbol SET 1 will now show in the display window. Select the button (1-6) you wish to lock onto this channel and press and release that button. If a button is not selected within five seconds after pressing the SET button, the channel will continue to play but will not be stored into pushbutton memory.

You may add a second channel to each pushbutton by repeating the above procedure with this exception: Press the SET button twice and SET 2 will show in the display window. Each button can be set for SET 1 and SET 2. This allows a total of 12 Satellite channels to be stored into pushbutton memory. The channels stored in SET 2 memory can be selected by pressing the pushbutton twice.

Every time a preset button is used, a corresponding button number will display.

**Buttons 1 - 6**

These buttons tune the radio to the channels that you commit to pushbutton memory (12 Satellite stations).

**Operating Instructions - Uconnect™ Phone (If Equipped)**

Refer to “Uconnect™ Phone” in “Understanding The Features If Your Vehicle”.

**Uconnect™ Multimedia (SATELLITE RADIO) — IF EQUIPPED (REN/REQ/RER/RES/REU/RBZ RADIOS ONLY)**

Satellite radio uses direct satellite-to-receiver broadcasting technology to provide clear digital sound, coast to coast. The subscription service provider is Sirius Satellite Radio. This service offers over 130 channels of music, sports, news, entertainment, and programming for children, directly from its satellites and broadcasting studios.

**NOTE:** Sirius service is not available in Hawaii and has limited coverage in Alaska.

**System Activation**

Sirius Satellite Radio service is pre-activated and you may begin listening immediately to the one year of audio service that is included with the factory-installed satellite radio system in your vehicle. Sirius will supply a welcome kit that contains general information, including how to setup your on-line listening account. For further information, call the toll-free number 888-539-7474, or visit the Sirius web site at [www.sirius.com](http://www.sirius.com), or at [www.siriuscanada.ca](http://www.siriuscanada.ca) for Canadian residents.

**Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID)**

Please have the following information available when calling:

1. The Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID).
2. Your Vehicle Identification Number.

To access the ESN/SID, refer to the following steps:

**ESN/SID Access With REQ/RES Radios**

With the ignition switch in the ON/RUN or ACC position and the radio on, press the SETUP button and scroll using the TUNE/SCROLL control knob until Sirius ID is selected. Press the TUNE/SCROLL control knob and the Sirius ID number will display. The Sirius ID number display will time out in two minutes. Press any button on the radio to exit this screen.

**ESN/SID Access With REN/RER/RBZ Radios**

While in SAT mode, press the MENU button on the radio faceplate.

Next, touch the SUBSCRIPTION tab on the touch screen. All the ESNs that apply to your vehicle will display.

**ESN/SID Access With REU Radio**

While in SAT mode, press the MENU button on the radio faceplate.

Next, turn the knob surrounding the joystick in the center of the radio to scroll to Subscription, and then press and release the joystick. All of the ESNs that apply to your vehicle will display.

#### **Selecting Uconnect™ Multimedia (Satellite) Mode**

Press the SAT button until "SAT" appears in the display. A CD may remain in the radio while in the Satellite radio mode.

#### **Satellite Antenna**

To ensure optimum reception, do not place items on the roof around the rooftop antenna location or strap items to the trunk lid around the trunk lid antenna (if equipped). Metal objects placed within the line of sight of the antenna will cause decreased performance. Larger luggage items such as bikes should be placed as far rearward as possible, within the loading design of the rack. Do not place items directly on or above the antenna.

#### **Reception Quality**

Satellite reception may be interrupted due to one of the following reasons:

- The vehicle is parked in an underground parking structure or under a physical obstacle.
- Dense tree coverage may interrupt reception in the form of short audio mutes.
- Driving under wide bridges or along tall buildings can cause intermittent reception.
- Placing objects over or too close to the antenna can cause signal blockage.

#### **Operating Instructions — Uconnect™ Multimedia (Satellite) Mode**

**NOTE:** The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

**SEEK Buttons**

Press and release the SEEK buttons to search for the next channel in Satellite mode. Press the right switch to seek up and the left switch to seek down. The radio will remain tuned to the new channel until you make another selection. Holding either button will bypass channels without stopping until you release it.

**SCAN Button (When Equipped)**

Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next channel, pausing for eight seconds before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press the SCAN button a second time.

**INFO Button — Except REU Radio**

Pressing the INFO button will cycle the display information between Artist, Song Title, and Composer (if available). Also, pressing and holding the INFO button for an additional three seconds will make the radio display the song title all of the time (press and hold again to return to normal display).

**INFO Button — REU Radio**

Pressing the INFO button will display information about Artist, Song Title, and Composer (if available). Pressing the INFO button again will close the INFO screen.

**RW/FF**

Pressing the RW (Rewind) or FF (Fast Forward) buttons causes the tuner to search for the next channel in the direction of the arrows.

**TUNE Control (Rotary)**

Turn the rotary TUNE/SCROLL control knob clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the channel.

**MUSIC TYPE Button — Except REU Radio**

Pressing this button once will turn on the Music Type mode for five seconds. Pressing the MUSIC TYPE button or turning the TUNE/SCROLL control knob within five seconds will allow the program format type to be selected.

Toggle the MUSIC TYPE button again to select the music type.

By pressing the SEEK button when the Music Type function is active, the radio will be tuned to the next channel with the same selected Music Type name.

If a preset button is activated while in the Music Type (Program Type) mode, the Music Type mode will be exited and the radio will tune to the preset channel.

#### **MUSIC TYPE Button — REU Radio**

Pressing this button provides a Music Type list from which you can make a selection. Once a selection is made, you can seek up or down or scan the channels and the radio will tune to the next station matching the selected format. There is no time-out for this screen. Pressing the MUSIC TYPE button again will close the Music Type screen. Once closed, seek up, seek down, and scan will no longer be based on your selection.

#### **SETUP Button**

Pressing the SETUP button allows you to select the following items:

- Display Sirius ID number — Press the AUDIO/SELECT button to display the Sirius ID number. This number is used to activate, deactivate, or change the Sirius subscription.

#### **SET Button – To Set the Pushbutton Memory**

When you are receiving a channel that you wish to commit to pushbutton memory, press the SET button. The symbol SET 1 will now show in the display window. Select the button (1-6) you wish to lock onto this channel and press and release that button. If a button is not selected within five seconds after pressing the SET button, the channel will continue to play but will not be stored into pushbutton memory.



You may add a second channel to each pushbutton by repeating the above procedure with this exception: Press the SET button twice and SET 2 will show in the display window. Each button can be set for SET 1 and SET 2. This allows a total of 12 Satellite channels to be stored into pushbutton memory. The channels stored in SET 2 memory can be selected by pressing the pushbutton twice.

Every time a preset button is used, a corresponding button number will display.

**Buttons 1 - 6**

These buttons tune the radio to the channels that you commit to pushbutton memory (12 Satellite stations).

**Operating Instructions — Uconnect™ Phone (If Equipped)**

Refer to “Uconnect™ Phone” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle”.

**Operating Instructions — Video Entertainment System (VES)™ (If Equipped)**

Refer to separate “Video Entertainment System (VES)™ Guide.”

**CD/DVD DISC MAINTENANCE**

To keep a CD/DVD in good condition, take the following precautions:

1. Handle the disc by its edge; avoid touching the surface.
2. If the disc is stained, clean the surface with a soft cloth, wiping from center to edge.
3. Do not apply paper or tape to the disc; avoid scratching the disc.
4. Do not use solvents such as benzene, thinner, cleaners, or anti-static sprays.
5. Store the disc in its case after playing.

6. Do not expose the disc to direct sunlight.
7. Do not store the disc where temperatures may become too high.

**NOTE:** If you experience difficulty in playing a particular disc, it may be damaged (i.e., scratched, reflective coating removed, a hair, moisture or dew on the disc) oversized, or have protection encoding. Try a known good disc before considering disc player service.

#### RADIO OPERATION AND CELLULAR PHONES

Under certain conditions, the cellular phone being on in your vehicle can cause erratic or noisy performance from your radio. This condition may be lessened or eliminated by relocating the cellular phone antenna. This condition is not harmful to the radio. If your radio performance does not satisfactorily "clear" by the repositioning of the antenna, it is recommended that the radio volume be turned down or off during cellular phone operation.

## CLIMATE CONTROLS

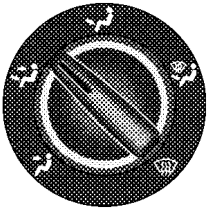
### Manual Heater Only

The controls for the heating/ventilation system in this vehicle consist of a series of rotary knobs. These comfort controls can be set to obtain the desired interior conditions.



Climate Controls


### Mode Control




81915f2a

The mode control allows you to choose from several patterns of air distribution as identified by the symbols.

#### *Panel*


 Air is directed through the outlets in the instrument panel. These outlets can be adjusted to direct airflow.

#### *Bi-Level*


 Air is directed through the panel and floor outlets.

**NOTE:** There is a difference in temperature between the upper and lower outlets for added comfort. The warmer air goes to the floor outlets. This feature gives improved comfort during sunny but cool conditions.

#### *Floor*

 Air is directed through the floor outlets and side window demist outlets with a small amount through the defrost outlet.

#### *Mix*

 Air is directed through the floor, defrost and side window demist outlets. This setting works best in cold or snowy conditions that require extra heat at the windshield. This setting is good for maintaining comfort while reducing moisture on the windshield.

**Defrost**

Air is directed through the windshield and side window demist outlets. Use this mode with maximum fan and temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting.

**Blower Control**

Use this control (center rotary knob) to regulate the amount of air forced through the system in any mode you select. The fan speed increases as you move the control to the right from the OFF position.

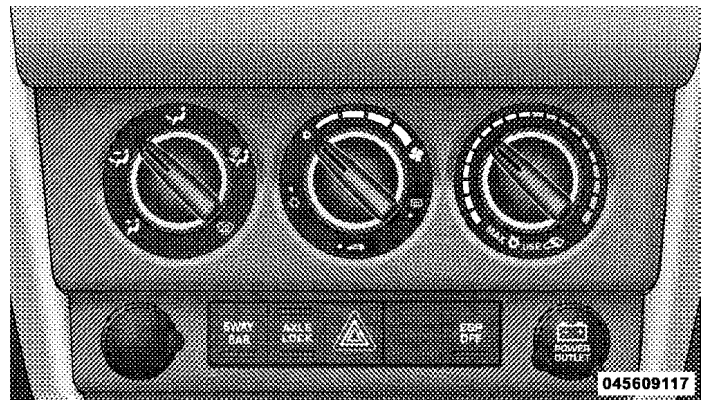
**NOTE:** For vehicles equipped with Remote Start, the climate controls will not function during Remote Start operation if the blower control is left in the "O" (Off) position.

**Temperature Control**

Use this control (right rotary knob) to regulate the temperature of the air inside the passenger compartment. The blue area of the scale indicates cooler temperatures while the red area indicates warmer temperatures.

**Manual Heating and Air Conditioning System — If Equipped**

The controls for the heating/air conditioning and ventilation system in this vehicle consist of a series of rotary knobs. These comfort controls can be set to obtain desired interior conditions.

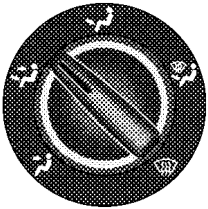


Climate Controls

## 320 UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

The instrument panel features four airflow registers. Two registers are located on the outer ends of the instrument panel and two are located in the center of the instrument panel. These registers can be closed to partially block airflow, and they can be adjusted to direct airflow where the occupant desires.


### Mode Control




81915f2a

The mode control allows you to choose from several patterns of air distribution as identified by the symbols.

### *Panel*


 Air is directed through the outlets in the instrument panel. These outlets can be adjusted to direct airflow.

### *Bi-Level*


 Air is directed through the panel and floor outlets.

**NOTE:** There is a difference in temperature between the upper and lower outlets for added comfort. The warmer air goes to the floor outlets. This feature gives improved comfort during sunny but cool conditions.


### *Floor*

 Air is directed through the floor outlets and side window demist outlets with a small amount through the defrost outlet.

*Mix*

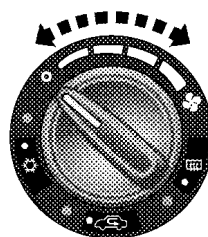
 Air is directed through the floor, defrost and side window demist outlets. This setting works best in cold or snowy conditions that require extra heat at the windshield. This setting is good for maintaining comfort while reducing moisture on the windshield.

*Defrost*

 Air is directed through the windshield and side window demist outlets. Use this mode with maximum fan and temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting.

**NOTE:** The air conditioning compressor operates in both Mix and Defrost even if the fan switch is not in the A/C position. This dehumidifies the air to help dry the windshield. To improve fuel economy, use these modes only when necessary.

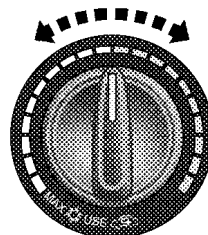
**Blower Control**



81cab396

Use this control to regulate the amount of air forced through the system in any mode you select. The fan speed increases as you move the control to the right from the OFF position.

**Temperature Control**



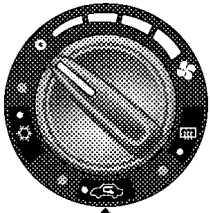
81caad41

Use this control to regulate the temperature of the air inside the passenger compartment. The blue area of the scale indicates cooler temperatures while the red area indicates warmer temperatures.

## 322 UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

**NOTE:** If your air conditioning performance seems lower than expected, check the front of the A/C condenser: located in front of the radiator, for an accumulation of dirt or insects. Clean with a gentle water spray from behind the radiator and through the condenser. Fabric front fascia protectors may reduce air flow to the condenser, reducing air conditioning performance.

### Recirculation Control



81caad32

Press this button to choose between outside air intake or recirculation of the air inside the vehicle. A light will illuminate when you are in "Recirculation" mode. Only use the "Recirculation" mode to temporarily block out any outside odors, smoke, or dust and to cool the interior rapidly

upon initial start up in very hot or humid weather.

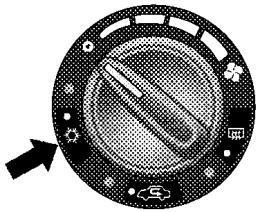
**NOTE:** Continuous use of the "Recirculation" mode may make the inside air stuffy and window fogging may occur. Extended use of this mode is not recommended.

In cold or damp weather, the use of the "Recirculation" mode will cause windows to fog on the inside because of moisture buildup inside the vehicle. For maximum defogging, select the Outside Air position.

**NOTE:** The "Recirculation" mode will not operate in the floor, mix or defrost modes.

## Air Conditioning

### Normal Operation

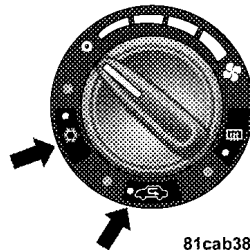


81caad38

Press this button to engage the air conditioning. A light will illuminate when the air conditioning system is engaged. Once the air conditioning is engaged, use a combination of the mode control, fan speed control, and temperature control to achieve your desired interior temperature.

**NOTE:** The air conditioning compressor will not engage until the engine has been running for about 10 seconds.

### MAX A/C



81cab384

For maximum cooling, select either the Panel or Bi-Level position using the mode control. Then, press the "A/C" and the "Recirculation" buttons so that both lights are illuminated, and set the temperature control to its coolest setting.

**NOTE:**

- Recirculation Mode will not operate in floor, mix or defrost modes.
- Refer to "Recirculation Control" in this section, for proper or extended use of this position.



## Operating Tips

### Window Fogging

Windows will fog on the inside when the humidity inside the vehicle is high. This often occurs in mild or cool temperatures when it's rainy or humid. In most cases turning on the air-conditioning (pressing the snowflake button) will clear the fog. Adjust the temperature control, air direction and blower speed to maintain comfort.

As the temperature gets colder it may be necessary to direct air onto the windshield. Adjust the temperature control and blower speed to maintain comfort. Higher blower speeds will reduce fogging. Interior fogging on the windshield can be quickly removed by selecting the defrost mode.

Regular cleaning of the inside of the windows with a non-filming cleaning solution (vinegar and water works very well) will help prevent contaminants (cigarette smoke, perfumes, etc.) from sticking to the windows. Contaminates increase the rate of window fogging.

### Summer Operation

Air conditioned vehicles must be protected with a high quality antifreeze coolant during summer to provide proper corrosion protection and to raise the boiling point of the coolant for protection against overheating. A 50 % concentration is recommended. Refer to Fluids and Genuine Parts in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for the proper coolant type.

When using the air conditioner in extremely heavy traffic in hot weather especially when towing a trailer, additional engine cooling may be required. If this situation is encountered, operate the transmission in a lower gear to increase engine RPM, coolant flow and fan speed. When stopped in heavy traffic, it may be necessary to shift into NEUTRAL (N) and press the accelerator slightly for fast idle operation to increase coolant flow and fan speed.

#### **Winter Operation**

When operating the system during the winter months, make sure the air intake, located directly in front of the windshield, is free of ice, slush, snow, or other obstructions.

#### **Vacation Storage**

Anytime you store your vehicle or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes in the fresh air and high blower setting. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.



---

# STARTING AND OPERATING

## CONTENTS

---

|  |     |   |     |
|--|-----|---|-----|
| ■ Starting Procedures . . . . .                            | 331 | ■ Manual Transmission — If Equipped . . . . .               | 335 |
| □ Manual Transmission – If Equipped . . . . .              | 331 | □ Shifting . . . . .  | 336 |
| □ Automatic Transmission – If Equipped . . . . .           | 331 | □ Downshifting . . . . .                                    | 337 |
| □ Normal Starting . . . . .                                | 331 | □ Reverse Shifting . . . . .                                | 338 |
| □ Extreme Cold Weather (Below –20°F Or<br>–29°C) . . . . . | 332 | ■ Automatic Transmission — If Equipped . . . . .            | 339 |
| □ If Engine Fails To Start . . . . .                       | 332 | □ Key Ignition Park Interlock . . . . .                     | 339 |
| □ After Starting . . . . .                                 | 334 | □ Brake/Transmission Interlock System . . . . .             | 340 |
| ■ Engine Block Heater — If Equipped . . . . .              | 335 | □ Brake/Transmission Interlock Manual<br>Override . . . . . | 340 |

**328 STARTING AND OPERATING**

|  |     |  |     |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| □ Automatic Transmission With Overdrive . . . . .                                    | 341 | □ Side Step Removal – If Equipped . . . . .                  | 354 |
| ■ Four-Wheel Drive Operation (Command-Trac I® Or Rock-Trac®) — If Equipped . . . . . | 345 | □ The Basics Of Off-Road Driving . . . . .                   | 356 |
| □ Operating Instructions/Precautions . . . . .                                       | 345 | □ When To Use 4L (Low) Range . . . . .                       | 356 |
| □ Shift Positions . . . . .  | 347 | □ Simultaneous Brake And Throttle Operation . . . . .        | 357 |
| □ Shifting Procedure . . . . .   | 348 | □ Driving In Snow, Mud And Sand . . . . .                    | 357 |
| ■ Trac-Lok® Rear Axle — If Equipped . . . . .  | 349 | □ Crossing Obstacles (Rocks And Other High Points) . . . . . | 358 |
| ■ Axle Lock (Tru-Lok®) — Rubicon Models . . . . .                                    | 350 | □ Hill Climbing . . . . .                                    | 361 |
| ■ Rear Axle Lock (Four-Wheel Drive Non-Rubicon Models) — If Equipped . . . . .       | 351 | □ Driving Through Water . . . . .                            | 363 |
| ■ Electronic Sway Bar Disconnect — If Equipped . . . . .                             | 352 | □ After Driving Off-Road . . . . .                           | 366 |
| ■ On-Road Driving Tips . . . . .   | 354 | ■ Power Steering . . . . .                                   | 367 |
| ■ Off-Road Driving Tips . . . . .  | 354 | □ Power Steering Fluid Check . . . . .                       | 368 |
|  |     | ■ Parking Brake . . . . .                                    | 369 |

|  |     |   |     |
|--|-----|---|-----|
| ■ Anti-Lock Brake System . . . . .             | 371 | □ Tire Terminology And Definitions . . . . .        | 392 |
| ■ Electronic Brake Control System . . . . .    | 373 | □ Tire Loading And Tire Pressure . . . . .          | 393 |
| □ Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) . . . . .       | 373 | ■ Tires — General Information . . . . .             | 397 |
| □ Traction Control System (TCS) . . . . .      | 374 | □ Tire Pressure . . . . .                           | 397 |
| □ Brake Assist System (BAS) . . . . .          | 374 | □ Tire Inflation Pressures . . . . .                | 398 |
| □ Hill Start Assist (HSA) . . . . .            | 375 | □ Tire Pressures For High-Speed Operation . . . . . | 400 |
| □ Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM) . . . . .   | 378 | □ Radial-Ply Tires . . . . .                        | 401 |
| □ Electronic Stability Program (ESP) . . . . . | 379 | □ Tire Spinning . . . . .                           | 401 |
| □ ESP/BAS Warning Light . . . . .              | 385 | □ Tread Wear Indicators . . . . .                   | 402 |
| □ Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . . .         | 386 | □ Life Of Tire . . . . .                            | 402 |
| ■ Tire Safety Information . . . . .            | 387 | □ Replacement Tires . . . . .                       | 403 |
| □ Tire Markings . . . . .                      | 387 | ■ Tire Rotation Recommendations . . . . .           | 404 |
| □ Tire Identification Number (TIN) . . . . .   | 391 | ■ Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) . . . . .     | 406 |

**330 STARTING AND OPERATING**

|  |     |  |     |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| □ Base System . . . . .                          | 408 | ■ Vehicle Loading . . . . .  | 418 |
| □ General Information . . . . .                  | 411 | □ Certification Label . . . . .  | 418 |
| ■ Fuel Requirements . . . . .                    | 411 | ■ Trailer Towing . . . . .   | 420 |
| □ Reformulated Gasoline . . . . .                | 412 | □ Common Towing Definitions . . . . .                                  | 421 |
| □ Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends . . . . .            | 412 | □ Trailer Hitch Classification . . . . .                               | 424 |
| □ E-85 Usage In Non-Flex Fuel Vehicles . . . . . | 413 | □ Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer<br>Weight Ratings) . . . . . | 424 |
| □ MMT In Gasoline . . . . .                      | 413 | □ Trailer And Trailer Tongue Weight . . . . .                          | 427 |
| □ Materials Added To Fuel . . . . .              | 414 | □ Towing Requirements . . . . .  | 428 |
| □ Fuel System Cautions . . . . .                 | 414 | □ Towing Tips . . . . .  | 433 |
| □ Carbon Monoxide Warnings . . . . .             | 415 | ■ Recreational Towing (Behind Motorhome, Etc.) .                       | 435 |
| ■ Adding Fuel . . . . .                          | 416 | □ Two-Wheel Drive Models . . . . .                                     | 435 |
| □ Fuel Filler Cap (Gas Cap) . . . . .            | 416 | □ Four-Wheel Drive Models . . . . .                                    | 436 |
| □ Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message . . . . .        | 418 |  |     |

## STARTING PROCEDURES

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belts.

### WARNING!

Never leave children in the vehicle alone. Leaving unintended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. The child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. The child could operate power windows, other controls or move the vehicle.

### Manual Transmission – If Equipped

Apply the parking brake, place the shift lever in NEUTRAL, and press the clutch pedal before starting the vehicle. This vehicle is equipped with a clutch interlocking ignition system. It will not start unless the clutch pedal is pressed to the floor.

### *Four-Wheel Drive Models Only*

In 4L mode, this vehicle will start regardless of whether or not the clutch pedal is pressed to the floor. This feature enhances off-road performance by allowing the vehicle to start when in 4L without having to press the clutch pedal. The “4WD Indicator Light” will illuminate when the transfer case has been shifted into this mode.

### Automatic Transmission – If Equipped

Start the vehicle with the shift lever in the PARK position (vehicle can also be started in NEUTRAL). Apply the brake before shifting to any driving range.

### Normal Starting

**NOTE:** Normal starting of either a cold or a warm engine is obtained without pumping or pressing the accelerator pedal.



### 332 STARTING AND OPERATING

Turn the ignition switch to the START position and release when the engine starts. If the engine fails to start within 10 seconds, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position, wait 10 to 15 seconds, then repeat the "Normal Starting" procedure.

#### **Tip Start Feature – Automatic Transmission Only**

Turn the ignition switch to the START position and release it as soon as the starter engages. The starter motor will continue to run, but will automatically disengage itself when the engine is running. If the engine fails to start, the starter will disengage automatically in 10 seconds. If this occurs, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position, wait 10 to 15 seconds, then repeat the "Normal Starting" procedure.

#### **Extreme Cold Weather (below –20°F or –29°C)**

To ensure reliable starting at these temperatures, use of an externally-powered electric engine block heater (available from your authorized dealer) is recommended.

#### **If Engine Fails to Start**

#### **WARNING!**

- **Never pour fuel or other flammable liquids into the throttle body air inlet opening in an attempt to start the vehicle. This could result in a flash fire causing serious personal injury.**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Do not attempt to push or tow your vehicle to get it started. Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission cannot be started this way. Unburned fuel could enter the catalytic converter and, once the engine has started, ignite and damage the converter and vehicle. If the vehicle has a discharged battery, booster cables may be used to obtain a start from a booster battery or the battery in another vehicle. This type of start can be dangerous if done improperly. Refer to "Jump Starting" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.

*Without Tip Start – Manual Transmission Only*

If the engine fails to start after you have followed the "Normal Starting" or "Extreme Cold Weather" procedures, it may be flooded. Push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and hold it there while cranking the engine. This should clear any excess fuel in case the engine is flooded.

**CAUTION!**

To prevent damage to the starter, do not crank the engine for more than 15 seconds at a time. Wait 10 to 15 seconds before trying again.

### 334 STARTING AND OPERATING

If the engine has been flooded, it may start to run, but not have enough power to continue running when the key is released. If this occurs, continue cranking with the accelerator pedal pushed all the way to the floor. Release the accelerator pedal and the key once the engine is running smoothly.

If the engine shows no sign of starting after two 15-second periods of cranking with the accelerator pedal held to the floor, repeat the "Normal Starting" or "Extreme Cold Weather" procedures.

#### *With Tip Start – Automatic Transmission Only*

If the engine fails to start after you have followed the "Normal Starting" or "Extreme Cold Weather" procedures, it may be flooded. To clear any excess fuel, push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and hold it.

Then, turn the ignition switch to the START position and release it as soon as the starter engages. The starter motor will disengage automatically in 10 seconds. Once this occurs, release the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position, wait 10 to 15 seconds, then repeat the "Normal Starting" procedure.

#### **CAUTION!**

**To prevent damage to the starter, wait 10 to 15 seconds before trying again.**

#### **After Starting**

The idle speed will automatically decrease as the engine warms up.

**ENGINE BLOCK HEATER — IF EQUIPPED**

The engine block heater warms the engine, and permits quicker starts in cold weather. Connect the cord to a standard 110-115 Volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord. The engine block heater cord is found under the hood bundled in front of the battery tray.

**WARNING!**

**Remember to disconnect the cord before driving. Damage to the 110-115 Volt AC electrical cord could cause electrocution.**

Use the heater when temperatures below 0°F (-18°C) are expected to last for several days.

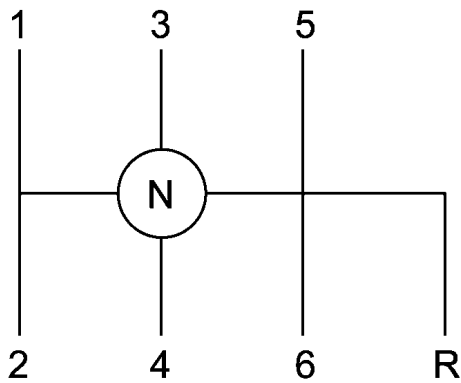
**MANUAL TRANSMISSION — IF EQUIPPED****WARNING!**

**You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended without having the parking brake fully applied. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle, especially on an incline.**

**CAUTION!**

**Never drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal, or attempt to hold the vehicle on a hill with the clutch pedal partially engaged, as this will cause abnormal wear on the clutch.**

**NOTE:** During cold weather, you may experience increased effort in shifting until the transmission fluid warms up. This is normal.



Shift Pattern

81cd6226

### Shifting

Fully press the clutch pedal before shifting gears. As you release the clutch pedal, lightly press the accelerator pedal.

You should always use 1st gear when starting from a standing position if under heavy load or when pulling a trailer.

### Recommended Vehicle Shift Speeds

To utilize your manual transmission efficiently for both fuel economy and performance, it should be upshifted as listed in recommended shift speed chart. Shift at the vehicle speeds listed for acceleration. When heavily loaded or pulling a trailer these recommended up-shift speeds may not apply.

| Manual Transmission Shift Speeds in MPH (KM/H) |        |         |            |            |            |            |
|--|--------|---------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| En-<br>gine                                    | Speeds | 1 to 2  | 2 to 3     | 3 to 4     | 4 to 5     | 5 to 6     |
| 3.8L   | Accel. | 15 (24) | 24<br>(39) | 34<br>(55) | 47<br>(76) | 56<br>(90) |
|  | Cruise | 10 (16) | 19<br>(31) | 27<br>(43) | 37<br>(60) | 41<br>(66) |

**WARNING!**

Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip, and the vehicle could skid.

**CAUTION!**

When descending a hill, be very careful to downshift one gear at a time to prevent overspeeding the engine which can cause valve damage, and/or clutch disc damage, even if the clutch pedal is pressed.

**Downshifting**

Moving from a high gear down to a lower gear is recommended to preserve brakes when driving down steep hills. In addition, downshifting at the right time provides better acceleration when you desire to resume speed. Downshift progressively. Do not skip gears to avoid overspeeding the engine and clutch.

**Maximum Recommended Downshift Speeds****CAUTION!**

Failure to follow the maximum recommended downshifting speeds may cause the engine to overspeed and/or damage the clutch disc, even if the clutch pedal is pressed.

**Manual Transmission Downshift Speeds in MPH  
(KM/H)**

| Gear Selection | 6 to 5   | 5 to 4   | 4 to 3  | 3 to 2  | 2 to 1  |
|----------------|----------|----------|---------|---------|---------|
| Maximum Speed  | 80 (129) | 70 (113) | 50 (81) | 30 (48) | 15 (24) |

**Reverse Shifting**

To shift into REVERSE, bring the vehicle to a complete stop. Press the clutch and pause briefly to allow the gear train to stop rotating. Beginning from the NEUTRAL position, move the shift lever in one quick, smooth motion straight across and into the REVERSE area (the driver will feel a firm “click” as the shifter passes the “knock-over”). Complete the shift by pulling the shift lever into REVERSE.

The “knock-over” prevents the driver from accidentally entering the REVERSE shift area and warns the driver that they are about to shift the transmission into REVERSE. Due to this feature, a slow shift to REVERSE can be perceived as a high shift effort.

**AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION — IF EQUIPPED****CAUTION!**

Damage to the transmission may occur if the following precautions are not observed:

- Shift into PARK only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- Shift into or out of REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop and the engine is at idle speed.
- Do not shift from REVERSE, PARK, or NEUTRAL into any forward gear when the engine is above idle speed.
- Before shifting into any gear, make sure your foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

**WARNING!**

It is dangerous to move the shift lever out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

**5****Key Ignition Park Interlock**

This vehicle is equipped with a Key Ignition Park Interlock which requires the shift lever to be placed in PARK prior to rotating the key to the LOCK position. The key can only be removed from the ignition when the ignition is in the LOCK position and once removed the shift lever is locked in PARK.



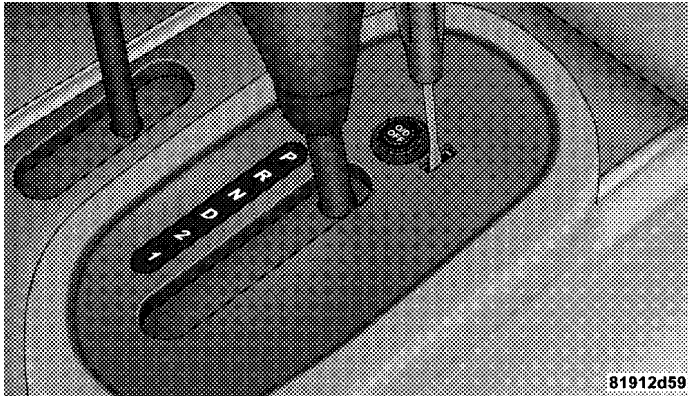
### **Brake/Transmission Interlock System**

This vehicle is equipped with a Brake Transmission Shift Interlock System (BTSI) that holds the shift lever in the PARK position when the ignition switch is in the LOCK position. To move the shift lever out of the PARK position, the ignition switch must be turned to either the ON or START position (engine running or not) and the brake pedal must be pressed.

### **Brake/Transmission Interlock Manual Override**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a shift lock manual override. The manual override may be used in the event that the shift lever should fail to move from PARK with the key in the ON position and the brake pedal pressed. To operate the shift lock manual override, perform the following steps:

1. Turn the key to the ON position but do not start the engine.
2. Firmly set the parking brake.
3. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, carefully remove the shift lock manual override cover which is located on the PRNDL bezel, above the PARK position.
4. Press and maintain firm pressure on the brake pedal.
5. Using the screwdriver, reach into the manual override opening. Press and hold the shift lock lever down.



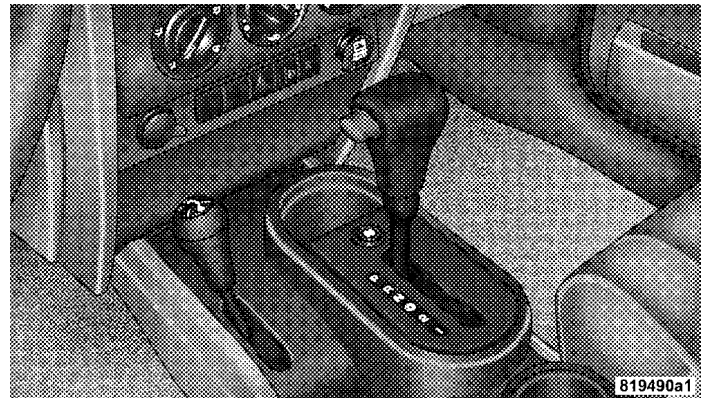
#### Brake/Transmission Interlock Manual Override

6. Press the shifter release button and shift into NEUTRAL.
7. The vehicle may then be started in NEUTRAL.

Have your vehicle inspected by your local authorized dealer if the shift lock manual override has been used.

#### Automatic Transmission with Overdrive

Shifting from DRIVE to PARK or REVERSE (or from P or R to D) should be done only after the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is stopped. Be sure to keep your foot on the brake when moving the shift lever between these gears.



Shift Lever

### Gear Ranges

**NOTE:** Under extreme cold temperatures (-10°F (-23°C) and when in DRIVE, transmission operation may be briefly limited to only second gear operation. Normal operation will resume once the transmission temperature has risen to a suitable level.

DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL position into another gear range.

#### **PARK**

This range supplements the parking brake by locking the transmission. The engine can be started in this range. Never use PARK while the vehicle is in motion. Apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle in this range. Always apply the parking brake first, then place the shift lever in the PARK position.

#### **WARNING!**

- Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.
- It is dangerous to move the shift lever out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than the idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your right foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

#### **REVERSE**

This range is for moving the vehicle backward. Use only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

**NEUTRAL**

This range is used when vehicle is standing for prolonged periods with engine running. Engine may be started in this range. Set the parking brake if you must leave the vehicle.

**NOTE:** Towing, coasting, or driving the vehicle for any other reason with the shift lever in NEUTRAL can result in severe transmission damage. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting and Operating" and "Towing a Disabled Vehicle" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.

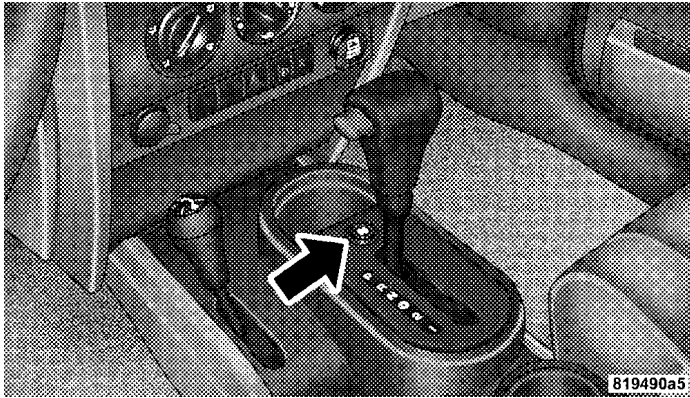
**OVERDRIVE**

This range is used for most city and highway driving. The transmission contains an electronically-controlled fourth gear (fifth gear – if equipped) Overdrive, and will automatically shift from DRIVE to OVERDRIVE if the following conditions are present:

- The shift lever is in DRIVE.
- The O/D OFF switch has not been activated.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 mph (48 km/h).

When frequent transmission shifting occurs while using Overdrive, such as when operating the vehicle under heavy load conditions (for example, in hilly terrain, strong head winds, or trailer towing), turning off overdrive will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat buildup.

If the transmission overheats, a "HOTOIL" message may be displayed in the odometer (accompanied by a chime sound).



**Overdrive Off Switch**

Overdrive can be locked out by pressing the O/D OFF switch located on the center console. The "O/D OFF Indicator Light" (on the switch) will illuminate to show that the switch has been activated. When the indicator light is on, Overdrive is locked out. Pressing the switch a

second time restores the Overdrive function. The lockout feature is useful when towing a trailer or carrying a heavy load.

**2 (Second)**

This range is used for moderate grades and to assist braking on dry pavement or in mud and snow. The vehicle begins from a stop in low gear with automatic upshift to second gear. The vehicle will not shift into third gear.

**1 (First)**

This range is used for hard pulling at low speeds in mud, sand, snow, or on steep grades. The vehicle begins and stays in low gear with no upshift. This gear provides engine compression braking at low speeds.

**CAUTION!**

- Before moving the shift lever out of PARK, you must turn the ignition from LOCK so the steering wheel and shift lever are released. Otherwise, damage to the steering column or shift lever could result.
- Never race the engine with the brakes on and the vehicle in gear, and never hold the vehicle on an incline without applying the brakes. These practices can overheat and damage the transmission.
- When “rocking” a stuck vehicle by moving between DRIVE and REVERSE, do not spin the wheels faster than 15 mph (24 km/h), or drivetrain damage may result.

**Torque Converter Clutch**

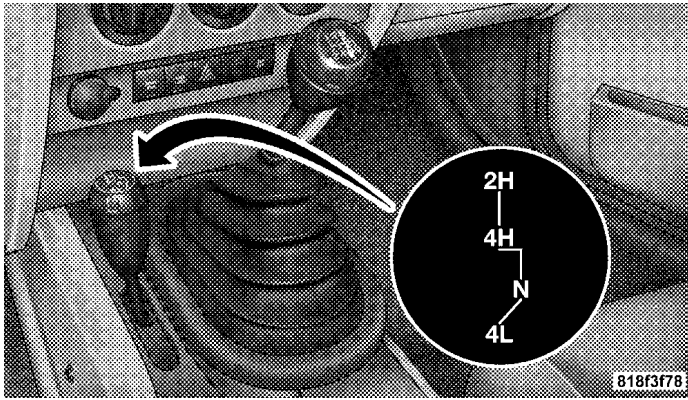
A feature designed to improve fuel economy has been added to the automatic transmission of this vehicle. A clutch within the torque converter engages automatically at calibrated speeds. This may result in a slightly different feeling or response during normal operation in high gear. When the vehicle speed drops or during acceleration, the clutch automatically and smoothly disengages.

**FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION (COMMAND-TRAC I® OR ROCK-TRAC®) — IF EQUIPPED****Operating Instructions/Precautions**

The transfer case provides four mode positions:

- 2H (Two-wheel drive high range)
- 4H (Four-wheel drive high range)
- N (Neutral)

- 4L (Four-wheel drive low range)



#### Four-Wheel Drive Shift Controls

The transfer case is intended to be driven in the 2H position for normal street and highway conditions such as hard-surfaced roads.

In the event that additional traction is required, the transfer case 4H and 4L positions can be used to lock the front and rear driveshafts together, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by simply moving the shift lever to one of these positions. The 4H and 4L positions are intended for loose, slippery road surfaces only and not intended for normal driving. Driving in the 4H and 4L positions on hard-surfaced roads will cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

The “4WD Indicator Light” (located in the instrument cluster) alerts the driver that the vehicle is in four-wheel drive, and the front and rear driveshafts are locked together. The light will illuminate when the transfer case is shifted into the 4H position.



**NOTE:** Do not attempt to shift when only the front or rear wheels are spinning. The transfer case is not equipped with a synchronizer, and the front and rear driveshaft speeds must be equal for a shift to take place. Shifting while only the front or rear wheels are spinning can cause damage to the transfer case.

When operating your vehicle in 4L, the engine speed will be approximately three times (four times for Rubicon models) that of the 2H or 4H positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine.

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type, and circumference on each wheel. Any difference will adversely affect shifting and cause damage to the transfer case.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

### WARNING!

**You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case N (Neutral) position disengages both the front and rear driveshaft from the powertrain, and will allow the vehicle to move regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.**

5

### Shift Positions

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

#### 2H Position

This range is used for normal street and highway driving on hard-surfaced roads.



**4H Position**

This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range (4H) provides additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces and should not be used on wet or dry pavement.

The "4WD Indicator Light" (located in the instrument cluster) will illuminate when the transfer case is shifted into the 4H position.

**N (Neutral) Position**

This range disengages the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. It is to be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting and Operating" for further information.

**4L Position**

This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same

speed. This range (4L) provides additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

The "4WD Indicator Light" (located in the instrument cluster) will illuminate when the transfer case is shifted into the 4L position.

**Shifting Procedure****2H to 4H or 4H to 2H**

Shifting between 2H and 4H can be made with the vehicle stopped or in motion. If the vehicle is in motion, shifts can be made up to 50 mph (80 km/h). With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after completing the shift. Apply a constant force when shifting the transfer case lever.

**4H to 4L or 4L to 4H**

With the vehicle rolling at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift an automatic transmission into NEUTRAL (N), or press the clutch pedal on a manual transmission. While the vehicle is coasting at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift the transfer case lever firmly to the desired position. Do not pause with the transfer case in N (Neutral).

**NOTE:** Shifting into or out of 4L is possible with the vehicle completely stopped; however, difficulty may occur due to the mating teeth not being properly aligned. Several attempts may be required for clutch teeth alignment and shift completion to occur. The preferred method is with the vehicle rolling at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h). Avoid attempting to engage or disengage 4L with the vehicle moving faster than 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).

**WARNING!**

**Failure to engage a position completely can cause transfer case damage or loss of power and vehicle control. You could have an injury accident. Do not drive the vehicle unless the transfer case is fully engaged.**

**TRAC-LOK® REAR AXLE — IF EQUIPPED**

The Trac-Lok® rear axle provides a constant driving force to both rear wheels and reduces wheel spin caused by the loss of traction at one driving wheel. If traction differs between the two rear wheels, the differential automatically proportions the usable torque by providing more torque to the wheel that has traction.

### 350 STARTING AND OPERATING

Trac-Lok® is especially helpful during slippery driving conditions. With both rear wheels on a slippery surface, a slight application of the accelerator will supply maximum traction.

#### WARNING!

On vehicles equipped with a limited-slip differential, never run the engine with one rear wheel off the ground. The vehicle may drive through the rear wheel remaining on the ground and cause you to lose control of your vehicle.

#### AXLE LOCK (TRU-LOK®) — RUBICON MODELS

The AXLE LOCK switch is located on the lower switch bank (below the climate controls).



Axle Lock Switch

This feature will only activate when the following conditions are met:

- Key in ignition, vehicle in 4L (Low) range.
- Vehicle speed should be 10 mph (16 km/h) or less.

To activate the system, press the bottom of the AXLE LOCK switch once to lock the rear axle only (the "Rear Axle Lock Indicator Light" will illuminate), press the bottom of the switch again to lock the front axle (the "Front Axle Lock Indicator Light" will illuminate). When the rear axle is locked, pressing the switch again will lock or unlock the front axle.

**NOTE:** The indicator lights will flash until the axles are fully locked or unlocked.

To unlock the axles, press the top of the AXLE LOCK switch.

Axle lock will disengage if the vehicle is taken out of 4L (Low) range, or the ignition switch is turned to the OFF position.

### REAR AXLE LOCK (FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE NON-RUBICON MODELS) — IF EQUIPPED

The REAR AXLE LOCK switch is located on the lower switch bank (below the climate controls).

This feature will only activate when the following conditions are met:

- Key in ignition, vehicle in 4L (Low) range.
- Vehicle speed should be 10 mph (16 km/h) or less.

To activate the system, press the REAR AXLE LOCK switch down to lock the rear axle (the "Rear Axle Lock Indicator Light" will illuminate); press the switch up to unlock the rear axle.

**NOTE:** The indicator lights will flash until the axle is fully locked or unlocked.

## 352 STARTING AND OPERATING

The rear axle lock will disengage if the vehicle is taken out of 4L (Low) range, or the ignition switch is turned to the LOCK position.

### **ELECTRONIC SWAY BAR DISCONNECT — IF EQUIPPED**

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic disconnecting stabilizer/sway bar. This system allows greater front suspension travel in off-road situations.

This system is controlled by the SWAY BAR switch located on the lower switch bank (below the climate controls).



**Sway Bar Switch**

Press the SWAY BAR switch to activate the system. Press the switch again to deactivate the system. The “Sway Bar Indicator Light” (located in the instrument cluster) will illuminate when the bar is disconnected. The “Sway Bar Indicator Light” will flash during activation transition, or

when activation conditions are not met. The stabilizer/ sway bar should remain in on-road mode during normal driving conditions.

**WARNING!**

**Do not disconnect the stabilizer bar and drive on hard-surfaced roads or at speeds above 18 mph (29 km/h); you may lose control of the vehicle, which could result in serious injury. The front stabilizer bar enhances vehicle stability and is necessary for maintaining control of the vehicle. The system monitors vehicle speed and will attempt to reconnect the stabilizer bar at speeds over 18 mph (29 km/h). This is indicated by a flashing or solid "Sway Bar Indicator Light." Once vehicle speed is reduced below 14 mph (22 km/h), the system will once again attempt to return to off-road mode.**

To disconnect the stabilizer/sway bar, shift to either 4H or 4L and press the SWAY BAR switch to obtain the off-road position. Refer to "Four-Wheel Drive Operation" in "Starting and Operating" for further information. The "Sway Bar Indicator Light" will flash until the stabilizer/ sway bar has been fully disconnected.

**NOTE:** The stabilizer/sway bar may be torque locked due to left and right suspension height differences. This condition is due to driving surface differences or vehicle loading. In order for the stabilizer/sway bar to disconnect/reconnect, the right and left halves of the bar must be aligned. This alignment may require that the vehicle be driven onto level ground or rocked from side to side.

To return to on-road mode, press the SWAY BAR switch again.

**WARNING!**

**If the stabilizer/sway bar will not return to on-road mode, vehicle stability is greatly reduced. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle over 18 mph (29 km/h). Driving faster than 18 mph (29 km/h) may cause loss of control of the vehicle, which could result in serious injury. Contact your local authorized dealer for assistance.**

**ON-ROAD DRIVING TIPS**

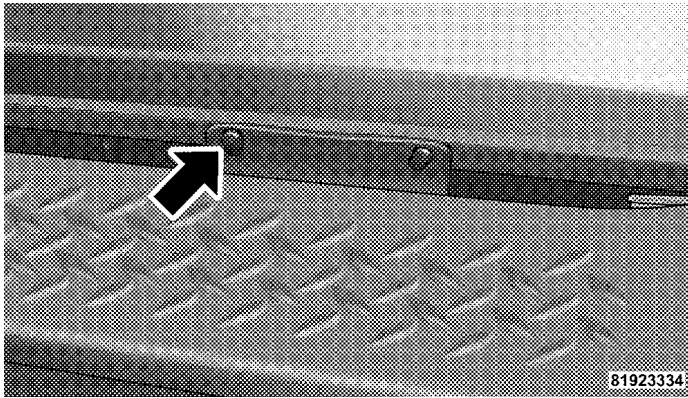
Utility vehicles have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. Specific design characteristics give them a higher center of gravity than ordinary cars.

An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road, allowing you to anticipate problems. They are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional two-wheel drive vehicles any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily in off-road conditions. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover.

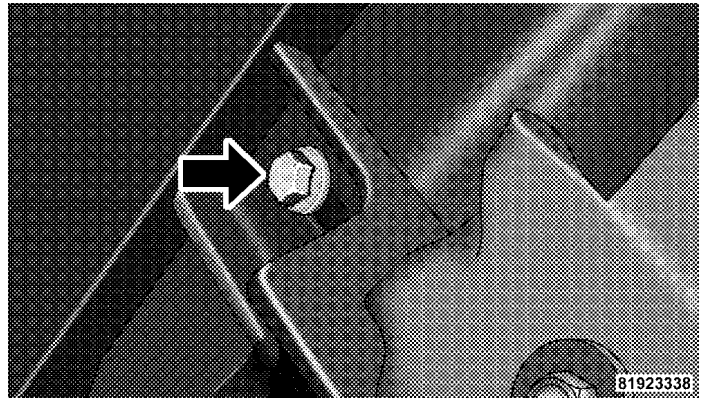
**OFF-ROAD DRIVING TIPS****Side Step Removal – If Equipped**

**NOTE:** Prior to off-road usage, the side steps should be removed to prevent damage.

1. Remove the two nuts from the bodyside.



2. Remove one bolt from the underside of the vehicle.



3. Remove the side step assembly.



### The Basics of Off-Road Driving

You will encounter many types of terrain driving off-road. You should be familiar with the terrain and area before proceeding. There are many types of surface conditions: hard-packed dirt, gravel, rocks, grass, sand, mud, snow and ice. Every surface has a different effect on your vehicle's steering, handling and traction. Controlling your vehicle is one of the keys to successful off-road driving, so always keep a firm grip on the steering wheel and maintain a good driving posture. Avoid sudden accelerations, turns or braking. In most cases, there are no road signs, posted speed limits or signal lights. Therefore, you will need to use your own good judgment on what is safe and what is not. When on a trail, you should always be looking ahead for surface obstacles and changes in terrain. The key is to plan your future driving route while remembering what you are currently driving over.

#### CAUTION!

**Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials. The heat from your vehicle exhaust system could cause a fire.**

#### WARNING!

**Always wear your seat belt and firmly tie down cargo. Unsecured cargo can become projectiles in an off-road situation.**

### When to Use 4L (Low) Range

When off-road driving, shift into 4L (Low) for additional traction and control on slippery or difficult terrain, ascending or descending steep hills, and to increase low speed pulling power. This range should be limited to extreme situations such as deep snow, mud, steep inclines, or sand where additional low speed pulling power

is needed. Vehicle speeds in excess of 25 mph (40 km/h) should be avoided when in 4L (Low) range.

### Simultaneous Brake and Throttle Operation

Many off-road driving conditions require the simultaneous use of the brake and throttle (two-footed driving). When climbing rocks, logs, or other stepped objects, using light brake pressure with light throttle will keep the vehicle from jerking or lurching. This technique is also used when you need to stop and restart a vehicle on a steep incline.

### Driving In Snow, Mud and Sand

#### Snow

In heavy snow or for additional control and traction at slower speeds, shift the transmission into a low gear and the transfer case into 4L (Low) if necessary. Do not shift to a lower gear than necessary to maintain headway. Over-revving the engine can spin the wheels and traction will be lost. If you start to slow to a stop, try turning your

steering wheel no more than a 1/4 turn quickly back and forth, while still applying throttle. This will allow the tires to get a fresh "bite" and help maintain your momentum.

#### CAUTION!

**On icy or slippery roads, do not downshift at high engine RPM or vehicle speeds, because engine braking may cause skidding and loss of control.**

#### Mud

Deep mud creates a great deal of suction around the tires and is very difficult to get through. You should use second gear (manual transmission), or DRIVE (automatic transmission), with the transfer case in the 4L (Low) position to maintain your momentum. If you start to slow to a stop, try turning your steering wheel no more than a 1/4 turn quickly back and forth for additional traction. Mud holes pose an increased threat of vehicle damage and getting stuck. They are normally full of debris from

previous vehicles getting stuck. As a good practice before entering any mud hole, get out and determine how deep it is, if there are any hidden obstacles and if the vehicle can be safely recovered if stuck.

### **Sand**

Soft sand is very difficult to travel through with full tire pressure. When crossing soft, sandy spots in a trail, maintain your vehicle's momentum and do not stop. The key to driving in soft sand is using the appropriate tire pressure, accelerating slowly, avoiding abrupt maneuvers and maintaining the vehicle's momentum. If you are going to be driving on large soft sandy areas or dunes, reduce your tire pressure to a minimum of 15 psi (103 kPa) to allow for a greater tire surface area. Reduced tire pressure will drastically improve your traction and handling while driving on the soft sand, but you must return the tires to normal air pressure before driving on pavement or other hard surfaces. Be sure you have a way to reinflate the tires prior to reducing the pressure.

### **CAUTION!**

**Reduced tire pressures may cause tire unseating and total loss of air pressure. To reduce the risk of tire unseating, while at a reduced tire pressure, reduce your speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.**

### **Crossing Obstacles (Rocks and Other High Points)**

While driving off-road, you will encounter many types of terrain. These varying types of terrain bring different types of obstacles. Before proceeding, review the path ahead to determine the correct approach and your ability to safely recover the vehicle if something goes wrong. Keeping a firm grip on the steering wheel, bring the vehicle to a complete stop and then inch the vehicle forward until it makes contact with the object. Apply the throttle lightly while holding a light brake pressure and ease the vehicle up and over the object.

**WARNING!**

**Crossing obstacles can cause abrupt steering system loading which could cause you to lose control of your vehicle.**

**Using a Spotter**

There are many times where it is hard to see the obstacle or determine the correct path. Determining the correct path can be extremely difficult when you are confronting many obstacles. In these cases, have someone guide you over, through, or around the obstacle. Have the person stand a safe distance in front of you where they can see the obstacle, watch your tires and undercarriage, and guide you through.

**Crossing Large Rocks**

When approaching large rocks, choose a path which ensures you drive over the largest of them with your tires. This will lift your undercarriage over the obstacle.

The tread of the tire is tougher and thicker than the sidewall and is designed to take the abuse. Always look ahead and make every effort to cross the large rocks with your tires.

**CAUTION!**

- **Never attempt to straddle a rock that is large enough to strike your axles or undercarriage.**
- **Never attempt to drive over a rock which is large enough to contact the door sills.**

**Crossing a Ravine, Gully, Ditch, Washout or Rut**

When crossing a ravine, gully, ditch, washout or a large rut, the angled approach is the key to maintaining your vehicle's mobility. Approach these obstacles at a 45-degree angle and let each tire go through the obstacle independently. You need to use caution when crossing large obstacles with steep sides. Do not attempt to cross any large obstacle with steep sides at an angle great

enough to put the vehicle at risk of a rollover. If you get caught in a rut, dig a small trench to the right or left at a 45-degree angle ahead of the front tires. Use the removed dirt to fill the rut ahead of the turnout you just created. You should now be able to drive out following the trench you just created at a 45-degree angle.

**WARNING!**

**There is an increased risk of rollover when crossing an obstacle, at any angle, with steep sides.**

**Crossing Logs**

To cross a log, approach it at a slight angle (approximately 10 to 15 degrees). This allows one front tire to be on top of the log while the other just starts to climb the log. While climbing the log, modulate your brake and accelerator to avoid spinning the log out from under your tires. Then ease the vehicle off the log using your brakes.

**CAUTION!**

**Do not attempt to cross a log with a greater diameter than the running ground clearance or the vehicle will become high-centered.**

**Getting High-Centered**

If you get hung up or high-centered on an object, get out of the vehicle and try to determine what the vehicle is hung up on, where it is contacting the underbody and what is the best direction to recover the vehicle. Depending on what you are in contact with, jack the vehicle up and place a few rocks under the tires so the weight is off of the high point when you let the vehicle down. You can also try rocking the vehicle or winching the vehicle off the object.

**CAUTION!**

Winching or rocking the vehicle off hard objects increases the risk of underbody damage.

**Hill Climbing**

Hill climbing requires good judgment and a good understanding of your abilities and your vehicle's limitations. Hills can cause serious problems. Some are just too steep to climb and should not be attempted. You should always feel confident with the vehicle and your abilities. You should always climb hills straight up and down. Never attempt to climb a hill on an angle.

**Before Climbing A Steep Hill**

As you approach a hill, consider its grade or steepness. Determine if it is too steep. Look to see what the traction is on the hill side trail. Is the trail straight up and down? What is on top and the other side? Are there ruts, rocks, branches or other obstacles on the path? Can you safely

recover the vehicle if something goes wrong? If everything looks good and you feel confident, shift the transmission into a lower gear with 4L (Low) engaged, and proceed with caution, maintaining your momentum as you climb the hill.

**Driving Up Hill**

Once you have determined your ability to proceed and have shifted into the appropriate gear, line your vehicle up for the straightest possible run. Accelerate with an easy constant throttle and apply more power as you start up the hill. Do not race forward into a steep grade; the abrupt change of grade could cause you to lose control. If the front end begins to bounce, ease off the throttle slightly to bring all four tires back on the ground. As you approach the crest of the hill, ease off the throttle and slowly proceed over the top. If the wheels start to slip as you approach the crest of a hill, ease off the accelerator and maintain headway by turning the steering wheel no more than a 1/4 turn quickly back and forth. This will

provide a fresh "bite" into the surface and will usually provide enough traction to complete the climb. If you do not make it to the top, place the vehicle in REVERSE and back straight down the grade using engine resistance along with the vehicle brakes.

**WARNING!**

Never attempt to climb a hill at an angle or turn around on a steep grade. Driving across an incline increases the risk of a rollover, which may result in severe injury.

**Driving Downhill**

Before driving down a steep hill, you need to determine if it is too steep for a safe descent. What is the surface traction? Is the grade too steep to maintain a slow, controlled descent? Are there obstacles? Is it a straight descent? Is there plenty of distance at the base of the hill to regain control if the vehicle descends too fast? If you feel

confident in your ability to proceed, then make sure you are in 4L (Low) and proceed with caution. Allow engine braking to control the descent and apply your brakes, if necessary, but do not allow the tires to lock.

**WARNING!**

Do not descend a steep grade in NEUTRAL. Use vehicle brakes in conjunction with engine braking. Descending a grade too fast could cause you to lose control and be seriously injured.

**Driving Across an Incline**

If at all possible, avoid driving across an incline. If it is necessary, know your vehicle's abilities. Driving across an incline places more weight on the downhill wheels, which increases the possibilities of a downhill slide or rollover. Make sure the surface has good traction with firm and stable soils. If possible, transverse the incline at an angle heading slightly up or down.

**WARNING!**

Driving across an incline increases the risk of a rollover, which may result in severe injury.

**If You Stall or Begin to Lose Headway**

If you stall or begin to lose headway while climbing a steep hill, allow your vehicle to come to a stop and immediately apply the brake. Restart the engine and shift into REVERSE. Back slowly down the hill allowing engine braking to control the descent and apply your brakes, if necessary, but do not allow the tires to lock.

**WARNING!**

If the engine stalls or you lose headway or cannot make it to the top of a steep hill or grade, never attempt to turn around. To do so may result in tipping and rolling the vehicle, which may result in severe injury. Always back carefully straight down a hill in REVERSE gear. Never back down a hill in NEUTRAL using only the vehicle brakes. Never drive diagonally across a hill; always drive straight up or down.

**Driving Through Water**

Extreme care should be taken crossing any type of water. Water crossings should be avoided, if possible, and only be attempted when necessary in a safe, responsible manner. You should only drive through areas which are designated and approved. You should tread lightly and avoid damage to the environment. You should know



your vehicle's abilities and be able to recover it if something goes wrong. You should never stop or shut a vehicle off when crossing deep water unless you ingested water into the engine air intake. If the engine stalls, do not attempt to restart it. Determine if it has ingested water first. The key to any crossing is low and slow. Shift into first gear (manual transmission), or DRIVE (automatic transmission), with the transfer case in the 4L (Low) position and proceed very slowly with a constant slow speed {3 to 5 mph (5 to 8 km/h) maximum} and light throttle. Keep the vehicle moving; do not try to accelerate through the crossing. After crossing any water higher than the bottom of the axle differentials, you should inspect all of the vehicle fluids for signs of water ingestion.

**CAUTION!**

- **Water ingestion into the axles, transmission, transfer case, engine or vehicle interior can occur if you drive too fast or through too deep of water. Water can cause permanent damage to engine, driveline or other vehicle components, and your brakes will be less effective once wet and/or muddy.**
- **This vehicle is capable of crossing through water at a depth of 30 inches (76 cm) at speeds no greater than 5 mph (8 km/h). Water ingestion can occur causing damage to your vehicle.**

**Before You Cross Any Type of Water**

As you approach any type of water, you need to determine if you can cross it safely and responsibly. If necessary, get out and walk through the water or probe it with a stick. You need to be sure of its depth, approach angle, current and bottom condition. Be careful of murky or

muddy waters; check for hidden obstacles. Make sure you will not be intruding on any wildlife, and you can recover the vehicle if necessary. The key to a safe crossing is the water depth, current and bottom conditions. On soft bottoms, the vehicle will sink in, effectively increasing the water level on the vehicle. Be sure to consider this when determining the depth and the ability to safely cross.

#### **Crossing Puddles, Pools, Flooded Areas or Other Standing Water**

Puddles, pools, flooded or other standing water areas normally contain murky or muddy waters. These water types normally contain hidden obstacles and make it difficult to determine an accurate water depth, approach angle, and bottom condition. Murky or muddy water holes are where you want to hook up tow straps prior to entering. This makes for a faster, cleaner and easier vehicle recovery. If you are able to determine you can safely cross, then proceed using the low and slow method.

#### **CAUTION!**

**Muddy waters can reduce the cooling system effectiveness by depositing debris onto the radiator.**

#### **Crossing Ditches, Streams, Shallow Rivers or Other Flowing Water**

Flowing water can be extremely dangerous. Never attempt to cross a fast running stream or river even in shallow water. Fast moving water can easily push your vehicle downstream, sweeping it out of control. Even in very shallow water, a high current can still wash the dirt out from around your tires putting you and your vehicle in jeopardy. There is still a high risk of personal injury and vehicle damage with slower water currents in depths greater than the vehicle's running ground clearance. You should never attempt to cross flowing water which is deeper than the vehicle's running ground clearance. Even

the slowest current can push the heaviest vehicle downstream and out of control if the water is deep enough to push on the large surface area of the vehicle's body. Before you proceed, determine the speed of the current, the water's depth, approach angle, bottom condition and if there are any obstacles. Then cross at an angle heading slightly upstream using the low and slow technique.

**WARNING!**

Never drive through fast moving deep water. It can push your vehicle downstream, sweeping it out of control. This could put you and your passengers at risk of injury or drowning.

**After Driving Off-Road**

Off-road operation puts more stress on your vehicle than does most on-road driving. After going off-road, it is

always a good idea to check for damage. That way you can get any problems taken care of right away and have your vehicle ready when you need it.

- Completely inspect the underbody of your vehicle. Check tires, body structure, steering, suspension, and exhaust system for damage.
- Inspect the radiator for mud and debris and clean as required.
- Check threaded fasteners for looseness, particularly on the chassis, drivetrain components, steering, and suspension. Retighten them, if required, and torque to the values specified in the Service Manual.
- Check for accumulations of plants or brush. These things could be a fire hazard. They might hide damage to fuel lines, brake hoses, axle pinion seals, and propeller shafts.

- After extended operation in mud, sand, water, or similar dirty conditions, have the radiator, fan, brake rotors, wheels, brake linings, and axle yokes inspected and cleaned as soon as possible.

### WARNING!

**Abrasive material in any part of the brakes may cause excessive wear or unpredictable braking. You might not have full braking power when you need it to prevent an accident. If you have been operating your vehicle in dirty conditions, get your brakes checked and cleaned as necessary.**

- If you experience unusual vibration after driving in mud, slush or similar conditions, check the wheels for impacted material. Impacted material can cause a wheel imbalance and freeing the wheels of it will correct the situation.

### POWER STEERING

The standard power steering system will give you good vehicle response and increased ease of maneuverability in tight spaces. The system will provide mechanical steering capability if power assist is lost.

If for some reason the power assist is interrupted, it will still be possible to steer your vehicle. Under these conditions, you will observe a substantial increase in steering effort, especially at very low vehicle speeds and during parking maneuvers.

### NOTE:

- Increased noise levels at the end of the steering wheel travel are considered normal and do not indicate that there is a problem with the power steering system.
- Upon initial start-up in cold weather, the power steering pump may make noise for a short amount of time. This is due to the cold, thick fluid in the steering

system. This noise should be considered normal, and it does not in any way damage the steering system.

**WARNING!**

Continued operation with reduced power steering assist could pose a safety risk to yourself and others. Service should be obtained as soon as possible.

**CAUTION!**

Prolonged operation of the steering system at the end of the steering wheel travel will increase the steering fluid temperature and it should be avoided when possible. Damage to the power steering pump may occur.

**Power Steering Fluid Check**

Checking the power steering fluid level at a defined service interval is not required. The fluid should only be

checked if a leak is suspected, abnormal noises are apparent, and/or the system is not functioning as anticipated. Coordinate inspection efforts through an authorized dealer.

**CAUTION!**

Do not use chemical flushes in your power steering system as the chemicals can damage your power steering components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**WARNING!**

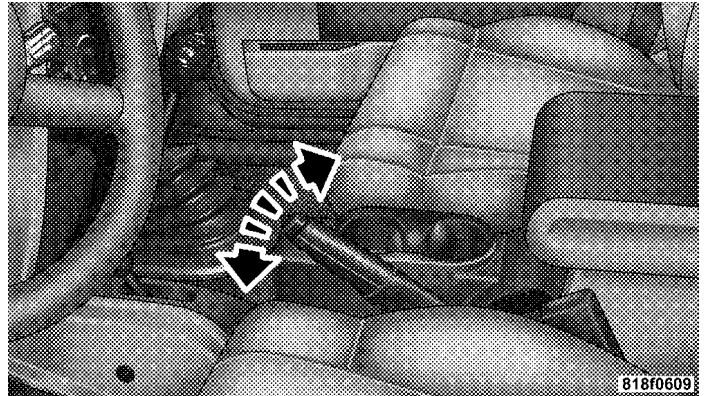
Fluid level should be checked on a level surface and with the engine off to prevent injury from moving parts and to ensure accurate fluid level reading. Do not overfill. Use only manufacturer's recommended power steering fluid.

If necessary, add fluid to restore to the proper indicated level. With a clean cloth, wipe any spilled fluid from all surfaces. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

### PARKING BRAKE

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the parking brake is fully applied. Also, be certain to leave an automatic transmission in PARK, or manual transmission in REVERSE or first gear.

The parking brake lever is located in the center console. To apply the parking brake, pull the lever up as firmly as possible. To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the center button, then lower the lever completely.



**Parking Brake**

When the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch ON, the "Brake Warning Light" in the instrument cluster will illuminate.

**NOTE:**

- When the parking brake is applied and the automatic transmission is placed in gear, the “Brake Warning Light” will flash. If vehicle speed is detected, a chime will sound to alert the driver. Fully release the parking brake before attempting to move the vehicle.
- This light only shows that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.

When parking on a hill, it is important to turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade. For vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission, apply the parking brake before placing the shift lever in PARK, otherwise the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the shift lever out of PARK. The parking brake should always be applied whenever the driver is not in the vehicle.

**WARNING!**

- **Never use the PARK position on an automatic transmission as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured.**
- **Do not leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**
- **Be sure the parking brake is fully disengaged before driving; failure to do so can lead to brake failure and an accident.**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Always fully apply the parking brake when leaving your vehicle or it may roll and cause damage or injury. Also, be certain to leave an automatic transmission in PARK, a manual transmission in REVERSE or first gear. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to roll and cause damage or injury.

**CAUTION!**

If the "Brake Warning Light" remains on with the parking brake released, a brake system malfunction is indicated. Have the brake system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately.

**ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM**

The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) is designed to aid the driver in maintaining vehicle control under adverse

braking conditions. The system operates with a separate computer to modulate hydraulic pressure to prevent wheel lock-up and help avoid skidding on slippery surfaces.

All vehicle wheels and tires must be the same size and type, and tires must be properly inflated to produce accurate signals for the computer.

**WARNING!**

Significant over or under-inflation of tires, or mixing sizes of tires or wheels on the vehicle can lead to loss of braking effectiveness.

The Anti-Lock Brake System conducts a low speed self-test at about 12 mph (20 km/h). If for any reason your foot is on the brake when the vehicle reaches 12 mph (20 km/h), this check will be delayed until 25 mph (40 km/h).



The Anti-Lock Brake System pump motor runs during the self-test, and during an ABS stop, to provide the regulated hydraulic pressure. The motor pump makes a low humming noise during operation; this is normal.

**WARNING!**

- Pumping of the Anti-Lock Brakes will diminish their effectiveness and may lead to an accident. Pumping makes the stopping distance longer. Just press firmly on your brake pedal when you need to slow down or stop.
- The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can they increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- The ABS cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning.
- The capabilities of an ABS-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

**CAUTION!**

The Anti-Lock Brake System is subject to possible detrimental effects of electronic interference caused by improperly installed aftermarket radios or telephones.

**NOTE:** During severe braking conditions, a pulsing sensation may occur and a clicking noise will be heard. This is normal, indicating that the Anti-Lock Brake System is functioning.

### **ELECTRONIC BRAKE CONTROL SYSTEM**

Your vehicle is equipped with an advanced electronic brake control system that includes Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Traction Control System (TCS), Brake Assist System (BAS), Hill Start Assist (HSA), Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM), Electronic Stability Program (ESP) and Trailer Sway Control (TSC). All of these systems work together to enhance vehicle stability and control in various driving conditions, and are commonly referred to as ESP.

#### **Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)**

This system aids the driver in maintaining vehicle control under adverse braking conditions. The system controls hydraulic brake pressure to prevent wheel lock-up and

help avoid skidding on slippery surfaces during braking. Refer to “Anti-Lock Brake System” in “Starting and Operating” for further information.

#### **WARNING!**

**The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can they increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. The ABS cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. The capabilities of an ABS-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

### **Traction Control System (TCS)**

This system monitors the amount of wheel spin of each of the driven wheels. If wheel spin is detected, brake pressure is applied to the slipping wheel(s) to provide enhanced acceleration and stability. A feature of the TCS system functions similar to a limited slip differential and controls the wheel spin across a driven axle. If one wheel on a driven axle is spinning faster than the other, the system will apply the brake of the spinning wheel. This will allow more engine torque to be applied to the wheel that is not spinning. This feature remains active even if TCS and ESP are in either the "Partial Off" or "Full Off" modes. Refer to "ESP (Electronic Stability Program)" in this section.

### **Brake Assist System (BAS)**

The BAS is designed to optimize the vehicle's braking capability during emergency braking maneuvers. The system detects an emergency braking situation by sensing the rate and amount of brake application and then applies optimum pressure to the brakes. This can help reduce braking distances. The BAS complements the anti-lock brake system (ABS). Applying the brakes very quickly results in the best BAS assistance. To receive the benefit of the system, you must apply continuous braking pressure during the stopping sequence. Do not reduce brake pedal pressure unless braking is no longer desired. Once the brake pedal is released, the BAS is deactivated.

**WARNING!**

The Brake Assist System (BAS) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. The BAS cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. The capabilities of a BAS-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

**Hill Start Assist (HSA)**

The HSA system is designed to assist the driver when starting a vehicle from a stop on a hill. HSA will maintain the level of brake pressure the driver applied for a short period of time after the driver takes their foot off of the brake pedal. If the driver does not apply the throttle

during this short period of time, the system will release brake pressure and the vehicle will roll down the hill. The system will release brake pressure in proportion to amount of throttle applied as the vehicle starts to move in the intended direction of travel.

**WARNING!**

If the clutch pedal (manual transmission only) remains pressed during the application of the throttle, the HSA will disengage allowing the vehicle to roll down the incline. This could cause a collision with another vehicle or object. To avoid this, do not apply throttle while pressing the clutch pedal until you are ready to release the clutch. Always remember the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.

### HSA Activation Criteria

The following criteria must be met in order for HSA to activate:

- Vehicle must be stopped
- Vehicle must be on an 8% or greater incline (3% for manual transmission equipped vehicles)
- Gear selection matches vehicle uphill direction (i.e., vehicle facing uphill is in forward gear; vehicle backing uphill is in REVERSE gear).

#### **WARNING!**

**There may be situations on minor hills (i.e., less than 8%), with a loaded vehicle, or while pulling a trailer where the system will not activate and slight rolling may occur, which could cause a collision with another vehicle or object. Always remember the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.**

The system will only work if the intended direction of the vehicle and vehicle gear match. For example, if the intended direction is forward up a hill and the vehicle is in DRIVE (automatic transmission equipped vehicle), and the activation criteria are met, HSA will activate.

### HSA on Automatic Transmission Vehicles

The system will work in REVERSE, and all forward gears on vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission. The system will not activate if the vehicle is placed in NEUTRAL.

### HSA on Manual Transmission Vehicles

The system will work in REVERSE, forward gears, and NEUTRAL on manual transmission equipped vehicles. The system does not recognize NEUTRAL on manual vehicles, thus it will hold the vehicle on an incline for a short period while in NEUTRAL, regardless of clutch position. To prevent this, do not attempt to roll down a hill simply by putting the transmission in NEUTRAL and

letting gravity act on the vehicle, as the HSA will prevent the vehicle from rolling. Instead, use the appropriate gear for moving in the desired direction.

#### **Towing with HSA**

HSA will provide assistance when starting on a grade when pulling a trailer.

#### **WARNING!**

- **If you use a trailer brake controller with your trailer, your trailer brakes may be activated and deactivated with the brake switch. If so, when the brake pedal is released there may not be enough brake pressure to hold the vehicle and trailer on a hill and this could cause a collision with another vehicle or object behind you. In order to avoid rolling down the hill while resuming acceleration, manually activate the trailer brake prior to releasing the brake pedal. Always remember the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- **HSA is not a parking brake. If you stop the vehicle on a hill without putting the transmission in PARK and using the parking brake, it will roll down the hill and could cause a collision with another vehicle or object. Always remember to use the parking brake while parking on a hill, and that the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.**

**HSA Off**

If you wish to turn off the HSA system, follow this procedure:

1. Start with the engine off and vehicle in PARK (automatic transmission) or NEUTRAL with clutch out (manual transmission) with wheels straight. Apply parking brake on manual transmission vehicle.
2. Start the engine.

3. With the engine running, the brake applied, and the clutch out, rotate the steering wheel 180° counterclockwise from center.

4. Press the ESP OFF switch four times within twenty seconds.

5. Rotate the steering wheel 360° clockwise (180° clockwise from center).

6. Cycle ignition switch OFF then ON.

7. If the sequence was completed properly, the “ESP/TCS Indicator Light” will blink several times to confirm HSA is off.

Steps 1-7 must be completed within 90 seconds to turn off HSA. Repeat steps 1-7 to re-enable HSA functionality.

**Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM)**

This system anticipates the potential for wheel lift by monitoring the driver’s steering wheel input and the

speed of the vehicle. When ERM determines that the rate of change of the steering wheel angle and vehicle's speed are sufficient to potentially cause wheel lift, it applies the appropriate brake and may reduce engine power to lessen the chance that wheel lift will occur. ERM will only intervene during very severe or evasive driving maneuvers.

Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM) can only reduce the chance of wheel lift occurring during severe or evasive driving maneuvers. It cannot prevent wheel lift due to other factors such as road conditions, leaving the roadway or striking objects or other vehicles.

**NOTE:** Anytime the ESP system is in the "Full Off" mode, ERM is disabled. Refer to ESP (Electronic Stability Program) for a complete explanation of the available ESP modes.

### WARNING!

Many factors, such as vehicle loading, road conditions and driving conditions, influence the chance that wheel lift or rollover may occur. Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM) cannot prevent all wheel lift or rollovers, especially those that involve leaving the roadway or striking objects or other vehicles. The capabilities of an ERM-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

### Electronic Stability Program (ESP)

This system enhances directional control and stability of the vehicle under various driving conditions. The ESP corrects for over/under steering of the vehicle by applying the brake of the appropriate wheel to assist in



counteracting the over/under steer condition. Engine power may also be reduced to help the vehicle maintain the desired path.

ESP uses sensors in the vehicle to determine the vehicle path intended by the driver and compares it to the actual path of the vehicle. When the actual path does not match the intended path, ESP applies the brake of the appropriate wheel to assist in counteracting the oversteer or understeer condition.

- Oversteer - when the vehicle is turning more than appropriate for the steering wheel position.
- Understeer - when the vehicle is turning less than appropriate for the steering wheel position.

The “ESP/TCS Indicator Light” (located in the instrument cluster), starts to flash as soon as the tires lose traction and the ESP system becomes active. The “ESP/TCS Indicator Light” also flashes when TCS is active. If

the “ESP/TCS Indicator Light” begins to flash during acceleration, ease up on the accelerator and apply as little throttle as possible. Be sure to adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road conditions.

**WARNING!**

**The Electronic Stability Program (ESP) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. The ESP cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. The capabilities of an ESP-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user’s safety or the safety of others.**

The ESP system has three available operating modes in 4H range. The system has one operating mode in 4L

range. Two-wheel drive vehicles and four-wheel drive vehicles in 2H range have two operating modes.

#### 4H Range (4WD Models) or 2WD Models

##### *On*

This is the normal operating mode for ESP in 4H and 2WD vehicles. Whenever the vehicle is started or the transfer case (if equipped) is shifted from 4L range or NEUTRAL back to 4H range, the ESP system will be in this mode. This mode should be used for most all driving situations. The ESP should only be turned to "Partial Off" or "Full Off" for specific reasons as noted below.

##### *Partial Off*

This mode is entered by momentarily pressing the ESP OFF switch. When in "Partial Off" mode, the TCS portion of ESP has been disabled and the "ESP/TCS Indicator Light" will be illuminated. All other stability features of ESP function normally. This mode is intended to be used if the vehicle is in deep snow, sand, or gravel conditions

and more wheel spin than ESP would normally allow is required to gain traction. To turn ESP on again, momentarily press the ESP OFF switch. This will restore the normal "ESP On" mode of operation.



ESP OFF Switch

**NOTE:** To improve the vehicle's traction when driving with snow chains, or starting off in deep snow, sand, or

gravel, it may be desirable to switch to the "Partial Off" mode by pressing the ESP OFF switch. Once the situation requiring ESP to be switched to the "Partial Off" mode is overcome, turn ESP back on by momentarily pressing the ESP OFF switch. This may be done while the vehicle is in motion.

#### *ESP Off (4H Range Only)*

This mode is intended for off-highway or off-road use when ESP stability features could inhibit vehicle maneuverability due to trail conditions. This mode is entered by pressing and holding the ESP OFF switch for five seconds when the vehicle is stopped and the engine is running. In this mode, all ESP and TCS stability features are turned off except for the "limited slip" feature described in the TCS section. After five seconds, a chime will sound, the "ESP/TCS Indicator Light" will illuminate, and the "ESP OFF" message will appear in the odometer. Refer to

"Compass and Mini-Trip Computer – If Equipped" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information. To turn ESP on again, momentarily press the ESP OFF switch. This will restore the normal "ESP On" mode of operation.

#### **NOTE:**

- The ESP system will change to "Partial Off" mode if the vehicle speed exceeds 40 mph (64 km/h). After the vehicle speed is reduced below 35 mph (56 km/h), the ESP system will return to "Full Off" mode.
- The "ESP OFF" message will display and the audible chime will sound when the shift lever is placed in the PARK position from any position other than PARK, and then moved out of the PARK position. This will occur even if the message was previously cleared.

**WARNING!**

With the ESP switched off, the enhanced vehicle stability offered by ESP and ERM are unavailable. In an emergency evasive maneuver, the ESP and ERM systems will not engage to assist in maintaining stability. The "Full Off" ESP mode is intended for off-road use only.

**4L Range (4WD Models)***ESP Off*

This is the normal operating mode for ESP in 4L range. Whenever the vehicle is started in 4L range, or the transfer case (if equipped) is shifted from 4H range or NEUTRAL to 4L range, the ESP system will be in this mode. In 4L range, ESP and TCS, except for the "limited

slip" feature described in the TCS section, are turned off until the vehicle reaches a speed of 40 mph (48 km/h). At 40 mph (48 km/h), the normal ESP stability function returns but TCS remains off. When the vehicle speed drops below 35 mph (40 km/h), the ESP system shuts off. The ESP is off at low vehicle speeds in 4L range so that it will not interfere with off-road driving, but the ESP function returns to provide the stability feature at speeds above 40 mph (48 km/h). The "ESP/TCS Indicator Light" will always be illuminated in 4L range when ESP is off.

**NOTE:** The "ESP OFF" message will display and the audible chime will sound when the shift lever is placed in the PARK position from any position other than PARK, and then moved out of the PARK position. This will occur even if the message was previously cleared.

**WARNING!**

With the ESP switched off, the enhanced vehicle stability offered by ESP and ERM are unavailable. In an emergency evasive maneuver, the ESP and ERM systems will not engage to assist in maintaining stability. The "Full Off" mode is intended for off-road use only.

**Disabling ESP for Modified Vehicles (4WD Models Only)**

Vehicles modified with larger tires and/or suspension lifts may experience early ESP activations as compared to a non-modified production vehicle depending on lift size, tire size, suspension changes and/or driving habits. If early ESP activations are experienced while driving a modified vehicle, the additional ability to permanently turn off ESP is available. A steering wheel/ESP button maneuver must be performed to permanently disable

ESP and defeat the functionality of the ESP switch. Repeating the procedure will return the system to normal ESP operation and restore ESP switch functionality allowing ESP "Partial" or "Off" modes.

**WARNING!**

With ESP in the permanent disable mode, enhanced vehicle stability offered by the ESP and ERM systems is unavailable. In an emergency evasive maneuver, the ESP and ERM systems will not engage to assist in maintaining stability. This disabled mode is intended for off-highway or off-road use only. Vehicle modifications requiring the owner to configure the vehicle in the ESP disabled mode, will seriously affect the vehicle's roadworthiness and safety and may lead to loss of control and/or accident resulting in possible serious or fatal injuries.

The following procedure will disable (or re-enable) ESP functionality in the vehicle:

1. Shift the transfer case into the 4H range position.
2. Turn the steering wheel until it is centered and the wheels are pointed straight ahead.
3. Cycle the ignition key OFF to ON.
4. Wait approximately five seconds for the system bulb check.
5. Turn and hold the steering wheel one-half turn to the right (clockwise).
6. Press and hold the ESP OFF button for seven seconds.
7. Turn the steering wheel back to center, and turn and hold an additional one-half turn to the left (counterclockwise).
8. Press and hold the ESP OFF button for seven seconds.

9. Turn the steering wheel back to center.
10. Press and hold the ESP OFF button for seven seconds.
11. Cycle the ignition key to OFF.

After performing the ESP disable procedure correctly, "ESP OFF" will be displayed in the odometer for approximately 12 seconds each time the ignition is moved to ON. Repeating the ESP disable procedure will re-enable normal ESP operation.

#### ESP/BAS Warning Light

**ESP  
BAS** The malfunction indicator lamp for the ESP is combined with the BAS indicator. The "ESP/BAS Warning Light" in the instrument cluster comes on when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position. It should go out with the engine running.

If the “ESP/BAS Warning Light” comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in either the ESP or the BAS system, or both. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles/kilometers at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see your authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

**NOTE:**

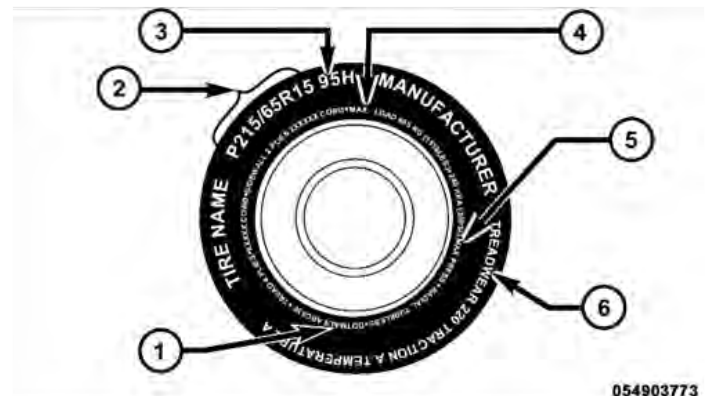
- The “ESP/BAS Warning Light” comes on momentarily each time the ignition switch is turned ON.
- Each time the ignition is turned ON, the ESP System will be ON even if it was previously turned off.
- The ESP Control System will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESP becomes inactive following the maneuver that caused the ESP activation.

**Trailer Sway Control (TSC)**

TSC uses sensors in the vehicle to recognize an excessively swaying trailer and will take the appropriate actions to attempt to stop the sway. The system may reduce engine power and apply the brake of the appropriate wheel(s) to counteract the sway of the trailer. TSC will become active automatically once an excessively swaying trailer is recognized. No driver action is required. Note that TSC cannot stop all trailers from swaying. Always use caution when towing a trailer and follow the tongue weight recommendations. Refer to “Trailer Towing” in “Starting and Operating” for further information. When TSC is functioning, the “ESP/TCS Indicator Light” will flash, the engine power may be reduced and you may feel the brakes being applied to individual wheels to attempt to stop the trailer from swaying. TSC is disabled when the ESP system is in the “Partial Off” or “Full Off” modes.

**WARNING!**

If TSC activates while driving, slow the vehicle down, stop at the nearest safe location, and adjust the trailer load to eliminate trailer sway.

**TIRE SAFETY INFORMATION****Tire Markings**

054903773

1 — U.S. DOT Safety Standards Code (TIN)  
 2 — Size Designation  
 3 — Service Description

4 — Maximum Load  
 5 — Maximum Pressure  
 6 — Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades



**NOTE:**

- P (Passenger) - Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter "P" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.
- European-Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter "P" is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H.
- LT (Light Truck) - Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters "LT" that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.
- Temporary spare tires are high-pressure compact spares designed for temporary emergency use only. Tires designed to this standard have the letter "T" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.
- High flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards, and it begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.

## Tire Sizing Chart

| <b>EXAMPLE:</b>   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Size Designation:</b>  |  |
| <p><b>P</b> = Passenger Car tire size based on U.S. design standards<br/> <b>"...blank..."</b> = Passenger Car tire based on European design standards<br/> <b>LT</b> = Light Truck tire based on U.S. design standards<br/> <b>T</b> = Temporary spare tire<br/> <b>31</b> = Overall diameter in inches (in)</p> |  |
| <p><b>215</b> = Section width in millimeters (mm)</p>   |  |
| <p><b>65</b> = Aspect ratio in percent (%)<br/> — Ratio of section height to section width of tire<br/> <b>10.5</b> = Section width in inches (in)</p>  |  |
| <p><b>R</b> = Construction code<br/> — "R" means radial construction<br/> —"D" means diagonal or bias construction</p>  |  |
| <p><b>15</b> = Rim diameter in inches (in)</p>  |  |

## EXAMPLE:

**Service Description:****95** = Load Index

— A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry

**H** = Speed Symbol

— A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions

— The maximum speed corresponding to the speed symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions (i.e., tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions, and posted speed limits)

**Load Identification:****"...blank..."** = Absence of any text on the sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) Tire**Extra Load (XL)** = Extra load (or reinforced) tire**Light Load** = Light load tire**C, D, E** = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure**Maximum Load** — Maximum load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry**Maximum Pressure** — Maximum pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire

**Tire Identification Number (TIN)**

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire, however, the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have the full TIN, including the date code, located on the white sidewall side of the tire.

Look for the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side, then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.

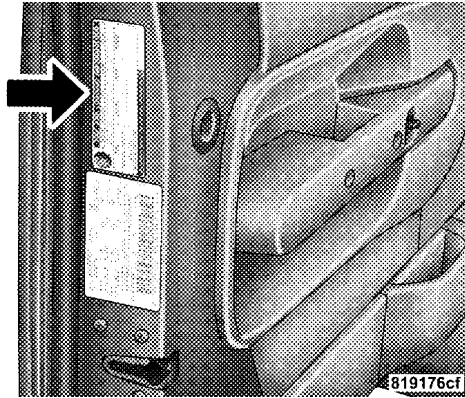
|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>EXAMPLE:</b>  |   |
| <b>DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301</b>   |   |
| <b>DOT</b> = Department of Transportation  | — This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards, and is approved for highway use  |
| <b>MA</b> = Code representing the tire manufacturing location (two digits)               |   |
| <b>L9</b> = Code representing the tire size (two digits)                                 |   |
| <b>ABCD</b> = Code used by the tire manufacturer (one to four digits)                    |   |
| <b>03</b> = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured (two digits) | —03 means the 3rd week.   |
| <b>01</b> = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured (two digits) | —01 means the year 2001<br>— Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have one number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured. Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991 |

**Tire Terminology and Definitions**

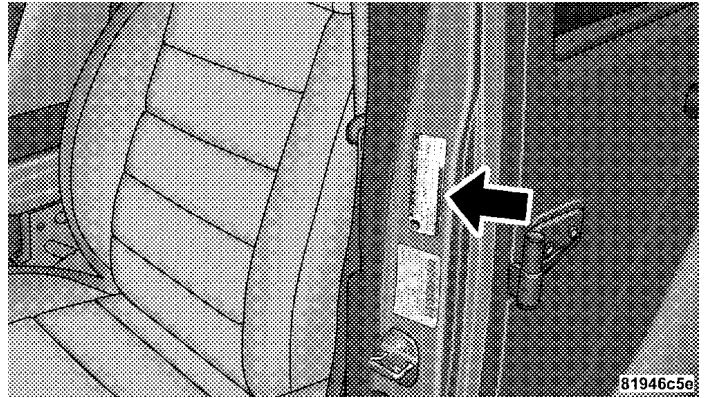
| Term                                  | Definition  |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <b>B-Pillar</b>                       | The vehicle B-Pillar is a structural member of the body located between the front and rear door (of a four-door vehicle) running from the sill to the roof.   |
| <b>Cold Tire Pressure</b>             | Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least 3 hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a three hour period. Inflation pressure is measured in units of PSI (pounds per square inch) or KPa (kilopascals). |
| <b>Maximum Inflation Pressure</b>     | The maximum inflation pressure is the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire. The max inflation pressure is molded into the sidewall.   |
| <b>Recommended Inflation Pressure</b> | Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard.  |
| <b>Tire Placard</b>                   | A paper label permanently attached to the vehicle showing the vehicle's loading capacity, the original equipment tire size and the recommended inflation pressure.  |

### Tire Loading and Tire Pressure

#### Tire Placard Location

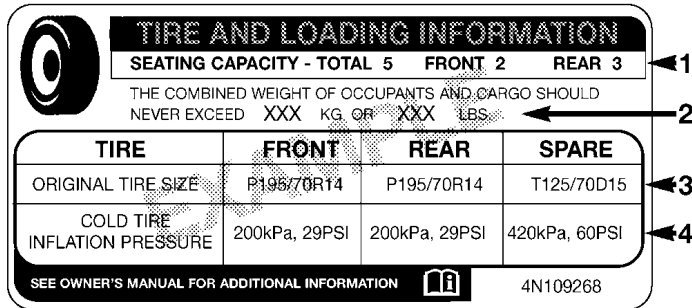


Tire Placard Location (Two-Door Models)



Tire Placard Location (Four-Door Models)

### Tire and Loading Information Placard



| TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION  |               |               |               |
|---|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| SEATING CAPACITY - TOTAL 5 FRONT 2 REAR 3   |               |               |               |
| THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS. |               |               |               |
| TIRE  | FRONT         | REAR          | SPARE         |
| ORIGINAL TIRE SIZE  | P195/70R14    | P195/70R14    | T125/70D15    |
| COLD TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE  | 200kPa, 29PSI | 200kPa, 29PSI | 420kPa, 60PSI |
| SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION                                     |               |               | 4N109268      |

811b5a9a

#### Tire and Loading Information Placard

This placard tells you important information about the:

- 1) number of people that can be carried in the vehicle
- 2) total weight your vehicle can carry
- 3) tire size designed for your vehicle
- 4) cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.

### Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size, and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the Tire and Loading Information placard and in the "Vehicle Loading" section of this manual.

**NOTE:** Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded. For further information on GAWRs, vehicle loading, and trailer towing, refer to "Vehicle Loading" in this section.

To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The

combined weight of occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

#### *Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit*

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs (635 kg) and there will be five 150 lb (68 kg) passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (295 kg) (since  $5 \times 150 = 750$ , and  $1400 - 750 = 650$  lbs [295 kg]).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

#### **NOTE:**

- The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage, and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.
- For the following example, the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs (392 kg).



396 STARTING AND OPERATING

| Occupants        |       |      | Combined weight of occupants and cargo from Tire Placard | MINUS | Combined Occupant's weight  | = | AVAILABLE Cargo/Luggage and Trailer Tongue Weight |
|------------------|-------|------|--|-------|---|---|---|
| TOTAL            | FRONT | REAR |  |       |   |   |   |
| <b>EXAMPLE 1</b> |       |      | 865 lbs  | minus | Occupant 1: 200 lbs<br>Occupant 2: 130 lbs<br>Occupant 3: 160 lbs<br>Occupant 4: 100 lbs<br>Occupant 5: 80 lbs<br>TOTAL WEIGHT: 670 lbs | = | 195 lbs   |
| 5                | 2     | 3    |  |       |   |   |   |
| <b>EXAMPLE 2</b> |       |      | 865 lbs  | minus | Occupant 1: 210 lbs<br>Occupant 2: 180 lbs<br>Occupant 3: 150 lbs<br>TOTAL WEIGHT: 540 lbs  | = | 325 lbs   |
| 3                | 2     | 1    |  |       |   |   |   |
| <b>EXAMPLE 3</b> |       |      | 865 lbs  | minus | Occupant 1: 200 lbs<br>Occupant 2: 200 lbs<br>TOTAL WEIGHT: 400 lbs   | = | 465 lbs   |
| 2                | 2     | 0    |  |       |   |   |   |

811a4d11

EXAMPLE

**WARNING!**

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

**TIRES — GENERAL INFORMATION****Tire Pressure**

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Three primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

**Safety****WARNING!**

- Under-inflation increases tire flexing and can result in over-heating and tire failure.
- Over-inflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuck holes can cause damage that results in tire failure.
- Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.
- Over-inflated or under-inflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.
- Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.

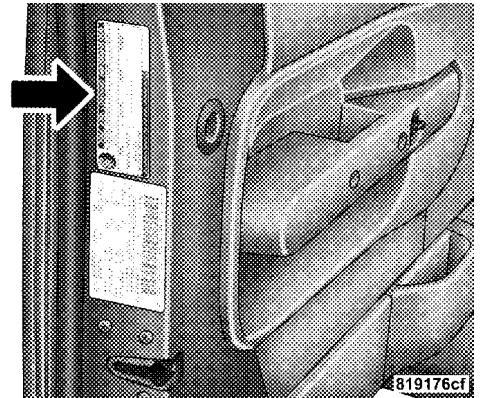
### Economy

Improper inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life resulting in a need for earlier tire replacement. Under-inflation also increases tire rolling resistance and results in higher fuel consumption.

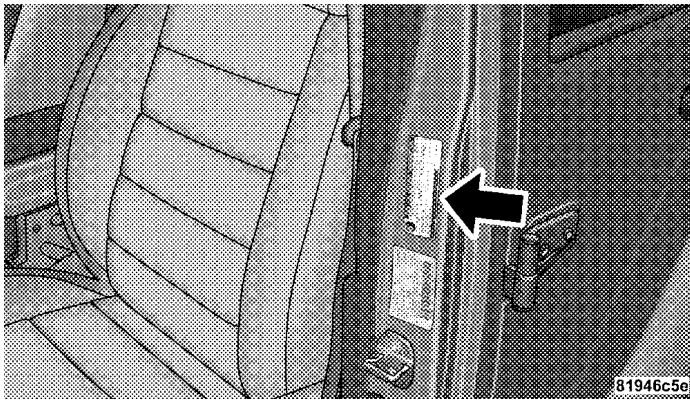
### Ride Comfort and Vehicle Stability

Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Over-inflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.

### Tire Inflation Pressures



Tire Placard Location (Two-Door Models)



#### Tire Placard Location (Four-Door Models)

Tire pressure should be checked and adjusted as well as inspected for signs of tire wear or visible damage, at least once a month. Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check tire pressure. Do not make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated.

#### CAUTION!

After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor.

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always "cold tire inflation pressure." Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after a three-hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire side wall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

#### 400 STARTING AND OPERATING

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12° F (7° C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage, especially in the Winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68° F (20° C) and the outside temperature = 32° F (0° C) then the cold tire inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12° F (7° C) for this outside temperature condition.

Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure buildup or your tire pressure will be too low.

#### **Tire Pressures for High-Speed Operation**

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high

speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high-speed vehicle operation. Refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

#### **WARNING!**

**High speed driving with your vehicle under load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious accident. Do not drive a vehicle loaded to maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).**

### Radial-Ply Tires

**WARNING!**

Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause an accident. Always use radial tires in sets of four. Never combine them with other types of tires.

Cuts and punctures in radial tires are repairable only in the tread area because of sidewall flexing. Consult your authorized dealer for radial tire repairs.

### Tire Spinning

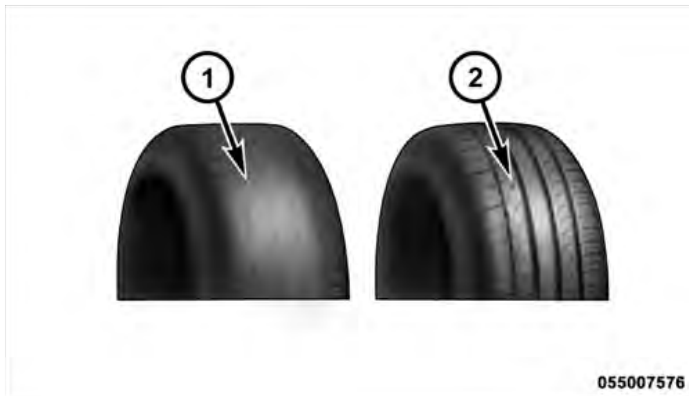
When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, do not spin your vehicle's wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h).

**WARNING!**

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) when you are stuck, and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel no matter what the speed.

### Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.



1 — Worn Tire  
2 — New Tire

These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. They will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes 1/16 in (2 mm). When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the tire should be replaced.

### Life of Tire

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including but not limited to:

- Driving style
- Tire pressure
- Distance driven

**WARNING!**

**Tires and the spare tire should be replaced after six years, regardless of the remaining tread. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure. You could lose control and have an accident resulting in serious injury or death.**

Keep unmounted tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease and gasoline.

**Replacement Tires**

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for

wear and correct cold tire inflation pressure. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed (see the paragraph on tread wear indicators). Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard for the size designation of your tire. The service description and load identification will be found on the original equipment tire. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle. We recommend that you refer to your original equipment or contact an authorized tire dealer with any questions you may have on tire specifications or capability.



**WARNING!**

- Do not use a tire, wheel size or rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have an accident resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.
- Never use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could result in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have an accident.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

**CAUTION!**

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

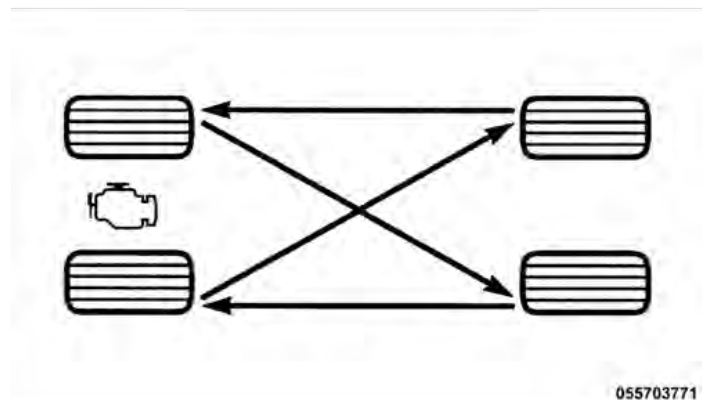
**TIRE ROTATION RECOMMENDATIONS**

Tires on the front and rear axles of vehicles operate at different loads and perform different steering, handling, and braking functions. For these reasons, they wear at unequal rates.

These effects can be reduced by timely rotation of tires. The benefits of rotation are especially worthwhile with aggressive tread designs such as those on On/Off Road type tires. Rotation will increase tread life, help to maintain mud, snow, and wet traction levels, and contribute to a smooth, quiet ride.

Refer to "Maintenance Schedule" for the proper maintenance intervals. More frequent rotation is permissible if desired. The reasons for any rapid or unusual wear should be corrected prior to rotation being performed.

The suggested rotation method is the "forward-cross" shown in the following diagram.



Tire Rotation

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR SYSTEM (TPMS)**

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) will warn the driver of a low tire pressure based on the vehicle recommended cold placard pressure.

The tire pressure will vary with temperature by about 1 psi (6.9 kPa) for every 12°F (6.5°C). This means that when the outside temperature decreases, the tire pressure will decrease. Tire pressure should always be set based on cold inflation tire pressure. This is defined as the tire pressure after a vehicle has not been driven for more than three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after a three-hour period. **Refer to “Tires – General Information” in “Starting and Operating” for information on how to properly inflate the vehicle’s tires.** The tire pressure will also increase as the vehicle is driven; this is normal and there should be no adjustment for this increased pressure.

The TPMS will warn the driver of a low tire pressure if the tire pressure falls below the low pressure warning threshold for any reason, including low temperature effects, or natural pressure loss through the tire.

The TPMS will continue to warn the driver of low tire pressure as long as the condition exists, and will not turn off until the tire pressure is at or above recommended cold placard pressure. Once the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” has been illuminated, the tire pressure must be increased to the recommended cold placard pressure in order for the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” to be turned OFF. The system will automatically update and the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will extinguish once the updated tire pressures have been received. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h) to receive this information.

For example, your vehicle may have a recommended cold (parked for more than three hours) air pressure of 35 psi (241 kPa). If the ambient temperature is 68°F (20°C) and the measured tire pressure is 30 psi (207 kPa), a temperature drop to 20°F (-7°C) will decrease the tire pressure to approximately 26 psi (179 kPa). This tire pressure is sufficiently low enough to turn ON the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light.” Driving the vehicle may cause the tire pressure to rise to approximately 30 psi (207 kPa), but the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will still be ON. In this situation, the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will turn OFF only after the tires have been inflated to the vehicle’s recommended cold placard pressure value.

**CAUTION!**

- The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. The TPMS pressures have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Do not use aftermarket tire sealants or balance beads if your vehicle is equipped with a TPMS, as damage to the sensors may result.
- After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor.

**NOTE:**

- The TPMS is not intended to replace normal tire care and maintenance, nor to provide warning of a tire failure or condition.
- The TPMS should not be used as a tire pressure gauge while adjusting your tire pressure.
- Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.
- The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light."

- Seasonal temperature changes will affect tire pressure, and the TPMS will monitor the actual tire pressure in the tire.

**Base System**

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim-mounted electronic sensors to monitor tire pressure levels. Sensors, mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem, transmit tire pressure readings to the Receiver Module.

**NOTE:** It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of your tires regularly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) consists of the following components:

- Receiver Module
- Four Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensors

- Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light

A tire pressure monitoring sensor is located in the spare wheel if the vehicle is equipped with a matching full size spare wheel and tire assembly. The matching full size spare tire can be used in place of any of the four road tires. A low spare tire will not cause the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" to illuminate or the chime to sound.



The "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will illuminate in the instrument cluster, and an audible chime will be activated when one or more of the four active road tire pressures are low. Should this occur, you should stop as soon as possible, check the inflation pressure of each tire on your vehicle, and inflate each tire to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure value. The system will automatically update and the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will extinguish once the updated tire pressures have been

received. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h) to receive this information.

The "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds, and will remain on solid when a system fault is detected. The system fault will also sound a chime. If the ignition key is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. A system fault can occur by any of the following scenarios:

1. Jamming due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same Radio Frequencies as the TPM sensors.
2. Installing some form of aftermarket window tinting that affects radio wave signals.
3. Lots of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.
4. Using tire chains on the vehicle.

5. Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.

**NOTE:**

- If your vehicle is equipped with a matching full-size spare wheel and tire assembly, it has a tire pressure monitoring sensor, and can be monitored by the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). In the event that the matching full-size spare tire is swapped with a low pressure road tire, the next ignition key cycle will still show the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" to be ON, and a chime to sound. Driving the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h) will turn OFF the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" as long as none of the road tires are below the low pressure warning threshold.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with a matching full-size spare wheel and tire assembly, it does not have a tire pressure monitoring sensor in the spare tire. The TPMS will not be able to monitor the tire pressure.

If you install the spare tire in place of a road tire that has a pressure below the low-pressure warning limit, upon the next ignition key cycle, a chime will sound and the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will turn ON. After driving the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h), the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. For each subsequent ignition key cycle, a chime will sound and the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. Once you repair or replace the original road tire, and reinstall it on the vehicle in place of the spare tire, the TPMS will update automatically and the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will turn OFF, as long as no tire pressure is below the low-pressure warning limit in any of the four active road tires. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

### General Information

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The tire pressure sensors are covered under one of the following licenses:

|                         |              |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| United States . . . . . | KR5S120123   |
| Canada . . . . .        | 2671-S120123 |

### FUEL REQUIREMENTS



All engines are designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide excellent fuel economy and performance when using high quality unleaded “regular” gasoline having an octane rating of 87. The use of premium gasoline is not recommended, as it will not provide any benefit over regular gasoline in these engines.

Light spark knock at low engine speeds is not harmful to your engine. However, continued heavy spark knock at high speeds can cause damage, and immediate service is required.

Poor quality gasoline can cause problems such as hard starting, stalling and hesitations. If you experience these symptoms, try another brand of gasoline before considering service for the vehicle.



Over 40 auto manufacturer's worldwide have issued and endorsed consistent gasoline specifications (the Worldwide Fuel Charter, WWFC) to define fuel properties necessary to deliver enhanced emissions, performance, and durability for your vehicle. The manufacturer recommends the use of gasoline that meets the WWFC specifications if they are available.

#### **Reformulated Gasoline**

Many areas of the country require the use of cleaner burning gasoline referred to as "Reformulated Gasoline."

Reformulated gasoline contains oxygenates, and are specifically blended to reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

The manufacturer supports the use of reformulated gasoline. Properly blended reformulated gasoline will provide excellent performance and durability for the engine and fuel system components.

#### **Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends**

Some fuel suppliers blend unleaded gasoline with oxygenates such as 10% ethanol, MTBE, and ETBE. Oxygenates are required in some areas of the country during the winter months to reduce carbon monoxide emissions. Fuels blended with these oxygenates may be used in your vehicle.

#### **CAUTION!**

**Do not use gasolines containing Methanol. Use of these blends may result in starting and drivability problems and may damage critical fuel system components.**

Problems that result from using methanol/gasoline blends are not the responsibility of the manufacturer. While MTBE is an oxygenate made from Methanol, it does not have the negative effects of Methanol.

### E-85 Usage In Non-Flex Fuel Vehicles

Non-FFV vehicles are compatible with gasoline containing 10% ethanol (E10). Gasoline with higher ethanol content may void the vehicle's warranty.

If a Non-FFV vehicle is inadvertently fueled with E-85 fuel, the engine will have some or all of these symptoms:

- operate in a lean mode
- OBD II "Malfunction Indicator Light" on
- poor engine performance
- poor cold start and cold drivability
- increased risk for fuel system component corrosion

To fix a Non-FFV vehicle inadvertently fueled once with E-85 perform the following:

- drain the fuel tank (see your authorized dealer)
- change the engine oil and oil filter

- disconnect and reconnect the battery to reset the engine controller memory

More extensive repairs will be required for prolonged exposure to E-85 fuel.

### MMT In Gasoline

MMT is a manganese containing metallic additive that is blended into some gasoline to increase the octane number. Gasoline blended with MMT offers no performance advantage beyond gasoline of the same octane number without MMT. Gasoline blended with MMT has shown to reduce sparkplug life and reduce emission system performance in some vehicles. The manufacturer recommends that gasoline without MMT be used in your vehicle. The MMT content of gasoline may not be indicated on the gasoline pump, therefore, you should ask your gasoline retailer if the gasoline contains MMT.

It is even more important to look for gasoline without MMT in Canada, because MMT can be used at levels higher than those allowed in the United States.

MMT is prohibited in Federal and California-reformulated gasoline.

#### **Materials Added To Fuel**

All gasoline sold in the United States is required to contain effective detergent additives. Use of additional detergents or other additives are not needed under normal conditions and would result in additional cost. Therefore you should not have to add anything to the fuel.

#### **Fuel System Cautions**

##### **CAUTION!**

**Follow these guidelines to maintain your vehicle's performance:**

- **The use of leaded gasoline is prohibited by Federal law. Using leaded gasoline can impair engine performance, and damage the emission control system.**
- **An out-of-tune engine, or certain fuel or ignition malfunctions, can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. If you notice a pungent burning odor or some light smoke, your engine may be out of tune or malfunctioning and may require immediate service. Contact your authorized dealer for service assistance.**

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- The use of fuel additives which are now being sold as octane enhancers is not recommended. Most of these products contain high concentrations of methanol. Fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems resulting from the use of such fuels or additives is not the responsibility of the manufacturer.

**NOTE:** Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

**Carbon Monoxide Warnings****WARNING!**

Carbon monoxide (CO) in exhaust gases is deadly. Follow the precautions below to prevent carbon monoxide poisoning:

- Do not inhale exhaust gases. They contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which can kill. Never run the engine in a closed area, such as a garage, and never sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running for an extended period. If the vehicle is stopped in an open area with the engine running for more than a short period, adjust the ventilation system to force fresh, outside air into the vehicle.

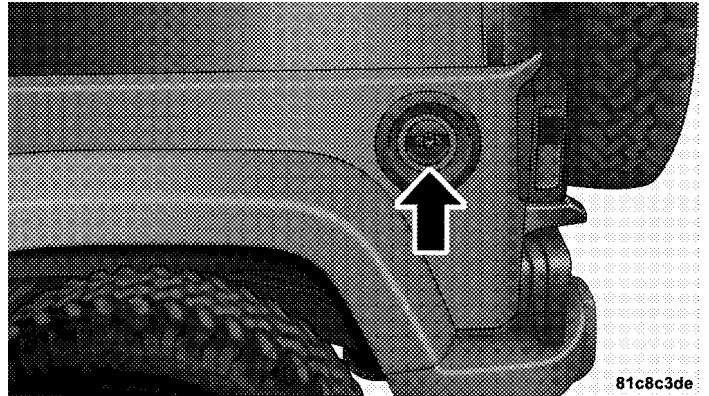
*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Guard against carbon monoxide with proper maintenance. Have the exhaust system inspected every time the vehicle is raised. Have any abnormal conditions repaired promptly. Until repaired, drive with all side windows fully open.
- Keep the swing gate closed when driving your vehicle to prevent carbon monoxide and other poisonous exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.

**ADDING FUEL****Fuel Filler Cap (Gas Cap)**

The gas cap is located on the driver's side of the vehicle. If the gas cap is lost or damaged, be sure the replacement cap is the correct one for this vehicle.



81c8c3de

Fuel Filler Cap

**CAUTION!**

- Damage to the fuel system or emission control system could result from using an improper fuel cap (gas cap). A poorly fitting cap could let impurities into the fuel system. Also, a poorly fitting aftermarket cap can cause the "Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)" to illuminate, due to fuel vapors escaping from the system.
- To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not "top off" the fuel tank after filling.

**WARNING!**

- Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the gas cap is removed or the tank is being filled.

*(Continued)***WARNING! (Continued)**

- Never add fuel when the engine is running. This is in violation of most state and federal fire regulations and will cause the MIL to turn on.
- A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.

**NOTE:**

- When the fuel nozzle "clicks" or shuts off, the fuel tank is full.
- Tighten the gas cap about 1/4 turn until you hear one click. This is an indication that the cap is properly tightened.
- If the gas cap is not tightened properly, the MIL will come on. Be sure the gas cap is tightened every time the vehicle is refueled.

**Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message**

After fuel has been added, the vehicle diagnostic system can determine if the fuel filler cap is possibly loose, improperly installed, or damaged. If the system detects a malfunction, the "gASCAP" message will display in the odometer display. Tighten the gas cap until a "clicking" sound is heard. This is an indication that the gas cap is properly tightened. Press the odometer reset button to turn the message off. If the problem persists, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started. This might indicate a damaged cap. If the problem is detected twice in a row, the system will turn on the MIL. Resolving the problem will turn the MIL off.

**VEHICLE LOADING****Certification Label**

As required by National Highway Traffic Safety Administration regulations, your vehicle has a certification label affixed to the driver's side door or B-Pillar.

This label contains the month and year of manufacture, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) front and rear, and Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). A Month-Day-Hour (MDH) number is included on this label and indicates the month, day, and hour of manufacture. The bar code that appears on the bottom of the label is your VIN.

**Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)**

The GVWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle including driver, passengers, vehicle, options, trailer tongue weight, and cargo. The label also specifies maximum capacities of front and rear axle systems (GAWR). Total load must be limited, so GVWR, and front and rear GAWR are not exceeded.

**Payload**

The payload of a vehicle is defined as the allowable load weight a truck or any given vehicle can carry, including the weight of the driver, all passengers, options and cargo.

**Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)**

The GAWR is the maximum permissible load on the front and rear axles. The load must be distributed in the cargo area so that the GAWR of each axle is not exceeded.

Each axle's GAWR is determined by the components in the system with the lowest load carrying capacity (axle, springs, tires, or wheels). Heavier axles or suspension components, sometimes specified by purchasers for increased durability, does not necessarily increase the vehicle's GVWR.

**Tire Size**

The tire size on the label represents the actual tire size on your vehicle. Replacement tires must be equal to the load capacity of this tire size.

**Rim Size**

This is the rim size that is appropriate for the tire size listed.

**Inflation Pressure**

This is the cold tire inflation pressure for your vehicle for all loading conditions up to full GAWR.

**Curb Weight**

The curb weight of a vehicle is defined as the total weight of the vehicle with all fluids, including vehicle fuel, at full capacity conditions, and with no occupants or cargo loaded into the vehicle. The front and rear curb weight values are determined by weighing your vehicle on a commercial scale before any occupants or cargo are added.



**Loading**

The actual total weight and the weight of the front and rear of your vehicle at the ground can best be determined by weighing it when it is loaded and ready for operation.

The entire vehicle should first be weighed on a commercial scale to ensure that the GVWR has not been exceeded. The weight on the front and rear of the vehicle should then be determined separately to be sure that the load is properly distributed over front and rear axle. Weighing the vehicle may show that the GAWR of either the front or rear axles has been exceeded, but the total load is within the specified GVWR. If so, weight must be shifted from front to rear, or rear to front, as appropriate until the specified weight limitations are met. Store the heavier items down low and be sure that the weight is distributed equally. Stow all loose items securely before driving.

Improper weight distributions can have an adverse affect on the way your vehicle steers and handles, and the way the brakes operate.

**CAUTION!**

**Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR or the maximum front and rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, or it can change the way your vehicle handles. This could cause you to lose control. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.**

**TRAILER TOWING**

In this section, you will find safety tips and information on limits to the type of towing you can reasonably do with your vehicle. Before towing a trailer, carefully review this information to tow your load as efficiently and safely as possible.

To maintain warranty coverage, follow the requirements and recommendations in this Owner's Manual concerning vehicles used for trailer towing.

### **Common Towing Definitions**

The following trailer towing-related definitions will assist you in understanding the following information:

#### **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)**

The GVWR is the total allowable weight of your vehicle. This includes driver, passengers, cargo and trailer tongue weight. The total load must be limited so that you do not exceed the GVWR. Refer to "Vehicle Loading/Vehicle Certification Label" in "Starting and Operating" for further information.

#### **Gross Trailer Weight (GTW)**

The GTW is the weight of the trailer plus the weight of all cargo, consumables and equipment (permanent or temporary) loaded in or on the trailer in its "loaded and ready for operation" condition.

The recommended way to measure GTW is to put your fully-loaded trailer on a vehicle scale. The entire weight of the trailer must be supported by the scale.

#### **Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR)**

The GCWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle and trailer when weighed in combination.

**NOTE:** The GCWR rating includes a 150 lbs (68 kg) allowance for the presence of a driver.

#### **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)**

The GAWR is the maximum capacity of the front and rear axles. Distribute the load over the front and rear axles evenly. Make sure that you do not exceed either front or rear GAWR. Refer to "Vehicle Loading/Vehicle Certification Label" in "Starting and Operating" for further information.

**WARNING!**

**It is important that you do not exceed the maximum front or rear GAWR. A dangerous driving condition can result if either rating is exceeded. You could lose control of the vehicle and have an accident.**

**Trailer Tongue Weight (TW)**

The trailer tongue weight is the downward force exerted on the hitch ball by the trailer. In most cases it should not be less than 10% or more than 15% of the trailer load. You must consider this as part of the load on your vehicle.

**Frontal Area**

The frontal area is the maximum height multiplied by the maximum width of the front of a trailer.

**Trailer Sway Control – If Equipped**

The trailer sway control is a telescoping link that can be installed between the hitch receiver and the trailer tongue. It typically provides adjustable friction associated with the telescoping motion to dampen any unwanted trailer swaying motions while traveling.

**Weight-Carrying Hitch**

A weight-carrying hitch supports the trailer tongue weight, just as if it were luggage located at a hitch ball or some other connecting point of the vehicle. This kind of hitch is the most popular on the market today and is commonly used to tow small and medium-sized trailers.

### Weight-Distributing Hitch

A weight-distributing hitch system works by applying leverage through spring (load) bars. It is typically used for heavier loads, to distribute trailer tongue weight to the tow vehicle's front axle and the trailer axle(s). When used in accordance with the manufacturers' directions, it provides for a more level ride, offering more consistent steering and brake control thereby enhancing towing safety. The addition of a friction/hydraulic sway control also dampens sway caused by traffic and crosswinds, and contributes positively to tow vehicle and trailer stability. Trailer sway control and a weight-distributing (load-equalizing) hitch are recommended for heavier tongue weights (TW) and may be required depending on vehicle and trailer configuration/loading to comply with Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) requirements.

#### WARNING!

- An improperly adjusted weight-distributing hitch system may reduce handling, stability, braking performance, and could result in an accident.
- Weight-Distributing Hitch Systems may not be compatible with Surge Brake Couplers. Consult with your hitch and trailer manufacturer or a reputable Recreational Vehicle dealer for additional information.

**Trailer Hitch Classification**

The following chart provides the industry standard for the maximum trailer weight a given trailer hitch class can tow and should be used to assist you in selecting the correct trailer hitch for your intended towing condition. Refer to the Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings) chart for the Max. GTW towable for your given drivetrain.

| <b>Trailer Hitch Classification Definitions</b>  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Class</b>   | <b>Max. Trailer Hitch Industry Standards</b> |
| Class I - Light Duty   | 2,000 lbs (907 kg)                           |
| Class II - Medium Duty   | 3,500 lbs (1 587 kg)                         |
| Class III - Heavy Duty   | 5,000 lbs (2 268 kg)                         |
| Class IV - Extra Heavy Duty  | 10,000 lbs (4 540 kg)                        |
| Refer to the "Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)" chart for the Maximum Gross Trailer Weight (GTW) towable for your given drivetrain. |  |

All trailer hitches should be professionally installed on your vehicle.

**Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)**

The following chart provides the maximum trailer weight ratings towable for your given drivetrain.

| Engine/<br>Transmission | Axle | Model                           | GCWR (Gross<br>Combined<br>Wt. Rating) | Frontal Area            | Max. GTW<br>(Gross Trailer<br>Wt.) | Max. Trailer<br>Tongue Wt.<br>(See Note) |
|-------------------------|------|---------------------------------|--|-------------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| 3.8L/Manual             | 3.21 | Two-Door X Model<br>(4WD)       | 5,049 lbs<br>(2 290 kg)                | 25 sq ft<br>(2.32 sq m) | 1,000 lbs<br>(453 kg)              | 100 lbs (45 kg)                          |
| 3.8L/Manual             | 3.73 | Two-Door X Model<br>(4WD)       | 6,049 lbs<br>(2 744 kg)                | 25 sq ft<br>(2.32 sq m) | 2,000 lbs<br>(907 kg)              | 200 lbs (91 kg)                          |
| 3.8L/<br>Automatic      | 3.73 | Two-Door X Model<br>(4WD)       | 6,051 lbs<br>(2 745 kg)                | 25 sq ft<br>(2.32 sq m) | 2,000 lbs<br>(907 kg)              | 200 lbs (91 kg)                          |
| 3.8L/Manual             | 3.21 | Two-Door Sahara<br>Model (4WD)  | 5,231 lbs<br>(2 373 kg)                | 25 sq ft<br>(2.32 sq m) | 1,000 lbs<br>(453 kg)              | 100 lbs (45 kg)                          |
| 3.8L/Manual             | 3.73 | Two-Door Sahara<br>Model (4WD)  | 6,231 lbs<br>(2 826 kg)                | 25 sq ft<br>(2.32 sq m) | 2,000 lbs<br>(907 kg)              | 200 lbs (91 kg)                          |
| 3.8L/<br>Automatic      | 3.73 | Two-Door Sahara<br>Model (4WD)  | 6,233 lbs<br>(2 827 kg)                | 25 sq ft<br>(2.32 sq m) | 2,000 lbs<br>(907 kg)              | 200 lbs (91 kg)                          |
| 3.8L/Manual             | 4.10 | 2-Door Rubicon<br>Model (4WD)   | 6,365 lbs<br>(2 887 kg)                | 25 sq ft<br>(2.32 sq m) | 2,000 lbs<br>(907 kg)              | 200 lbs (91 kg)                          |
| 3.8L/<br>Automatic      | 4.10 | Two-Door Rubicon<br>Model (4WD) | 6,366 lbs<br>(2 887 kg)                | 25 sq ft<br>(2.32 sq m) | 2,000 lbs<br>(907 kg)              | 200 lbs (91 kg)                          |

**426 STARTING AND OPERATING**

| <b>Engine/<br/>Transmission</b> | <b>Axle</b> | <b>Model</b>                    | <b>GCWR (Gross<br/>Combined<br/>Wt. Rating)</b> | <b>Frontal Area</b>     | <b>Max. GTW<br/>(Gross Trailer<br/>Wt.)</b> | <b>Max. Trailer<br/>Tongue Wt.<br/>(See Note)</b> |
|---------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------|---|-------------------------|---|---|
| 3.8L/<br>Automatic              | 3.73        | Four-Door X<br>Model (2WD)      | 7,734 lbs<br>(3 508 kg)                         | 32 sq ft<br>(2.97 sq m) | 3,500 lbs<br>(1 587 kg)                     | 350 lbs<br>(159 kg)                               |
| 3.8L/<br>Automatic              | 3.73        | Four-Door Sahara<br>Model (2WD) | 7,893 lbs<br>(3 580 kg)                         | 32 sq ft<br>(2.97 sq m) | 3,500 lbs<br>(1 587 kg)                     | 350 lbs<br>(159 kg)                               |
| 3.8L/Manual                     | 3.21        | Four-Door X<br>Model (4WD)      | 5,431 lbs<br>(2 463 kg)                         | 32 sq ft<br>(2.97 sq m) | 1,000 lbs<br>(453 kg)                       | 100 lbs (45 kg)                                   |
| 3.8L/Manual                     | 3.73        | Four-Door X<br>Model (4WD)      | 7,931 lbs<br>(3 597 kg)                         | 32 sq ft<br>(2.97 sq m) | 3,500 lbs<br>(1 587 kg)                     | 350 lbs<br>(159 kg)                               |
| 3.8L/<br>Automatic              | 3.73        | Four-Door X<br>Model (4WD)      | 7,932 lbs<br>(3 598 kg)                         | 32 sq ft<br>(2.97 sq m) | 3,500 lbs<br>(1 587 kg)                     | 350 lbs<br>(159 kg)                               |
| 3.8L/Manual                     | 3.21        | Four-Door Sahara<br>Model (4WD) | 5,625 lbs<br>(2 551 kg)                         | 32 sq ft<br>(2.97 sq m) | 1,000 lbs<br>(453 kg)                       | 100 lbs (45 kg)                                   |
| 3.8L/Manual                     | 3.73        | Four-Door Sahara<br>Model (4WD) | 8,125 lbs<br>(3 685 kg)                         | 32 sq ft<br>(2.97 sq m) | 3,500 lbs<br>(1 587 kg)                     | 350 lbs<br>(159 kg)                               |
| 3.8L/<br>Automatic              | 3.73        | Four-Door Sahara<br>Model (4WD) | 8,127 lbs<br>(3 686 kg)                         | 32 sq ft<br>(2.97 sq m) | 3,500 lbs<br>(1 587 kg)                     | 350 lbs<br>(159 kg)                               |

| Engine/<br>Transmission | Axle | Model                            | GCWR (Gross<br>Combined<br>Wt. Rating) | Frontal Area            | Max. GTW<br>(Gross Trailer<br>Wt.) | Max. Trailer<br>Tongue Wt.<br>(See Note) |
|-------------------------|------|----------------------------------|--|-------------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| 3.8L/Manual             | 4.10 | Four-Door Rubicon<br>Model (4WD) | 8,248 lbs<br>(3 741 kg)                | 32 sq ft<br>(2.97 sq m) | 3,500 lbs<br>(1 587 kg)            | 350 lbs<br>(159 kg)                      |
| 3.8L/<br>Automatic      | 4.10 | Four-Door Rubicon<br>Model (4WD) | 8,249 lbs<br>(3 742 kg)                | 32 sq ft<br>(2.97 sq m) | 3,500 lbs<br>(1 587 kg)            | 350 lbs<br>(159 kg)                      |

Refer to local laws for maximum trailer towing speeds.

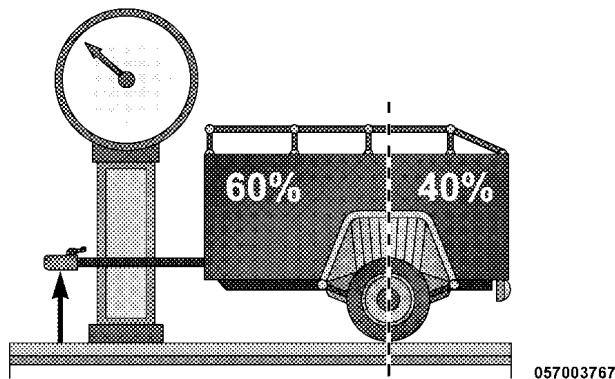
**NOTE: The trailer tongue weight must be considered as part of the combined weight of occupants and cargo, and should never exceed the weight referenced on the Tire and Loading Information placard. Refer to "Tire Safety Information" in "Starting and Operating" for further information.**

### Trailer and Trailer Tongue Weight

Always load a trailer with 60% to 65% of the weight in the front of the trailer. This places 10% to 15% of the Gross Trailer Weight (GTW) on the tow hitch of your vehicle. Loads balanced over the wheels or heavier in the rear can cause the trailer to sway **severely** side-to-side which will cause loss of control of vehicle and trailer. Failure to load trailers heavier in front is the cause of

many trailer accidents. Never exceed the maximum tongue weight stamped on your trailer hitch.





Consider the following items when computing the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle:

- The trailer tongue weight.
- The weight of any other type of cargo or equipment put in or on your vehicle.
- The weight of the driver and all passengers.

**NOTE:** Remember that everything put into or on the trailer adds to the load on your vehicle. Also, additional factory-installed options, or authorized dealer-installed options, must be considered as part of the total load on your vehicle. Refer to the “Tire Safety Information/Tire and Loading Information Placard” in “Starting and Operating” for the maximum combined weight of occupants and cargo for your vehicle.

#### Towing Requirements

To promote proper break-in of your new vehicle drive-train components, the following guidelines are recommended:

**NOTE:** Trailer towing requires special rear axle lubricant. Refer to “Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle” for the correct fluid type.

**CAUTION!**

- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (805 km) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (805 km) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps the engine and other parts of the vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.

**WARNING!**

Improper towing can lead to an injury accident. Follow these guidelines to make your trailer towing as safe as possible:

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Make certain that the load is secured in the trailer and will not shift during travel. When trailering cargo that is not fully secured, dynamic load shifts can occur that may be difficult for the driver to control. You could lose control of your vehicle and have an accident.
- When hauling cargo or towing a trailer, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Overloading can cause a loss of control, poor performance or damage to the brakes, axle, engine, transmission, steering, suspension, chassis structure or tires.
- Safety chains must always be used between your vehicle and trailer. Always connect the chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. Cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning corners.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. When parking, apply the parking brake on the tow vehicle. Put the tow vehicle automatic transmission in PARK. With a manual transmission, shift the transmission into first gear. And with four-wheel-drive vehicles, make sure the transfer case is not in N (Neutral). Always, block or "chock" the trailer wheels.
- GCWR must not be exceeded.
- Total weight must be distributed between the tow vehicle and the trailer such that the following four ratings are not exceeded:
  1. GVWR
  2. GTW
  3. GAWR

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

4. Tongue weight rating for the trailer hitch utilized (This requirement may limit the ability to always achieve the 10% to 15% range of tongue weight as a percentage of total trailer weight).

**Towing Requirements – Tires**

- Do not attempt to tow a trailer while using a compact spare tire.
- Proper tire inflation pressures are essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Refer to "Tires – General Information" in "Starting and Operating" for proper tire inflation procedures.
- Check the trailer tires for proper tire inflation pressures before trailer usage.

- Check for signs of tire wear or visible tire damage before towing a trailer. Refer to “Tires – General Information” in “Starting and Operating” for the proper inspection procedure.
- When replacing tires, refer to “Tires – General Information” in “Starting and Operating” for proper tire replacement procedures. Replacing tires with a higher load carrying capacity will not increase the vehicle’s GVWR and GAWR limits.
- An electronically-actuated trailer brake controller is required when towing a trailer with electronically actuated brakes. When towing a trailer equipped with a hydraulic surge-actuated brake system, an electronic brake controller is not required.
- Trailer brakes are recommended for trailers over 1,000 lbs (454 kg) and required for trailers in excess of 2,000 lbs (907 kg).

#### Towing Requirements – Trailer Brakes

- Do **not** interconnect the hydraulic brake system or vacuum system of your vehicle with that of the trailer. This could cause inadequate braking and possible personal injury.

#### CAUTION!

**If the trailer weighs more than 1,000 lbs (454 kg) loaded, it should have its own brakes and they should be of adequate capacity. Failure to do this could lead to accelerated brake lining wear, higher brake pedal effort, and longer stopping distances.**

**WARNING!**

- Do not connect trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic brake lines. It can overload your brake system and cause it to fail. You might not have brakes when you need them and could have an accident.
- Towing any trailer will increase your stopping distance. When towing, you should allow for additional space between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you. Failure to do so could result in an accident.

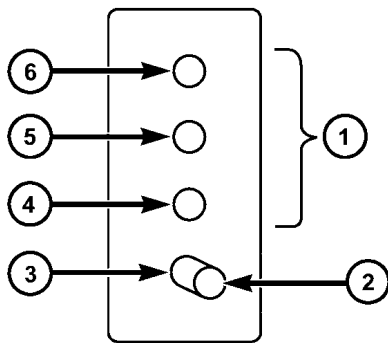
**Towing Requirements – Trailer Lights and Wiring**

Whenever you pull a trailer, regardless of the trailer size, stop lights and turn signals on the trailer are required for motoring safety.

The Trailer Tow Package will include a four-pin wiring harness. Use a factory-approved trailer harness and connector.

**NOTE:** Do not cut or splice wiring into the vehicles wiring harness.

The electrical connections are all complete to the vehicle but you must mate the harness to a trailer connector. Refer to the following illustration.



057003766

**Four-Pin Connector**

- |                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1 — Female Pins | 4 — Park            |
| 2 — Male Pin    | 5 — Left Stop/Turn  |
| 3 — Ground      | 6 — Right Stop/Turn |

**Towing Tips**

Before setting out on a trip, practice turning, stopping and backing the trailer in an area away from heavy traffic.

If using a manual transmission vehicle for trailer towing, all starts must be in first gear to avoid excessive clutch slippage.

**Automatic Transmission**

The DRIVE range can be selected when towing. However, if frequent shifting occurs while in this range, the "O/D OFF" feature should be selected.

**NOTE:** Using "O/D OFF" while operating the vehicle under heavy operating conditions will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat build up. This action will also provide better engine braking.

#### 434 STARTING AND OPERATING

The automatic transmission fluid and filter should be changed if you REGULARLY tow a trailer for more than 45 minutes of continuous operation. Refer to "Maintenance Schedule" for the proper maintenance intervals.

**NOTE:** Check the automatic transmission fluid level before towing.

##### **O/D Off**

To reduce the potential for automatic transmission overheating, select the "O/D OFF" feature when driving in hilly areas or shift the transmission to DRIVE position 2 on more severe grades. Refer to "Automatic Transmission" in "Starting and Operating" for further information.

##### **Electronic Speed Control – If Equipped**

– Do not use in hilly terrain or with heavy loads.

- When using the speed control, if you experience speed drops greater than 10 mph (16 km/h), disengage until you can get back to cruising speed.
- Use speed control in flat terrain and with light loads to maximize fuel efficiency.

##### **Cooling System**

To reduce potential for engine and transmission overheating, take the following actions:

- **Highway Driving**  
Reduce speed.
- **Air Conditioning**  
Turn off temporarily.

**RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.)****CAUTION!**

Front or rear wheel lifts should not be used. Internal damage to the transmission or transfer case will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when recreational towing.

**WARNING!**

If the driveshaft is removed, the vehicle can roll even if the transmission is in PARK, which could cause serious injury or death.

**Two-Wheel Drive Models**

Recreational towing is allowed **ONLY** if the rear driveshaft is removed. See your authorized dealer or refer to the **Service Manual**. Towing with the rear wheels on the ground while the driveshaft is connected can result in severe transmission damage.

The parking brake must be firmly engaged and the wheels chocked during driveshaft removal and installation. The parking brake must remain engaged unless the vehicle is securely and properly connected to the tow vehicle, or the driveshaft is completely reinstalled. See your authorized dealer for proper driveshaft removal and reinstallation procedures, including flange orientation/alignment, use of thread-locking compound, proper bolt torque specifications, etc.



### Four-Wheel Drive Models

**NOTE:** The transfer case must be shifted into N (Neutral), automatic transmission must be shifted into PARK, and manual transmission must be placed in gear (not in NEUTRAL) for recreational towing.

#### Shifting Into Neutral (N)

##### **WARNING!**

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case N (Neutral) position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing.

##### **CAUTION!**

**It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in N (Neutral) before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.**

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Press the brake pedal.
3. Shift the automatic transmission into NEUTRAL or press the clutch pedal on a manual transmission.
4. Shift the transfer case lever into N (Neutral).
5. Start the engine.
6. Shift the automatic transmission into DRIVE or the manual transmission into gear.

7. Release the brake pedal and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.
8. Turn the engine off and turn the ignition switch to the ACC position.
9. Shift the automatic transmission into PARK.
10. Apply the parking brake.
11. Attach the vehicle to the tow vehicle with the tow bar.
12. Release the parking brake.
13. Disconnect the negative battery cable, and secure it away from the negative battery post.

**CAUTION!**

**Damage to the transmission may occur if the transmission is shifted into PARK with the transfer case in N (Neutral) and the engine running. With the transfer case in N (Neutral) ensure that the engine is off prior to shifting the transmission into PARK (refer to steps 8 – 9 above).**

**Shifting Out of Neutral (N)**

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage.

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Shift the automatic transmission into NEUTRAL or press the clutch pedal on a manual transmission.

#### 438 STARTING AND OPERATING

3. Shift the transfer case lever into the desired position.
4. Start the engine.
5. Shift the automatic transmission into DRIVE or release the clutch on manual transmissions.

**NOTE:** When shifting out of transfer case N (Neutral) on automatic transmission-equipped vehicles, turning the engine off may be required to avoid gear clash.

#### **CAUTION!**

- **Do not use a bumper-mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.**

---

# WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES


## CONTENTS

---

|                                       |     |   |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|---|-----|
| ■ Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .    | 440 | □ Jacking Instructions . . . . .              | 444 |
| ■ If Your Engine Overheats . . . . .  | 440 | ■ Jump-Starting Procedures . . . . .          | 446 |
| ■ Jacking And Tire Changing . . . . . | 442 | □ Preparations For Jump-Start . . . . .       | 447 |
| □ Jack Location . . . . .             | 442 | □ Jump-Starting Procedure . . . . .           | 448 |
| □ Spare Tire Stowage . . . . .        | 443 | ■ Emergency Tow Hooks — If Equipped . . . . . | 450 |
| □ Preparations For Jacking . . . . .  | 443 | ■ Towing A Disabled Vehicle . . . . .         | 451 |

**HAZARD WARNING FLASHER**

The Hazard Warning flasher switch is located on the instrument panel below the climate controls.

 Press the switch to turn on the Hazard Warning flasher. When the switch is activated, all directional turn signals will flash on and off to warn oncoming traffic of an emergency. Press the switch a second time to turn off the Hazard Warning flasher.

This is an emergency warning system and should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

If it is necessary to leave the vehicle to go for service, the Hazard Warning flasher will continue to operate with the ignition key removed and the vehicle locked.

**NOTE:** With extended use, the Hazard Warning flasher may wear down your battery.

**IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS**

In any of the following situations, you can reduce the potential for overheating by taking the appropriate action.

- On the highways — slow down.
- In city traffic — while stopped, shift transmission into NEUTRAL, but do not increase engine idle speed.

**CAUTION!**

**Driving with a hot cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads HOT (H), pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on HOT (H), and you hear continuous chimes, turn the engine off immediately, and call for service.**

**NOTE:** There are steps that you can take to slow down an impending overheating condition:

- If your air conditioner (A/C) is on, turn it off. The A/C system adds heat to the engine cooling system and turning the A/C off can help remove this heat.
- You can also turn the temperature control to maximum heat, the mode control to floor and the blower control to high. This allows the heater core to act as a supplement to the radiator and aids in removing heat from the engine cooling system.

**WARNING!**

**You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator or coolant bottle is hot.**

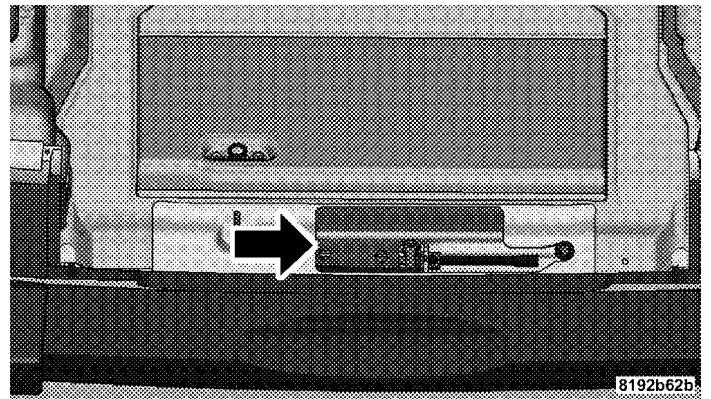
## JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING

### WARNING!

- Getting under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never get any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.
- The jack is designed to use as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

### Jack Location

The jack and lug wrench are located in the rear storage compartment.



Jack Storage

### Spare Tire Stowage

To remove the spare tire from the carrier, remove the tire cover, if equipped, and remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench turning them counterclockwise.

**NOTE:** If you have added aftermarket accessories to the spare tire mounted carrier, it cannot exceed a gross weight of 50 lbs (23 kg) including the weight of the spare tire.

### Preparations For Jacking

1. Park on a firm, level surface. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

#### WARNING!

**Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.**

2. Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
3. Set the parking brake.
4. Shift the automatic transmission into PARK, or a manual transmission into REVERSE.
5. Turn the ignition to LOCK.
6. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite of the jacking position. For example, if changing the right front tire, block the left rear wheel.



**NOTE:** Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.



**Jacking Instructions****WARNING!**

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.
- Block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.
- Set the parking brake firmly and set an automatic transmission in **PARK**; a manual transmission in **REVERSE**.
- Never start or run the engine with the vehicle on a jack.

*(Continued)*

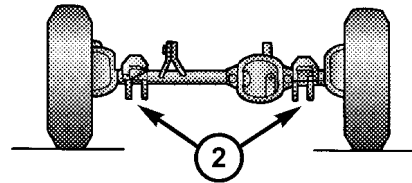
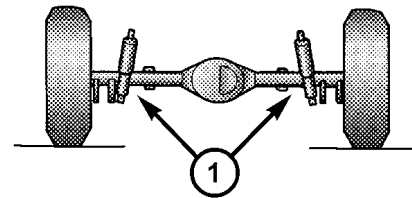
**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.
- Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack.
- Only use the jack in the positions indicated and for lifting this vehicle during a tire change.
- If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.
- To assure that spare tires, flat or inflated, are securely stowed, spares must be stowed with the valve stem facing the ground.
- Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.



Jack Warning Label

1. Remove the spare tire, jack and tools from the stored location.
2. Loosen (but do not remove) the wheel lug nuts by turning them to the left one turn while the wheel is still on the ground.
3. Assemble the jack and jacking tools. Connect the jack handle driver to the extension, then to the lug wrench.
4. Operate the jack from the front or the rear of the vehicle. Place the jack under the axle tube, as shown. **Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is fully engaged.**



Jacking Locations

1 — Rear Jacking Location      2 — Front Jacking Location

5. Raise the vehicle by turning the jack screw to the right. Raise the vehicle only until the tire just clears the surface and enough clearance is obtained to install the spare tire. Minimum tire lift provides maximum stability.

060505249

6

**WARNING!**

**Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle less stable and cause an accident. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.**

6. Remove the lug nuts and wheel.
7. Position the spare wheel/tire on the vehicle and install the lug nuts with the cone-shaped end toward the wheel. Lightly tighten the lug nuts clockwise. To avoid the risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not tighten the nuts fully until the vehicle has been lowered.
8. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack screw to the left, and remove the jack and wheel blocks.
9. Finish tightening the lug nuts. Push down on the wrench while tightening for increased leverage. Alternate nuts until each nut has been tightened twice. The correct

wheel nut tightness is 95 ft lbs (130 N·m). If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by your authorized dealer or at a service station.

10. Remove the jack assembly and wheel blocks.
11. Secure the tire, jack, and tools in their proper locations.

**WARNING!**

**A loose tire or jack, thrown forward in a collision or hard stop, could endanger the occupants of the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the spare tire in the places provided.**

**JUMP-STARTING PROCEDURES**

If your vehicle has a discharged battery it can be jump-started using a set of jumper cables and a battery in another vehicle or by using a portable battery booster

pack. Jump-starting can be dangerous if done improperly so please follow the procedures in this section carefully.

**NOTE:** When using a portable battery booster pack follow the manufacturer's operating instructions and precautions.

### CAUTION!

Do not use a portable battery booster pack or any other booster source with a system voltage greater than 12 Volts or damage to the battery, starter motor, alternator or electrical system may occur.

### WARNING!

Do not attempt jump-starting if the battery is frozen. It could rupture or explode and cause personal injury.

### Preparations for Jump-Start

The battery in your vehicle is located in the right rear of the engine compartment, behind the Power Distribution Center.



Positive Battery Post

**WARNING!**

- Take care to avoid the radiator cooling fan whenever the hood is raised. It can start anytime the ignition switch is on. You can be injured by moving fan blades.
- Remove any metal jewelry such as watch bands or bracelets that might make an inadvertent electrical contact. You could be seriously injured.
- Batteries contain sulfuric acid that can burn your skin or eyes and generate hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Keep open flames or sparks away from the battery.

1. Set the parking brake, shift the automatic transmission into PARK and turn the ignition to LOCK.
2. Turn off the heater, radio, and all unnecessary electrical accessories.

3. If using another vehicle to jump-start the battery, park the vehicle within the jumper cables reach, set the parking brake and make sure the ignition is OFF.

**WARNING!**

Do not allow vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.

**Jump-Starting Procedure****WARNING!**

Failure to follow this procedure could result in personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion.

**CAUTION!**

Failure to follow these procedures could result in damage to the charging system of the booster vehicle or the discharged vehicle.

1. Connect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the discharged vehicle.
2. Connect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the booster battery.
3. Connect the negative end (-) of the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the booster battery.
4. Connect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable to a good engine ground (exposed metal part of the discharged vehicle's engine) away from the battery and the fuel injection system.

**WARNING!**

Do not connect the cable to the negative post (-) of the discharged battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode and could result in personal injury.

5. Start the engine in the vehicle that has the booster battery, let the engine idle a few minutes, and then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.

Once the engine is started, remove the jumper cables in the reverse sequence:

6. Disconnect the negative (-) jumper cable from the engine ground of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
7. Disconnect the negative end (-) of the jumper cable from the negative (-) post of the booster battery.

#### 450 WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES

8. Disconnect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the booster battery.
9. Disconnect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the discharged vehicle.
10. Reinstall the air intake duct.

If frequent jump-starting is required to start your vehicle you should have the battery and charging system inspected at your authorized dealer.

#### CAUTION!

Accessories that can be plugged into the vehicle power outlets draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.

#### EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS — IF EQUIPPED

If your vehicle is equipped with tow hooks, they are mounted in the front and the rear.

**NOTE:** For off-road recovery, it is recommended to use both of the front tow hooks to minimize the risk of damage to the vehicle.

#### WARNING!

- Chains are not recommended for freeing a stuck vehicle. chains may break, causing serious injury or death.
- Stand clear of vehicles when pulling with tow hooks. Tow straps and chains may break, causing serious injury.

**CAUTION!**

Tow hooks are for emergency use only, to rescue a vehicle stranded off road. Do not use tow hooks for tow truck hookup or highway towing. You could damage your vehicle. Tow straps are recommended when towing the vehicle, chains may cause vehicle damage.

**CAUTION!**

Towing this vehicle using any other method could result in extensive damage to the transfer case and/or transmission. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE**

The manufacturer requires towing your vehicle with all four wheels **OFF** the ground using a flatbed.





---

# MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE

## CONTENTS

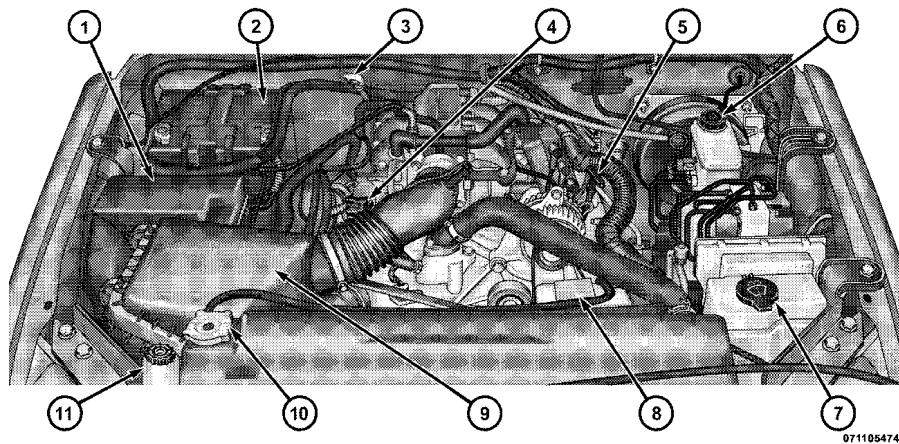
---

|  |     |   |     |
|--|-----|---|-----|
| ■ Engine Compartment — 3.8L . . . . .                        | 455 | □ Engine Oil Filter . . . . .           | 462 |
| ■ Onboard Diagnostic System — OBD II . . . . .               | 456 | □ Engine Air Cleaner Filter . . . . .   | 463 |
| □ Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message . . . . .                    | 456 | □ Maintenance-Free Battery . . . . .    | 463 |
| ■ Emissions Inspection And Maintenance<br>Programs . . . . . | 457 | □ Air Conditioner Maintenance . . . . . | 465 |
| ■ Replacement Parts . . . . .                                | 458 | □ Body Lubrication . . . . .            | 466 |
| ■ Dealer Service . . . . .                                   | 458 | □ Windshield Wiper Blades . . . . .     | 466 |
| ■ Maintenance Procedures . . . . .                           | 459 | □ Adding Washer Fluid . . . . .         | 467 |
| □ Engine Oil . . . . .                                       | 460 | □ Exhaust System . . . . .              | 468 |
|  |     | □ Cooling System . . . . .              | 470 |

**454 MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE**

|  |     |  |     |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| □ Brake System . . . . .                                     | 476 | ■ Bulb Replacement . . . . .                                 | 498 |
| □ Automatic Transmission – If Equipped . . . . .             | 478 | □ Headlamp . . . . .   | 498 |
| □ Hydraulic Clutch Fluid – Manual<br>Transmission . . . . .  | 480 | □ Front Park/Turn Signal . . . . .                           | 499 |
| □ Manual Transmission – If Equipped . . . . .                | 480 | □ Front Side Marker . . . . .                                | 499 |
| □ Transfer Case – If Equipped . . . . .                      | 481 | □ Front Fog Lamp . . . . .                                   | 499 |
| □ Front/Rear Axle Fluid . . . . .                            | 482 | □ Rear Tail, Stop, Turn Signal, And Backup<br>Lamp . . . . . | 500 |
| □ Appearance Care And Protection From<br>Corrosion . . . . . | 482 | □ Center High-Mounted Stop Lamp (CHMSL) . . . . .            | 500 |
| ■ Fuses . . . . .  | 490 | ■ Fluid Capacities . . . . .                                 | 501 |
| □ Totally Integrated Power Module . . . . .                  | 490 | ■ Fluids, Lubricants And Genuine Parts . . . . .             | 502 |
| ■ Vehicle Storage . . . . .                                  | 496 | □ Engine . . . . .   | 502 |
| ■ Replacement Bulbs . . . . .                                | 497 | □ Chassis . . . . .  | 503 |

**ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 3.8L**



071105474

- 1 — Integrated Power Module
- 2 — Battery
- 3 — Automatic Transmission Dipstick
- 4 — Engine Oil Fill
- 5 — Engine Oil Dipstick
- 6 — Brake Fluid Reservoir

- 7 — Washer Fluid Reservoir
- 8 — Engine Coolant Reservoir
- 9 — Air Cleaner Filter
- 10 — Coolant Pressure Cap
- 11 — Power Steering Fluid Reservoir

**ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM — OBD II**

Your vehicle is equipped with a sophisticated onboard diagnostic system called OBD II. This system monitors the performance of the emissions, engine, and automatic transmission control systems. When these systems are operating properly, your vehicle will provide excellent performance and fuel economy, as well as engine emissions well within current government regulations.

If any of these systems require service, the OBD II system will turn on the "Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)." It will also store diagnostic codes and other information to assist your service technician in making repairs. Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see your authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

**CAUTION!**

- **Prolonged driving with the MIL on could cause further damage to the emission control system. It could also affect fuel economy and drivability. The vehicle must be serviced before any emissions tests can be performed.**
- **If the MIL is flashing while the engine is running, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.**

**Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message**

After fuel is added, the vehicle diagnostic system can determine if the fuel filler cap is possibly loose, improperly installed, or damaged. A "gASCAP" message will be displayed in the odometer. Tighten the gas cap until a "clicking" sound is heard. This is an indication that the gas cap is properly tightened. Press the odometer reset button to turn the message off. If the problem persists,

the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started. This might indicate a damaged cap. If the problem is detected twice in a row, the system will turn on the MIL. Resolving the problem will turn the MIL off.

### EMISSIONS INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE PROGRAMS

In some localities, it may be a legal requirement to pass an inspection of your vehicle's emissions control system. Failure to pass could prevent vehicle registration.



For states that require an Inspection and Maintenance (I/M), this check verifies the "Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)" is functioning and is not on when the engine is running, and that the OBD II system is ready for testing.

Normally, the OBD II system will be ready. The OBD II system may **not** be ready if your vehicle was recently

serviced, recently had a dead battery or a battery replacement. If the OBD II system should be determined not ready for the I/M test, your vehicle may fail the test.

Your vehicle has a simple ignition key-actuated test, which you can use prior to going to the test station. To check if your vehicle's OBD II system is ready, you must do the following:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position, but do not crank or start the engine.
2. If you crank or start the engine, you will have to start this test over.
3. As soon as you turn the ignition switch to the ON position, you will see the MIL symbol come on as part of a normal bulb check.
4. Approximately 15 seconds later, one of two things will happen:

a. The MIL will flash for about 10 seconds and then return to being fully illuminated until you turn OFF the ignition or start the engine. This means that your vehicle's OBD II system is **not ready** and you should **not** proceed to the I/M station.

b. The MIL will not flash at all and will remain fully illuminated until you turn OFF the ignition or start the engine. This means that your vehicle's OBD II system is **ready** and you can proceed to the I/M station.

If your OBD II system is **not ready**, you should see your authorized dealer or repair facility. If your vehicle was recently serviced or had a battery failure or replacement, you may need to do nothing more than drive your vehicle as you normally would in order for your OBD II system to update. A recheck with the above test routine may then indicate that the system is now ready.

Regardless of whether your vehicle's OBD II system is ready or not, if the MIL is illuminated during normal

vehicle operation you should have your vehicle serviced before going to the I/M station. The I/M station can fail your vehicle because the MIL is on with the engine running.

#### REPLACEMENT PARTS

Use of genuine MOPAR® parts for normal/scheduled maintenance and repairs is highly recommended to ensure the designed performance. Damage or failures caused by the use of non-MOPAR® parts for maintenance and repairs will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

#### DEALER SERVICE

Your authorized dealer has the qualified service personnel, special tools, and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service Manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these Service Manuals before attempting any procedure yourself.

**NOTE:** Intentional tampering with emissions control systems may void your warranty and could result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

Besides those maintenance items specified in the fixed maintenance schedule, there are other components which may require servicing or replacement in the future.

#### WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Only do service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

#### CAUTION!

- Failure to properly maintain your vehicle or perform repairs and service when necessary could result in more costly repairs, damage to other components or negatively impact vehicle performance. Immediately have potential malfunctions examined by an authorized Chrysler Group LLC dealership or qualified repair center.

#### MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

The pages that follow contain the **required** maintenance services determined by the engineers who designed your vehicle.

*(Continued)*



**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Your vehicle has been built with improved fluids that protect the performance and durability of your vehicle and also allow extended maintenance intervals. Do not use chemical flushes in these components as the chemicals can damage your engine, transmission, power steering or air conditioning. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. If a flush is needed because of component malfunction, use only the specified fluid for the flushing procedure.

**Engine Oil****Checking Oil Level**

To assure proper lubrication of your vehicle's engine, the engine oil must be maintained at the correct level. The best time to check the engine oil level is about five

minutes after a fully warmed up engine is shut off or before starting the engine after it has sat overnight.

Checking the oil while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level readings. Always maintain the oil level within the SAFE zone on the dipstick. Adding 1 U.S. Quart (0.95L) of oil when the reading is at the bottom of the SAFE zone will result in a reading at the top of the safe zone on these engines.

**CAUTION!**

Overfilling or underfilling the crankcase will cause aeration or loss of oil pressure. This could damage your engine.

### Change Engine Oil

The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance. Refer to "Maintenance Schedule" for further information.

**NOTE:** Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 6,000 miles (10 000 km) or six months, whichever occurs first.

### Engine Oil Selection

For best performance and maximum protection for all engines under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer recommends engine oils that are API Certified and meet the requirements of Chrysler Material Standard MS-6395.

### American Petroleum Institute (API) Engine Oil Identification Symbol



This symbol means that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API). The manufacturer only recommends API Certified engine oils.

### CAUTION!

Do not use chemical flushes in your engine oil as the chemicals can damage your engine. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**Engine Oil Viscosity (SAE Grade)**

SAE 5W-20 engine oil is recommended for all operating temperatures. This engine oil improves low temperature starting and vehicle fuel economy.

The engine oil filler cap also shows the recommended engine oil viscosity for your engine. For information on engine oil filler cap location, refer to "Engine Compartment" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

Lubricants which do not have both, the engine oil certification mark and the correct SAE viscosity grade number, should not be used.

**Synthetic Engine Oils**

Synthetic engine oils can be used if the recommended oil quality requirements are met, and the recommended maintenance intervals for oil and filter changes are followed.

**Materials Added to Engine Oils**

The manufacturer strongly recommends against the addition of any additives (other than leak detection dyes) to engine oil. Engine oil is an engineered product and its performance may be impaired by supplemental additives.

**Disposing of Used Engine Oil and Oil Filters**

Care should be taken in disposing of used engine oil and oil filters from your vehicle. Used oil and oil filters, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the environment. Contact your authorized dealer, service station, or governmental agency for advice on how and where used oil and oil filters can be safely discarded in your area.

**Engine Oil Filter**

The engine oil filter should be replaced with a new filter at every engine oil change.

**Engine Oil Filter Selection**

All of the manufacturer's engines have a full-flow type disposable oil filter. Use a filter of this type for replacement. The quality of replacement filters varies considerably. Only high quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. MOPAR® engine oil filters are high quality oil filters and are recommended.

**Engine Air Cleaner Filter**

Refer to "Maintenance Schedule" for further information.

**WARNING!**

The air cleaner can provide protection in the case of engine backfire. Do not remove the air cleaner unless it is necessary for repair or maintenance. Make sure that no one is near the engine compartment before starting the vehicle with the air cleaner removed. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury.

**Engine Air Cleaner Filter Selection**

The quality of replacement engine air cleaner filters varies considerably. Only high quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. MOPAR® engine air cleaner filters are a high quality filter and are recommended.

**Maintenance-Free Battery**

Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. You will never have to add water, nor is periodic maintenance required.

**WARNING!**

- Battery fluid is a corrosive acid solution and can burn or even blind you. Do not allow battery fluid to contact your eyes, skin, or clothing. Do not lean over a battery when attaching clamps. If acid splashes in eyes or on skin, flush the area immediately with large amounts of water. Refer to "Jump-Starting Procedures" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.
- Battery gas is flammable and explosive. Keep flame or sparks away from the battery. Do not use a booster battery or any other booster source with an output greater than 12 Volts. Do not allow cable clamps to touch each other.
- Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

**CAUTION!**

- It is essential when replacing the cables on the battery that the positive cable is attached to the positive post and the negative cable is attached to the negative post. Battery posts are marked positive (+) and negative (-) and are identified on the battery case. Cable clamps should be tight on the terminal posts and free of corrosion.
- If a "fast charger" is used while the battery is in the vehicle, disconnect both vehicle battery cables before connecting the charger to the battery. Do not use a "fast charger" to provide starting voltage.

### Air Conditioner Maintenance

For best possible performance, your air conditioner should be checked and serviced by an authorized dealer at the start of each warm season. This service should include cleaning of the condenser fins and a performance test. Drive belt tension should also be checked at this time.

#### CAUTION!

Do not use chemical flushes in your air conditioning system as the chemicals can damage your air conditioning components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

#### WARNING!

- Use only refrigerants and compressor lubricants approved by the manufacturer for your air conditioning system. Some unapproved refrigerants are flammable and can explode, injuring you. Other unapproved refrigerants or lubricants can cause the system to fail, requiring costly repairs. Refer to Warranty Information Book, located on the DVD, for further warranty information.
- The air conditioning system contains refrigerant under high pressure. To avoid risk of personal injury or damage to the system, adding refrigerant or any repair requiring lines to be disconnected should be done by an experienced repairman.

**NOTE:** Use only manufacturer approved A/C System Sealers, Stop Leak Products, Seal Conditioners, Compressor Oil, and Refrigerants.

**Refrigerant Recovery and Recycling**

R-134a Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) that is endorsed by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and is an ozone-saving product. However, the manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by authorized dealers or other service facilities using recovery and recycling equipment.

**Body Lubrication**

Locks and all body pivot points, including such items as seat tracks, door hinge pivot points and rollers, liftgate, tailgate, sliding doors and hood hinges, should be lubricated periodically with a lithium-based grease, such as MOPAR® Spray White Lube or equivalent, to assure quiet, easy operation and to protect against rust and wear. Prior to the application of any lubricant, the parts concerned should be wiped clean to remove dust and grit; after lubricating, excess oil and grease should be removed. Particular attention should also be given to

hood latching components to ensure proper function. When performing other underhood services, the hood latch, release mechanism and safety catch should be cleaned and lubricated.

The external lock cylinders should be lubricated twice a year, preferably in the Fall and Spring. Apply a small amount of a high quality lubricant, such as MOPAR® Lock Cylinder Lubricant or equivalent, directly into the lock cylinder.

**Windshield Wiper Blades**

Clean the rubber edges of the wiper blades and the windshield periodically with a sponge or soft cloth and a mild non-abrasive cleaner. This will remove accumulations of salt or road film.

Operation of the wipers on dry glass for long periods may cause deterioration of the wiper blades. Always use washer fluid when using the wipers to remove salt or dirt from a dry windshield. Avoid using the wiper blades to

remove frost or ice from the windshield. Keep the blade rubber out of contact with petroleum products such as engine oil, gasoline, etc.

**NOTE:** Life expectancy of wiper blades varies depending on geographical area and frequency of use. Poor performance of blades may be present with chattering, marks, water lines or wet spots. If any condition is present please proceed to clean wiper blades with humid cloth removing any debris that may be affecting its function.

### Adding Washer Fluid

The fluid reservoir for the windshield washers and the rear window washer (if equipped) is shared. The fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment. Be sure to check the fluid level at regular intervals. Fill the reservoir with windshield washer solvent only (not radiator anti-freeze). When refilling the washer fluid reservoir, take

some washer fluid and apply it to a cloth or towel and wipe clean the wiper blades; this will help blade performance.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

#### WARNING!

**Commercial windshield washer solvents are flammable. They could ignite and burn you. Care must be exercised when filling or working around the washer solution.**



### Exhaust System

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

If you notice a change in the sound of the exhaust system; or if the exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle; or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged; have an authorized technician inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

#### WARNING!

- Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing CO, refer to "Safety Tips/Exhaust Gas" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information.
- A hot exhaust system can start a fire if you park over materials that can burn. Such materials might be grass or leaves coming into contact with your exhaust system. Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where your exhaust system can contact anything that can burn.

**CAUTION!**

- The catalytic converter requires the use of unleaded fuel only. Leaded gasoline will destroy the effectiveness of the catalyst as an emissions control device and may seriously reduce engine performance and cause serious damage to the engine.
- Damage to the catalytic converter can result if your vehicle is not kept in proper operating condition. In the event of engine malfunction, particularly involving engine misfire or other apparent loss of performance, have your vehicle serviced promptly. Continued operation of your vehicle with a severe malfunction could cause the converter to overheat, resulting in possible damage to the converter and vehicle.

Under normal operating conditions, the catalytic converter will not require maintenance. However, it is important to keep the engine properly tuned to assure proper catalyst operation and prevent possible catalyst damage.

**NOTE:** Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

In unusual situations involving grossly malfunctioning engine operation, a scorching odor may suggest severe and abnormal catalyst overheating. If this occurs, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine and allow it to cool. Service, including a tune-up to manufacturer's specifications, should be obtained immediately.

To minimize the possibility of catalytic converter damage:

- Do not shut off the engine or interrupt the ignition, when the transmission is in gear and the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.
- Do not idle the engine with any spark plug wires disconnected or removed, such as when diagnostic testing, or for prolonged periods during very rough idle or malfunctioning operating conditions.

### Cooling System

#### WARNING!

**You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator or coolant bottle is hot.**

#### Engine Coolant Checks

Check the engine coolant (antifreeze) protection every 12 months (before the onset of freezing weather, where applicable). If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty or rusty in appearance, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled with fresh engine coolant (antifreeze). Check the front of the A/C condenser (if equipped) or radiator for any accumulation of bugs, leaves, etc. If dirty, clean by gently spraying water from a

garden hose vertically down the face of the A/C condenser (if equipped) or the back of the radiator core.

Check the engine cooling system hoses for brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, and tightness of the connection at the coolant recovery bottle and radiator. Inspect the entire system for leaks.

With the engine at normal operating temperature (but not running), check the cooling system pressure cap for proper vacuum sealing by draining a small amount of engine coolant (antifreeze) from the radiator drain cock. If the cap is sealing properly, the engine coolant (antifreeze) will begin to drain from the coolant recovery bottle. **DO NOT REMOVE THE COOLANT PRESSURE CAP WHEN THE COOLING SYSTEM IS HOT.**

### **Cooling System – Drain, Flush, and Refill**

If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty and contains a considerable amount of sediment, clean and flush with reliable cooling system cleaner. Follow with a thorough rinsing to remove all deposits and chemicals. Properly dispose of the old engine coolant (antifreeze).

Refer to “Maintenance Schedule” for further information.

### **Selection Of Engine Coolant**

Use only the manufacturer’s recommended engine coolant (antifreeze). Refer to “Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle” for further information.

**CAUTION!**

- Mixing of engine coolant (antifreeze) other than the specified HOAT engine coolant (antifreeze) may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. If a non-HOAT engine coolant (antifreeze) is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, it should be replaced with the specified engine coolant (antifreeze) as soon as possible.
- Do not use water alone or alcohol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or antirust products, as they may not be compatible with the antifreeze/engine coolant (antifreeze) and may plug the radiator.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- This vehicle has not been designed for use with Propylene Glycol based engine coolant (antifreeze). Use of Propylene Glycol base engine coolant (antifreeze) is not recommended.

**Adding Engine Coolant**

Your vehicle has been built with an improved engine coolant (antifreeze) that allows extended maintenance intervals. This engine coolant (antifreeze) can be used up to five years or 102,000 miles (170 000 km) before replacement. To prevent reducing this extended maintenance period, it is important that you use the same engine coolant (antifreeze) throughout the life of your vehicle.

Please review these recommendations for using Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) engine coolant (antifreeze). When adding engine coolant (antifreeze):

- The manufacturer recommends using MOPAR® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula HOAT (Hybrid Organic Additive Technology) or equivalent.
- Mix a minimum solution of 50% HOAT engine coolant and distilled water. Use higher concentrations (not to exceed 70%) if temperatures below  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-37^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) are anticipated.
- Use only high purity water such as distilled or deionized water when mixing the water/engine coolant (antifreeze) solution. The use of lower quality water will reduce the amount of corrosion protection in the engine cooling system.

Please note that it is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of protection against freezing according to the temperatures occurring in the area where the vehicle is operated.

**NOTE:** Mixing engine coolant (antifreeze) types will decrease the life of the engine coolant (antifreeze) and will require more frequent coolant changes.

#### **Cooling System Pressure Cap**

The cap must be fully tightened to prevent loss of engine coolant (antifreeze), and to ensure that engine coolant (antifreeze) will return to the radiator from the coolant reserve tank.

The cap should be inspected and cleaned if there is any accumulation of foreign material on the sealing surfaces.

**WARNING!**

The warning words **DO NOT OPEN HOT** on the cooling system pressure cap are a safety precaution. Never add engine coolant (antifreeze) when the engine is overheated. Do not loosen or remove the cap to cool an overheated engine. Heat causes pressure to build up in the cooling system. To prevent scalding or injury, do not remove the pressure cap while the system is hot or under pressure.

**Disposal of Used Engine Coolant**

Used ethylene glycol based engine coolant (antifreeze) is a regulated substance requiring proper disposal. Check with your local authorities to determine the disposal rules for your community. To prevent ingestion by animals or children, do not store ethylene glycol based engine coolant (antifreeze) in open containers or allow it

to remain in puddles on the ground. If ingested by a child or pet, seek emergency assistance immediately. Clean up any ground spills immediately.

**Engine Coolant Level**

The coolant bottle provides a quick visual method for determining that the coolant level is adequate. With the engine idling, and warm to normal operating temperature, the level of the engine coolant (antifreeze) in the bottle should be between the ranges indicated on the bottle.

The radiator normally remains completely full, so there is no need to remove the radiator cap unless checking for engine coolant (antifreeze) freeze point or replacing engine coolant (antifreeze). Advise your service attendant of this. As long as the engine operating temperature is satisfactory, the coolant bottle need only be checked once a month.

When additional engine coolant (antifreeze) is needed to maintain the proper level, it should be added to the coolant bottle. Do not overfill.

#### Points to Remember

**NOTE:** When the vehicle is stopped after a few miles/kilometers of operation, you may observe vapor coming from the front of the engine compartment. This is normally a result of moisture from rain, snow, or high humidity accumulating on the radiator and being vaporized when the thermostat opens, allowing hot engine coolant (antifreeze) to enter the radiator.

If an examination of your engine compartment shows no evidence of radiator or hose leaks, the vehicle may be safely driven. The vapor will soon dissipate.

- Do not overfill the coolant bottle.
- Check the engine coolant (antifreeze) freeze point in the radiator and in the coolant recovery bottle. If

engine coolant (antifreeze) needs to be added, the contents of the coolant recovery bottle must also be protected against freezing.

- If frequent engine coolant (antifreeze) additions are required, or if the level in the recovery bottle does not drop when the engine cools, the cooling system should be pressure-tested for leaks.
- Maintain the engine coolant (antifreeze) concentration at 50% HOAT engine coolant (antifreeze) (minimum) and distilled water for proper corrosion protection of your engine which contains aluminum components.
- Make sure that the radiator and coolant recovery bottle hoses are not kinked or obstructed.
- Keep the front of the radiator clean. If your vehicle is equipped with air conditioning, keep the front of the condenser clean.



- Do not change the thermostat for Summer or Winter operation. If replacement is ever necessary, install **ONLY** the correct type thermostat. Other designs may result in unsatisfactory cooling performance, poor gas mileage, and increased emissions.

### Brake System

In order to assure brake system performance, all brake system components should be inspected periodically. Refer to "Maintenance Schedule" for further information.

#### **WARNING!**

**Riding the brakes can lead to brake failure and possibly an accident. Driving with your foot resting or riding on the brake pedal can result in abnormally high brake temperatures, excessive lining wear, and possible brake damage. You would not have your full braking capacity in an emergency.**

### Power Disc Brakes

Disc brakes do not require adjustment; however, several hard stops during the break-in period are recommended to seat the linings and wear off any foreign material.

### Brake Master Cylinder

The fluid level in the master cylinders should be checked whenever the vehicle is serviced. If necessary, add fluid to bring level to the full level mark on the side of the reservoir of the brake master cylinder. With disc brakes, fluid level can be expected to fall as the brake pads wear. If the brake fluid level is abnormally low, check system for leaks.

Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

**WARNING!**

- Use only manufacturer's recommended brake fluid. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information. Using the wrong type of brake fluid can severely damage your brake system and/or impair its performance. The proper type of brake fluid for your vehicle is also labeled on the original factory installed hydraulic master cylinder reservoir.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- To avoid contamination from foreign matter or moisture, use only new brake fluid or fluid that has been in a tightly closed container. Keep the master cylinder reservoir cap secured at all times. Brake fluid in a open container absorbs moisture from the air resulting in a lower boiling point. This may cause it to boil unexpectedly during hard or prolonged braking, resulting in sudden brake failure. This could result in an accident.
- Overfilling the brake fluid reservoir can result in spilling brake fluid on hot engine parts, causing the brake fluid to catch fire. Brake fluid can also damage painted and vinyl surfaces, care should be taken to avoid its contact with these surfaces.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Do not allow petroleum based fluid to contaminate the brake fluid. Brake seal components could be damaged, causing partial or complete brake failure. This could result in an accident.

**Automatic Transmission – If Equipped****Selection of Lubricant**

It is important that the proper lubricant is used in the transmission to assure optimum transmission performance. Use only manufacturer's recommended transmission fluid. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information. It is important that the transmission fluid be maintained at the prescribed level using the recommended fluid.

**CAUTION!**

Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturer's recommended fluid may cause deterioration in transmission shift quality and/or torque converter shudder. Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturer's recommended fluid will result in more frequent fluid and filter changes. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

**Fluid Level Check**

Check the fluid level while the transmission is at normal operating temperature 180° F (82° C). This occurs after at least 15 miles (25 km) of driving. At normal operating temperature, the fluid cannot be held comfortably between the fingertips.

To properly check the automatic transmission fluid level, the following procedure must be used:

1. Operate the engine at idle speed and normal operating temperature.
2. The vehicle must be on level ground.
3. Fully apply the parking brake.
4. Place the shift lever momentarily into each gear position ending with the shift lever in PARK.
5. Remove the dipstick, wipe it clean and reinsert it until seated.
6. Remove the dipstick again and note the fluid level on both sides. The fluid level should be between the HOT (upper) reference holes on the dipstick at normal operating temperature. Verify that a solid coating of oil is seen on both sides of the dipstick. If the fluid is low, add as required into the dipstick tube. **Do not overfill.** After

adding any quantity of oil through the dipstick tube, wait a minimum of two minutes for the oil to fully drain into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.

**NOTE:** If it is necessary to check the transmission below the operating temperature, the fluid level should be between the two cold (lower) holes on the dipstick with the fluid at approximately 70° F (21° C) (room temperature). If the fluid level is correctly established at room temperature, it should be between the HOT (upper) reference holes when the transmission reaches 180° F (82° C). Remember it is best to check the level at the normal operating temperature.

#### CAUTION!

**Be aware that if the fluid temperature is below 50° F (10° C), it may not register on the dipstick. Do not add fluid until the temperature is elevated enough to produce an accurate reading.**

7. Check for leaks. Release the parking brake.

**NOTE:** To prevent dirt and water from entering the transmission after checking or replenishing fluid, make certain that the dipstick cap is properly reseated. It is normal for the dipstick cap to spring back slightly from its fully seated position, as long as its seal remains engaged in the dipstick tube.

#### **Special Additives**

Automatic Transmission Fluid (ATF) is an engineered product and its performance may be impaired by supplemental additives. Therefore, do not add any fluid additives to the transmission. The only exception to this policy is the use of special dyes to aid in detecting fluid leaks. In addition, avoid using transmission sealers as they may adversely affect seals.

#### **CAUTION!**

**Do not use chemical flushes in your transmission as the chemicals can damage your transmission components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

#### **Hydraulic Clutch Fluid – Manual Transmission**

The clutch hydraulic system is a sealed maintenance-free system. In the event of leakage or other malfunction, the system must be replaced.

#### **Manual Transmission – If Equipped**

##### **Selection of Lubricant**

Use only manufacturer's recommended manual transmission fluid. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

**Fluid Level Check**

Check the fluid level by removing the fill plug. The fluid level should be between the bottom of the fill hole and a point not more than 3/16 in (4.76 mm) below the bottom of the hole.

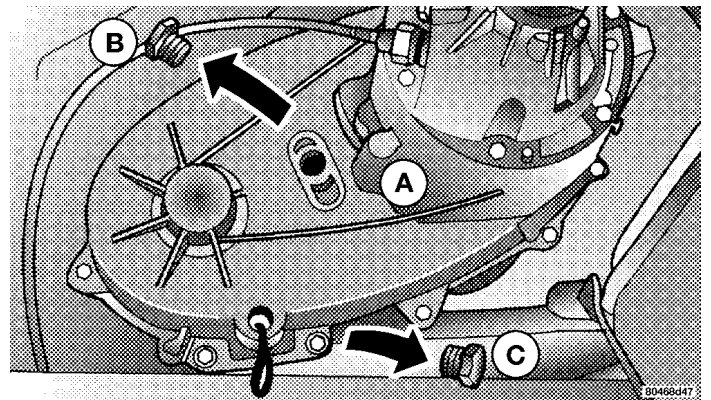
Add fluid, if necessary, to maintain the proper level.

**Frequency of Fluid Change**

Under normal operating conditions, the fluid installed at the factory will give satisfactory lubrication for the life of the vehicle. Fluid changes are not necessary unless the lubricant has become contaminated with water. If contaminated with water, the fluid should be changed immediately.

**Transfer Case – If Equipped****Fluid Level Check**

The fluid level should be to the bottom edge of the fill hole (A) when the vehicle is in a level position.

**Adding Fluid**

Fluid should be added only at filler hole until fluid begins to run out of the hole.

**Drain**

First remove the fill plug (B), then the drain plug (C). The recommended tightening torque for the drain and fill plugs is 15 to 25 ft lbs (20 to 34 N·m).

**CAUTION!**

When replacing the plugs, do not overtighten them. You could damage them and cause them to leak.

**Selection of Lubricant**

Use only manufacturer's recommended fluid. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

**Front/Rear Axle Fluid**

For normal service, periodic fluid level checks are not required. When the vehicle is serviced for other reasons the exterior surfaces of the axle assembly should be inspected. If gear oil leakage is suspected inspect the fluid level. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

**Fluid Level Check**

Lubricant should be at the bottom edge of the oil fill hole.

**Adding Fluid**

Add lubricant only at the fill hole and only to the level specified above.

**Selection of Lubricant**

Use only manufacturer's recommended fluid. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

**Appearance Care and Protection from Corrosion****Protection of Body and Paint from Corrosion**

Vehicle body care requirements vary according to geographic locations and usage. Chemicals that make roads passable in snow and ice, and those that are sprayed on trees and road surfaces during other seasons, are highly corrosive to the metal in your vehicle. Outside parking, which exposes your vehicle to airborne contaminants,

road surfaces on which the vehicle is operated, extreme hot or cold weather and other extreme conditions will have an adverse effect on paint, metal trim, and underbody protection.

The following maintenance recommendations will enable you to obtain maximum benefit from the corrosion resistance built into your vehicle.

#### **What Causes Corrosion?**

Corrosion is the result of deterioration or removal of paint and protective coatings from your vehicle.

The most common causes are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture accumulation.
- Stone and gravel impact.
- Insects, tree sap and tar.
- Salt in the air near sea-coast localities.

- Atmospheric fallout/industrial pollutants.
- Bird droppings.

#### **Washing**

- Wash your vehicle regularly. Always wash your vehicle in the shade using MOPAR® Car Wash or equivalent, or a mild car wash soap, and rinse the panels completely with clear water.
- If insects, tar, or other similar deposits have accumulated on your vehicle, use MOPAR® Super Kleen Bug and Tar Remover or equivalent to remove.
- Use a high quality cleaner wax, such as MOPAR® Cleaner Wax or equivalent to remove road film, stains, and to protect your paint finish. Take care never to scratch the paint.



- Avoid using abrasive compounds and power buffing that may diminish the gloss or thin out the paint finish.

**CAUTION!**

- Do not use abrasive or strong cleaning materials such as steel wool or scouring powder, which will scratch metal and painted surfaces.
- Use of power washers exceeding 1,200 psi (8 274 kPa) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

**Special Care**

- If you drive on salted or dusty roads or if you drive near the ocean, hose off the undercarriage at least once a month.
- It is important that the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors, rocker panels and tailgate are kept clear and open.
- If you detect any stone chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If your vehicle is damaged due to an accident or similar cause which destroys the paint and protective coating, have your vehicle repaired as soon as possible. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If you carry special cargo such as chemicals, fertilizers, de-icer salt, etc., assure that such materials are well packaged and sealed.
- If a lot of driving is done on gravel roads, consider installing mud or stone shields behind each wheel.

- Use MOPAR® Touch-Up Paint or equivalent on scratches or chips as soon as possible. Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match the color of your vehicle.

#### Wheel and Wheel Trim Care

All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome-plated wheels, should be cleaned regularly with a mild soap and water to prevent corrosion. To remove heavy soil, use MOPAR® Wheel Cleaner or equivalent, or select a nonabrasive, non-acidic cleaner. Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush or metal polishes. Only MOPAR® cleaners or equivalent are recommended. Do not use oven cleaner. Avoid automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or harsh brushes that may damage the wheels' protective finish.

#### Interior Care

Use MOPAR® Total Clean or equivalent to clean fabric upholstery and carpeting.

Interior Trim should be cleaned starting with a damp cloth, a damp cloth with MOPAR® Total Clean or equivalent, then MOPAR® Spot & Stain Remover or equivalent if absolutely necessary. Do not use harsh cleaners or Armor All®. Use MOPAR® Total Clean or equivalent to clean vinyl upholstery.

#### WARNING!

**Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable and, if used in closed areas, they may cause respiratory harm.**

**CAUTION!**

When installing hanging air fresheners in your vehicle, read the installation instructions carefully. Some air fresheners will damage the finish of painted or decorated parts if allowed to directly contact any surface.

**Glass Surfaces**

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with MOPAR® Glass Cleaner or any commercial household-type glass cleaner. Never use an abrasive-type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning inside rear windows equipped with electric defrosters. Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments which may scratch the elements.

When cleaning the rearview mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or rag that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

**Cleaning Plastic Instrument Cluster Lenses**

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.

1. Clean with a wet, soft rag. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp rag.
2. Dry with a soft tissue.

**Seat Belt Maintenance**

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage will also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use MOPAR® Total Clean or equivalent, a mild soap solution, or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the vehicle to wash them.

Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

**Appearance Care for Fabric Top Models**

**CAUTION!**

**To maintain the appearance of your vehicle's interior trim and top, follow these precautions:**

- Avoid leaving your vehicle unattended with the top down, as exposure to sun or rain may damage interior trim.
- Do not use harsh cleaners or bleaching agents on top material, as damage may result.
- Do not allow any vinyl cleaner to run down and dry on the paint, leaving a streak.

- After cleaning your vehicle's fabric top, always make sure it is completely dry before lowering.
- Be especially careful when washing the windows by following the directions for "Care of Fabric Top Windows."

**WASHING** — Use MOPAR® Car Wash or equivalent, or mild soap suds, lukewarm water, and a brush with soft bristles. If extra cleaning is required, use MOPAR® Convertible Cloth Top Cleaner or equivalent, or a mild foaming cleaner on the entire top, but support the top from underneath.

**RINSING** — Be sure to remove all traces of cleaner by rinsing the top thoroughly with clean water. Remember to allow the top to dry before lowering it.

**CAUTION!**

Failure to follow these cautions may cause interior water damage, stains or mildew on the top material:

- Avoid high-pressure car washes, as they can damage the top material. Also, increased water pressure may force past the weather strips.
- It is recommended that the top be free of water prior to opening it. Operating the top, opening a door or lowering a window while the top is wet may allow water to drip into the vehicle's interior.
- Use care when washing the vehicle, water pressure directed at the weather strip seals may cause water to leak into the vehicle's interior.
- Careless handling and storage of the removable roof panels may damage the seals, causing water to leak into the vehicle's interior.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- The front panel(s) must be positioned properly to ensure sealing. Improper installation can cause water to leak into the vehicle's interior.

**Care of Fabric Top Windows****CAUTION!**

Your vehicle's fabric top has pliable plastic windows which can be scratched unless special care is taken by following these directions:

1. Never use a dry cloth to remove dust. Instead, use a microfiber towel or soft cotton cloth moistened with cold or warm, clean water, and wipe across the window, not up and down. MOPAR® Jeep Soft Glass Window

Cleaner or equivalent will safely clean all plastic windows without scratching. It removes fine scratches to improve visibility and provides UV protection to help prevent yellowing.

2. When washing, **never use hot water** or anything stronger than a mild soap. Never use solvents such as alcohol or harsh cleaning agents.

3. Always rinse thoroughly with cold water, then wipe with a soft and slightly moist, clean cloth.

4. When removing frost, snow or ice, **never use a scraper or de-icing chemicals**. Use warm water only if you must clean the window quickly.

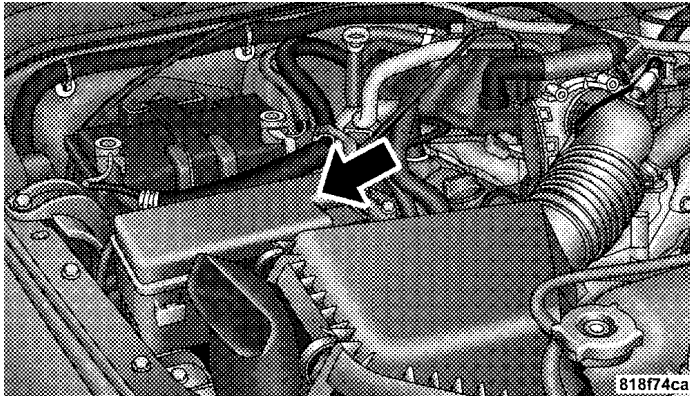
5. Debris (sand, mud/dirt, dust, or salt) from off-road driving will have a major impact on zipper operation. Even normal on-road driving and vehicle washing will eventually impact window zipper operation. To maintain ease of use of the window zippers, each window zipper

should be cleaned and lubricated regularly. Use MOPAR® Soft Top Zipper Cleaner and Lubricant or equivalent to ease zipper operation. Before applying, make sure the zipper teeth are clear of sand, mud, and other materials. Clean both sides of the zipper, not just one side. Rinse both zipper halves with fresh water and allow to dry. Aggressively work the MOPAR® Soft Top Zipper Cleaner and Lubricant or equivalent into the zipper teeth. If a stuck zipper slide is experienced, work the MOPAR® Soft Top Zipper Cleaner and Lubricant or equivalent into the zipper slide. Several applications may be required before the zipper comes free.

6. Never paste stickers, gummed labels or any tape to the windows. Adhesives are hard to remove and may damage the windows.

**FUSES****Totally Integrated Power Module**

The Totally Integrated Power Module (TIPM) is located in the engine compartment near the battery. This center contains cartridge fuses, mini fuses and relays. A label that identifies each component is printed on the inside of the cover.



**Totally Integrated Power Module (TIPM)**

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse | Description                                 |
|--------|----------------|-----------|---|
| J1     | —              |           | —   |
| J2     | 30 Amp Pink    |           | Transfer Case Module                        |
| J3     | —              |           | —   |
| J4     | 25 Amp Natural |           | Driver Door Node                            |
| J5     | 25 Amp Natural |           | Passenger Door Node                         |
| J6     | 40 Amp Green   |           | Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) Pump Feed/ESP  |
| J7     | 30 Amp Pink    |           | Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) Valve Feed/ESP |
| J8     | —              |           | —   |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse | Description                               |
|--------|----------------|-----------|---|
| J9     | 40 Amp Green   |           | PZEV Sec Motor Feed/Flex Fuel             |
| J10    | 30 Amp Pink    |           | Headlamp Wash Relay/Manifold Tuning Valve |
| J11    | 30 Amp Pink    |           | Sway Bar                                  |
| J13    | 60 Amp Yellow  |           | Ignition Off Draw (IOD) – Main            |
| J14    | 40 Amp Green   |           | EBL (Rear Window Defogger)                |
| J15    | 30 Amp Pink    |           | Rear Blower                               |
| J17    | 40 Amp Green   |           | Starter Solenoid                          |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse     | Description   |
|--------|----------------|---------------|---|
| J18    | 20 Amp Blue    |               | Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Trans Range                   |
| J19    | 60 Amp Yellow  |               | Radiator Fan  |
| J20    | 30 Amp Pink    |               | Front Wiper LO/HI   |
| J21    | 20 Amp Blue    |               | Front/Rear Washer   |
| J22    | —              |               | Spare   |
| M1     |                | 15 Amp Blue   | Center High-Mounted Stop Light (CHMSL)/ Switch Stop Lamp Feed |
| M2     |                | 20 Amp Yellow | Relay Trailer Lighting (Stop)                                 |



492 MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse     | Description                       |
|--------|----------------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| M3     |                | 20 Amp Yellow | Frt/Rear Axle Locker Relay        |
| M4     |                | —             | —                                 |
| M5     |                | —             | —                                 |
| M6     |                | 20 Amp Yellow | Power Outlet #1/Rain Sensor       |
| M7     |                | 20 Amp Yellow | Power Outlet #2 (BATT/ACC SELECT) |
| M8     |                | 20 Amp Yellow | Front Heated Seat                 |
| M9     |                | 20 Amp Yellow | Rear Heated Seat – If Equipped    |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse     | Description  |
|--------|----------------|---------------|--|
| M10    |                | 20 Amp Yellow | Ignition Off Draw – Vehicle Entertainment System (IOD-VES), Satellite Digital Audio Receiver (SDARS), DVD, Hands-Free Module (HFM), RADIO, Antenna (ANT), Universal Garage Door Opener (UGDO), Vanity Lamp (VANITY LP) |
| M11    |                | 10 Amp Red    | (Ignition Off Draw) IOD-HVAC/ATC, MW SENSR, Underhood Lamp (UH LMP)  |
| M12    |                | 30 Amp Green  | Amplifier (AMP)  |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse     | Description   |
|--------|----------------|---------------|---|
| M13    |                | 20 Amp Yellow | Ignition Off Draw – Cabin Compartment Node (IOD-CCN), Wireless Control Module (WCM), SIREN, Multifunction Control Switch (MULTIFCTN SW) |
| M14    |                | 20 Amp Yellow | Trailer Tow (Export Only)   |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse     | Description   |
|--------|----------------|---------------|---|
| M15    |                | 20 Amp Yellow | COL MOD, IR SNS, Heater Ventilation, Air Conditioning/ Automatic Temperature Control (HVAC/ ATC), Rear View Mirror (RR VW MIR), Cabin Compartment Node (CCN), Transfer Case Switch (T-CASE SW), RUN/ST, Multifunction Control Switch (MULTIFCTN SW), Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM), Glow Plug Module (GLW PLG MOD) – Export Diesel Only |

494 MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse      | Description  |
|--------|----------------|----------------|--|
| M16    |                | 10 Amp Red     | Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)  |
| M17    |                | 15 Amp Blue    | Left Tail/License/Park Lamp (LT-TAIL/LIC/PRK LMP)                            |
| M18    |                | 15 Amp Blue    | Right Tail/Park/Run Lamp (RT-TAIL/PRK/RUN LMP)                               |
| M19    |                | 25 Amp Natural | Auto Shut Down (ASD #1 and #2)   |
| M20    |                | 15 Amp Blue    | Cabin Compartment Node Interior Light (CCN INT LIGHT), Switch Bank (SW BANK) |
| M21    |                | 20 Amp Yellow  | Auto Shut Down (ASD #3)  |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse      | Description   |
|--------|----------------|----------------|---|
| M22    |                | 10 Amp Red     | Right Horn (RT HORN (HI/LOW))   |
| M23    |                | 10 Amp Red     | Left Horn (LT HORN (HI/LOW))  |
| M24    |                | 25 Amp Natural | Rear Wiper (REAR WIPER)   |
| M25    |                | 20 Amp Yellow  | Fuel Pump (FUEL PUMP), Diesel Lift Pump (DSL LIFT PUMP) — Export Only |
| M26    |                | —              | —   |
| M27    |                | 10 Amp Red     | Ignition Switch Feed, Wireless Module                                 |
| M28    |                | 10 Amp Red     | PCM Feed/TCM  |
| M29    |                | —              | —   |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse     | Description  |
|--------|----------------|---------------|--|
| M30    |                | 15 Amp Blue   | Wiper Motor Frt, J1962 Diagnostic Feed                                       |
| M31    |                | 20 Amp Yellow | Backup Lamps (B/U LAMPS)   |
| M32    |                | 10 Amp Red    | Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC), TT EUROPE                               |
| M33    |                | 10 Amp Red    | Next Generation Controller (NGC), Global Powertrain Engine Controller (GPEC) |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse     | Description   |
|--------|----------------|---------------|---|
| M34    |                | 10 Amp Red    | Park Assist (PRK ASST), Heater Ventilation, Air Conditioning Module (HVAC MOD), Headlamp Wash (HDLP WASH), Compass (COMPAS) |
| M35    |                | 10 Amp Red    | Heated Mirrors  |
| M36    |                | 20 Amp Yellow | Power Outlet  |
| M37    |                | 10 Amp Red    | Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Electronic Stability Program (ESP), Stop Lamp Switch (STP LP SW), Fuel Pump Rly Hi Control    |

| Cavity | Cartridge Fuse | Mini Fuse         | Description                                 |
|--------|----------------|-------------------|---|
| M38    |                | 25 Amp<br>Natural | Lock/Unlock Motors<br>(LOCK/UNLOCK<br>MTRS) |

**CAUTION!**

- When installing the Integrated Power Module cover, it is important to ensure the cover is properly positioned and fully latched. Failure to do so may allow water to get into the Integrated Power Module, and possibly result in an electrical system failure.

*(Continued)***CAUTION! (Continued)**

- When replacing a blown fuse, it is important to use only a fuse having the correct amperage rating. The use of a fuse with a rating other than indicated may result in a dangerous electrical system overload. If a properly rated fuse continues to blow, it indicates a problem in the circuit that must be corrected.

**VEHICLE STORAGE**

If you are leaving your vehicle dormant for more than 21 days, you may want to take steps to protect your battery. You may:

- Remove Cartridge fuse #15 in the Power Distribution Center labeled Ignition-Off Draw (IOD).
- Store the removed IOD fuse in the Power Distribution Center location #11 labeled "IOD Storage."

- Or, disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- Anytime you store your vehicle, or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes in the fresh air and high blower setting. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

**REPLACEMENT BULBS**

| <b>Interior Lights</b>   | <b>Bulb Type</b> |
|--|------------------|
| Auto. Trans. Indicator Lamp. . . . .   | 658              |
| Heater Control Lamps (2). . . . .  | 194              |
| Rocker Switch Indicator Lamp (Rear Window Defogger, and Rear Wash/Wipe). . . . . | **               |
| Soundbar Dome Lamp. . . . .  | 912              |

\*\* Bulbs only available from authorized dealer.

| <b>Exterior Lights</b>                     | <b>Bulb Type</b> |
|--|------------------|
| Backup Lamps (2) . . . . .                 | 3157             |
| Center High-Mounted Stop Lamp (1). . . . . | L.E.D.           |
| Fog Lamps . . . . .                        | PSX24W           |
| Front Park/Turn Signal Lamps (2). . . . .  | 3157             |
| Front Side Marker Lamps (2) . . . . .      | 168              |
| Headlamps (2) . . . . .                    | H13              |
| Rear Stop/Tail/Turn Lamps (2). . . . .     | 3157             |
| License Lamp . . . . .                     | 194              |

**NOTE:** Numbers refer to commercial bulb types that can be purchased from your local authorized dealer.

If a bulb needs to be replaced, visit your authorized dealer or refer to the applicable Service Manual.

## BULB REPLACEMENT

**NOTE:** Lens fogging can occur under certain atmospheric conditions. This will usually clear as atmospheric conditions change to allow the condensation to change back into a vapor. Turning the lamps on will usually accelerate the clearing process.

### Headlamp

1. Open hood and support using prop rod.
2. Remove the front grille. Turn the retainers along the top 1/4 turn counterclockwise and remove.
3. Pull the bottom of the grille away starting at one side and working toward the other.
4. Turn both park and turn signal socket assemblies 1/4 turn counterclockwise and remove.
5. Remove the four screws holding the metal retaining ring.
6. Remove the lamp from the collar.
7. Grasp the bulb and turn 1/4 turn counterclockwise.
8. Pull the bulb from the housing.
9. Push connector locking tab to the unlock position.
10. Remove connector from bulb.
11. Push connector onto new bulb base, and push the connector locking tab to the lock position.
12. Reinstall bulb housing. Rotate the bulb 1/4 turn clockwise.

| CAUTION!  |
|---|
| <b>Do not touch the new bulb with your fingers. Oil contamination will severely shorten bulb life. If the bulb comes in contact with any oily surface, clean the bulb with rubbing alcohol.</b> |

### Front Park/Turn Signal

1. Remove the front grille. Turn the retainers along the top 1/4 turn counterclockwise and remove.
2. Pull the bottom of the grille away starting at one side and working toward the other.
3. Turn the socket assembly 1/4 turn counterclockwise and remove from housing. Pull the bulb straight from the socket to replace.

### Front Side Marker

1. Reach under the front fender flare and locate the front side marker socket.
2. Turn the socket assembly counterclockwise 1/3 turn and remove it from the housing. Pull the bulb straight from the socket to replace.

### Front Fog Lamp

1. Locate the front fog lamp in the front fascia, and disconnect the electrical connector from underneath.
2. Squeeze locking tabs on bulb inward toward center of the bulb. Pull bulb straight out of housing.

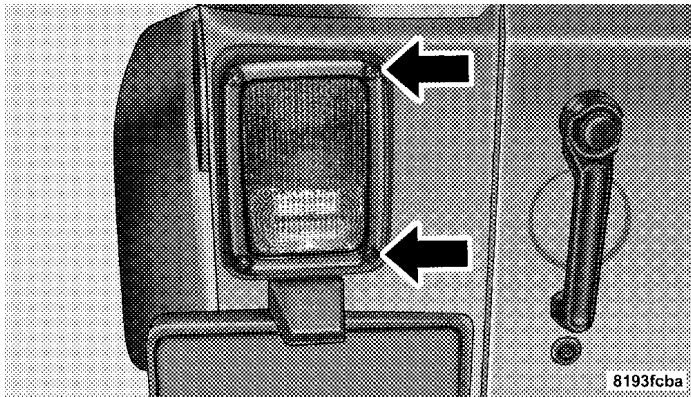
#### CAUTION!

**Do not touch the new bulb with your fingers. Oil contamination will severely shorten bulb life. If the bulb comes in contact with any oily surface, clean the bulb with rubbing alcohol.**



### Rear Tail, Stop, Turn Signal, and Backup Lamp

1. Remove the two inboard screws attaching the tail light housing to the body. **DO NOT REMOVE THE OUTER SCREWS AT ANY TIME.**



2. Separate the housing from the body by pushing the lamp inboard while pulling the lamp away from the body.

3. Rotate the appropriate socket 1/4 turn counterclockwise, then remove it from the housing.

4. Pull the bulb straight from the socket to replace.

### Center High-Mounted Stop Lamp (CHMSL)

The stop lamp is mounted on a bracket that extends upward from the tailgate behind the spare tire. If service is needed, obtain the LED/Cover Assembly from your local authorized dealer.

1. Remove the spare tire.

2. Remove the four screws holding the lens/cover in place on the spare tire carrier.

3. Disconnect the wire harness from the back of the LED cover.

**FLUID CAPACITIES**

|   | <b>U.S.</b>  | <b>Metric</b> |
|---|--------------|---------------|
| <b>Fuel (Approximate) — Two Door Models</b>   | 18.5 Gallons | 70 Liters     |
| <b>Fuel (Approximate) — Four Door Models</b>  | 22.5 Gallons | 85 Liters     |
| <b>Engine Oil with Filter</b>   |              |               |
| 3.8 Liter Engine  | 6 Quarts     | 5.7 Liters    |
| <b>Cooling System *</b>   |              |               |
| 3.8 Liter Engine (MOPAR® Antifreeze/Engine Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula or equivalent) | 13 Quarts    | 12 Liters     |
| * Includes coolant recovery bottle filled to MAX level.                                       |              |               |

**FLUIDS, LUBRICANTS AND GENUINE PARTS****Engine**

| <b>Component</b>  | <b>Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part</b>   |
|-------------------|--|
| Engine Coolant    | MOPAR® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula HOAT (Hybrid Organic Additive Technology) or equivalent.   |
| Engine Oil        | Use API Certified SAE 5W-20 Engine Oil, meeting the requirements of Chrysler Material Standard MS-6395. Refer to your engine oil filler cap for correct SAE grade. |
| Engine Oil Filter | MOPAR® Engine Oil Filter or equivalent.  |
| Spark Plugs       | RE14PLP5 (Gap 0.050 in [1.27 mm])  |
| Fuel Selection    | 87 Octane  |

**Chassis**

| Component                            | Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Automatic Transmission – If Equipped | MOPAR® ATF+4® Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent licensed ATF+4® product.   |
| Manual Transmission – If Equipped    | MOPAR® Manual Transmission Lubricant or equivalent (meeting the requirements of Chrysler Material Standard MS-9224).  |
| Transfer Case                        | MOPAR® ATF+4® Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent licensed ATF+4® product.   |
| Axle Differential (Front)            | MOPAR® Gear & Axle Lubricant (SAE 80W-90) (API GL-5) or equivalent.   |
| Axle Differential (Rear)             | <b>226 RBI (Model 44)</b> - MOPAR® Gear & Axle Lubricant (SAE 80W-90) (API GL-5) or equivalent. For trailer towing, use MOPAR® Synthetic Gear & Axle Lubricant (SAE 75W-140) or equivalent. Models equipped with Trac-Lok™ require an additive. |
| Brake Master Cylinder                | MOPAR® DOT 3 Brake Fluid, SAE J1703 should be used. If DOT 3, SAE J1703 brake fluid is not available, then DOT 4 is acceptable. Use only recommended brake fluids.  |
| Power Steering Reservoir             | MOPAR® Power Steering Fluid +4, MOPAR® ATF+4® Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent licensed ATF+4® product.   |



---

# **MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES**

## **CONTENTS**

---

|  |     |  |     |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| ■ Emissions Control System Maintenance . . . . . | 506 | □ Required Maintenance Intervals . . . . . | 508 |
| ■ Maintenance Schedule . . . . .                 | 506 |  |     |

**EMISSIONS CONTROL SYSTEM MAINTENANCE**

The Scheduled Maintenance services listed in **bold type** must be done at the times or mileages specified to ensure the continued proper functioning of the emissions control system. These and all other maintenance services included in this manual, should be done to provide best vehicle performance and reliability. More frequent maintenance may be needed for vehicles in severe operating conditions, such as dusty areas and very short trip driving.

Inspection and service should also be done anytime a malfunction is suspected.

**NOTE:** Maintenance, replacement or repair of the emissions control devices and systems on your vehicle may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any automotive part that has been certified pursuant to U.S. EPA or in the State of California, California Air Resources Board regulations.

**MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE**

The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance.

On Non-EVIC equipped vehicles, "CHAnGE OIL" will flash in the instrument cluster odometer and a single chime will sound, indicating that an oil change is necessary.

Based on engine operation conditions the oil change indicator message will illuminate, this means that service is required for your vehicle. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible, within the next 500 miles (805 km).

**NOTE:**

- The oil change indicator message will not monitor the time since the last oil change. Change your vehicle's oil if it has been six months since your last oil change even if the oil change indicator message is NOT illuminated.

- Change your engine oil more often if you drive your vehicle off-road for an extended period of time.
- Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 6,000 miles (10 000 km) or six months, whichever comes first.

Your dealer will reset the oil change indicator message after completing the scheduled oil change. If this scheduled oil change is performed by someone other than your dealer, the message can be reset by referring to the steps described under “Instrument Cluster Description/Odometer/Trip Odometer” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

#### *At Each Stop for Fuel*

- Check the engine oil level about five minutes after a fully warmed engine is shut off. Checking the oil level while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level reading. Add oil only when the level is at or below the ADD or MIN mark.
- Check the windshield washer solvent and add if required.



**508 MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES**

*Once a Month*

- Check tire pressure and look for unusual wear or damage.
- Inspect the battery and clean and tighten the terminals as required.
- Check the fluid levels of coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, power steering and transmission and add as needed.
- Check all lights and other electrical items for correct operation.

*At Each Oil Change*

- Change the engine oil filter.
- Inspect the brake hoses and lines.
- Check the manual transmission fluid level.

**CAUTION!**

**Failure to perform the required maintenance items may result in damage to the vehicle.**

**Required Maintenance Intervals**

Refer to the Maintenance Schedules on the following pages for the required maintenance intervals.



**18,000 Miles (30,000 km) or 18 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- Inspect the front & rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**24,000 Miles (40,000 km) or 24 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- If using your vehicle for any of the following: Dusty or off-road conditions. Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the CV joints.
- Inspect exhaust system.
- Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals; replace if necessary.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer



**36,000 Miles (60,000 km) or 36 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- If using your vehicle for any of the following: Dusty or off-road conditions. Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the front & rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals; replace if necessary.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_ Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**42,000 Miles (70,000 km) or 42 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_ Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**48,000 Miles (80,000 km) or 48 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- If using your vehicle for any of the following: Dusty or off-road conditions. Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the CV joints.
- Inspect exhaust system.
- Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals; replace if necessary.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_ Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**54,000 Miles (90,000 km) or 54 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- Inspect the front & rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_ Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**60,000 Miles (100,000 km) or 60 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- Replace the engine air cleaner filter.
- Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.
- Adjust parking brake on vehicles equipped with four-wheel disc brakes.
- Change the manual transmission fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: trailer towing, snow plowing, heavy loading, taxi, police, delivery service (commercial service), off-road, desert operation or more than 50% of your driving is at sustained high speeds during hot weather, above 90°F (32°C).
- Change the automatic transmission fluid and main sump filter if using your vehicle for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet or frequent trailer towing.
- Change the transfer case fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- Flush and replace the engine coolant at 60 months if not done at 102,000 miles (170 000 km).
- Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals; replace if necessary.

\_\_\_\_\_

Odometer Reading Date

\_\_\_\_\_

Repair Order # Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_

Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**66,000 Miles (110,000 km) or 66 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Odometer Reading Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Repair Order # Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**72,000 Miles (120,000 km) or 72 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- If using your vehicle for any of the following: Dusty or off-road conditions. Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the front & rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- Inspect the CV joints.
- Inspect exhaust system.
- Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals; replace if necessary.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Odometer Reading Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Repair Order # Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer



**78,000 Miles (130,000 km) or  
78 Months Maintenance  
Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**84,000 Miles (140,000 km) or 84 Months Maintenance Service  
Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- If using your vehicle for any of the following: Dusty or off-road conditions. Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals; replace if necessary.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**90,000 Miles (150,000 km) or 90 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- Replace the engine air cleaner filter.
- Inspect and replace PCV valve if necessary.†**
- Adjust parking brake on vehicles equipped with four-wheel disc brakes.
- Change the manual transmission fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: trailer towing, snow plowing, heavy loading, taxi, police, delivery service (commercial service), off-road, desert operation or more than 50% of your driving is at sustained high speeds during hot weather, above 90°F (32°C).
- Inspect the transfer case fluid.
- Inspect the front & rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_ Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**96,000 Miles (160,000 km) or 96 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- If using your vehicle for any of the following: Dusty or off-road conditions. Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the CV joints.
- Inspect exhaust system.
- Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals; replace if necessary.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**102,000 Miles (170,000 km) or 102 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- Replace the ignition cables.**
- Replace the spark plugs.**
- Flush and replace the engine coolant if not done at 60 months.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**108,000 Miles (180,000 km) or 108 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- If using your vehicle for any of the following: Dusty or off-road conditions. Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the front & rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals; replace if necessary.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**114,000 Miles (190,000 km) or 114 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**120,000 Miles (200,000 km) or 120 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- Replace the engine air cleaner filter.
- Replace accessory drive belt(s).
- Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.
- Inspect exhaust system.
- Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals; replace if necessary.
- Adjust parking brake on vehicles equipped with four-wheel disc brakes.
- Inspect the CV joints.
- Change the transfer case fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- Change the manual transmission fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: trailer towing, snow plowing, heavy loading, taxi, police, delivery service (commercial service), off-road, desert operation or more than 50% of your driving is at sustained high speeds during hot weather, above 90°F (32°C).
- Change the automatic transmission fluid, and filter(s).

\_\_\_\_\_

Odometer Reading Date

\_\_\_\_\_

Repair Order # Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_

Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**126,000 Miles (210,000 km) or 126 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- Inspect the front & rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**132,000 Miles (220,000 km) or 132 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- If using your vehicle for any of the following: Dusty or off-road conditions. Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals; replace if necessary.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**138,000 Miles (230,000 km) or  
138 Months Maintenance  
Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**144,000 Miles (240,000 km) or 144 Months Maintenance Service  
Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- If using your vehicle for any of the following: Dusty or off-road conditions. Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.
- Inspect the front & rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.
- Inspect the CV joints.
- Inspect exhaust system.
- Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals; replace if necessary.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer

**150,000 Miles (250,000 km) or 150 Months Maintenance Service Schedule**

- Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.
- Rotate tires.
- Replace the engine air cleaner filter.
- Adjust parking brake on vehicles equipped with four-wheel disc brakes.
- Change the manual transmission fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: trailer towing, snow plowing, heavy loading, taxi, police, delivery service (commercial service), off-road, desert operation or more than 50% of your driving is at sustained high speeds during hot weather, above 90°F (32°C).
- Inspect the transfer case fluid.

\_\_\_\_\_ Odometer Reading \_\_\_\_\_ Date

\_\_\_\_\_ Repair Order # \_\_\_\_\_ Dealer Code

\_\_\_\_\_ Signature Authorized Chrysler Dealer



**524 MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES**

† This maintenance is recommended by the manufacturer to the owner, but is not required to maintain emissions warranty.

**WARNING!**

- You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.
- Failure to properly inspect and maintain your vehicle could result in a component malfunction and effect vehicle handling and performance. This could cause an accident

---

## IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE

### CONTENTS

---

|   |     |  |     |
|---|-----|--|-----|
| ■ Suggestions For Obtaining Service For Your Vehicle. . . . . | 527 | □ Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY) . . . . . | 529 |
| □ Prepare For The Appointment . . . . .                       | 527 | □ Service Contract . . . . .   | 529 |
| □ Prepare A List . . . . .                                    | 527 | ■ Warranty Information . . . . .   | 530 |
| □ Be Reasonable With Requests . . . . .                       | 527 | ■ MOPAR® Parts . . . . .   | 530 |
| ■ If You Need Assistance . . . . .                            | 527 | ■ Reporting Safety Defects . . . . .   | 530 |
| □ Chrysler Group LLC Customer Center . . . . .                | 528 | □ In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C. . . . .                       | 530 |
| □ Chrysler Canada Inc. Customer Center . . . . .              | 528 | □ In Canada . . . . .  | 531 |
| □ In Mexico Contact . . . . .                                 | 528 |  |     |

**526 IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE**

|   |     |                                |     |
|---|-----|--------------------------------|-----|
| ■ Publication Order Forms . . . . .                                     | 531 | □ Traction Grades . . . . .    | 533 |
| ■ Department Of Transportation Uniform Tire<br>Quality Grades . . . . . | 533 | □ Temperature Grades . . . . . | 534 |
| □ Treadwear . . . . .   | 533 |                                |     |

## SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE

### Prepare For The Appointment

If you're having warranty work done, be sure to have the right papers with you. Take your warranty folder. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty. Discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your vehicle's service history. This can often provide a clue to the current problem.

### Prepare A List

Make a written list of your vehicle's problems or the specific work you want done. If you've had an accident or work done that is not on your maintenance log, let the service advisor know.

### Be Reasonable With Requests

If you list a number of items and you must have your vehicle by the end of the day, discuss the situation with

the service advisor and list the items in order of priority. At many authorized dealers, you may obtain a rental vehicle at a minimal daily charge. If you need a rental, it is advisable to make these arrangements when you call for an appointment.

### IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE

The manufacturer and its authorized dealers are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized dealer. We strongly recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. They know your vehicle the best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and high quality service. The manufacturer's authorized dealers have the facilities, factory-trained technicians, special tools, and the latest information to ensure the vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

## 528 IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE

This is why you should always talk to an authorized dealer's service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

- If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the authorized dealership. They want to know if you need assistance.
- If an authorized dealership is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the manufacturer's customer center.

Any communication to the manufacturer's customer center should include the following information:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number (home and office)
- Authorized dealership name
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

- Vehicle delivery date and mileage

### **Chrysler Group LLC Customer Center**

P.O. Box 21-8004

Auburn Hills, MI 48321-8004

Phone: (877) 426-5337

### **Chrysler Canada Inc. Customer Center**

P.O. Box 1621

Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6

Phone: (800) 465-2001

### **In Mexico contact:**

Av. Prolongacion Paseo de la Reforma, 1240

Sante Fe C.P. 05109

Mexico, D. F.

In Mexico City: 5081-7568

Outside Mexico City: 1-800-505-1300

**Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)**

To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its customer center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer, who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States, can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1-800-380-CHRY.

Canadian residents with hearing difficulties that require assistance can use the special needs relay service offered by Bell Canada. For TTY teletypewriter users, dial 711 and for Voice callers, dial 1 800 855-0511 to connect with a Bell Relay Service operator.

**Service Contract**

You may have purchased a service contract for a vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires. The manufacturer stands behind only

the manufacturer's service contracts. If you purchased a manufacturer's service contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of the vehicle delivery date. If you have any questions about the service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922 (Canadian residents, call 1-800-485-2001).

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's service contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's service contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's service contract, and you require service after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires, please refer to the contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.

## 530 IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE

We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased the vehicle. An authorized dealer has also made a major investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with the ownership experience. You'll be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.

### **WARNING!**

**Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm.**

### **WARRANTY INFORMATION**

See the Warranty Information Booklet, located on the DVD, for the terms and provisions of Chrysler Group LLC warranties applicable to this vehicle and market.

### **MOPAR® PARTS**

MOPAR® fluids, lubricants, parts, and accessories are available from an authorized dealer. They are recommended for your vehicle in order to help keep the vehicle operating at its best.

### **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS**

#### **In the 50 United States and Washington, D.C.**

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the manufacturer.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your authorized dealer, and the manufacturer.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153), or go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., West Building, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### **In Canada**

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety defect to the Canadian government should write to: Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls, 2780 Sheffield Road, Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9.

### **PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS**

To order the following manuals, you may use either the website or the phone numbers listed below. Visa, Mastercard, American Express, and Discover orders are accepted. If you prefer mailing your payment, please call for an order form.



## 532 IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE

**NOTE:** A street address is required when ordering manuals (no P.O. Boxes).

- *Service Manuals*

These comprehensive Service Manuals provide the information that students and professional technicians need in diagnosing/troubleshooting, problem solving, maintaining, servicing, and repairing Chrysler Group LLC vehicles. A complete working knowledge of the vehicle, system, and/or components is written in straightforward language with illustrations, diagrams, and charts.

- *Diagnostic Procedure Manuals*

Diagnostic Procedure Manuals are filled with diagrams, charts and detailed illustrations. These practical manuals make it easy for students and technicians

to find and fix problems on computer-controlled vehicle systems and features. They show exactly how to find and correct problems the first time, using step-by-step troubleshooting and drivability procedures, proven diagnostic tests and a complete list of all tools and equipment.

- *Owner's Manuals*

These Owner's Manuals have been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with specific Chrysler Group LLC vehicles. Included are starting, operating, emergency and maintenance procedures as well as specifications, capabilities and safety tips.

*Call toll free at:*

- 1-800-890-4038 (U.S.)
- 1-800-387-1143 (Canada)

Or

*Visit us on the Worldwide Web at:*

- [www.techauthority.com](http://www.techauthority.com)

#### **DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES**

The following tire grading categories were established by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The specific grade rating assigned by the tire's manufacturer in each category is shown on the sidewall of the tires on your vehicle.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

#### **Treadwear**

The Treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

#### **Traction Grades**

The Traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**WARNING!**

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

**Temperature Grades**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat, when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance, which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor

Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel, than the minimum required by law.

**WARNING!**

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

---

# INDEX

**536 INDEX**

|   |           |  |         |
|---|-----------|--|---------|
| ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System) . . . . .                    | 249,371   | Alterations/Modifications, Vehicle . . . . .         | 8       |
| Adding Engine Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . .              | 472       | Antenna, Satellite Radio . . . . .                   | 308,313 |
| Adding Fuel . . . . .                                     | 416       | Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) . . . . .                | 501     |
| Air Cleaner, Engine (Engine Air Cleaner Filter) . . . . . | 463       | Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) . . . . .               | 371,373 |
| Air Conditioner Maintenance . . . . .                     | 465       | Anti-Lock Warning Light . . . . .                    | 249     |
| Air Conditioning . . . . .                                | 319,323   | Appearance Care . . . . .                            | 482     |
| Air Conditioning Controls . . . . .                       | 323       | Arming Theft System (Security Alarm) . . . . .       | 18      |
| Air Conditioning, Operating Tips . . . . .                | 324       | Assistance Towing . . . . .                          | 103     |
| Air Conditioning Refrigerant . . . . .                    | 466       | Auto Down Power Windows . . . . .                    | 35      |
| Air Conditioning System . . . . .                         | 323       | Automatic Transmission . . . . .                     | 478     |
| Air Filter . . . . .                                      | 463       | Fluid and Filter Changes . . . . .                   | 478     |
| Air Pressure, Tires . . . . .                             | 398       | Fluid Level Check . . . . .                          | 478     |
| Airbag . . . . .  | 50        | Fluid Type . . . . .                                 | 478     |
| Airbag Deployment . . . . .                               | 58        | Gear Ranges . . . . .                                | 342     |
| Airbag Light . . . . .                                    | 60,77,250 | Shifting . . . . .                                   | 341     |
| Airbag Maintenance . . . . .                              | 60        | Special Additives . . . . .                          | 480     |
| Airbag, Side . . . . .                                    | 57        | Torque Converter . . . . .                           | 345     |
| Alarm Light . . . . .                                     | 250       | Auxiliary Electrical Outlet (Power Outlet) . . . . . | 150     |
| Alarm (Security Alarm) . . . . .                          | 17        | Auxiliary Power Outlet . . . . .                     | 150     |

|   |         |   |             |
|---|---------|---|-------------|
| Axle Lock . . . . .                             | 350,351 | Capacities, Fluid . . . . .                                   | 501         |
| Battery . . . . .                               | 463     | Caps, Filler  |             |
| Keyless Transmitter Replacement (RKE) . . . . . | 23      | Fuel . . . . .  | 416         |
| Belts, Seat . . . . .                           | 39,77   | Power Steering . . . . .                                      | 368         |
| Body Mechanism Lubrication . . . . .            | 466     | Car Washes . . . . .  | 483         |
| Brake Assist System . . . . .                   | 374     | Carbon Monoxide Warning . . . . .                             | 76,415      |
| Brake Assist Warning Light . . . . .            | 259     | Cargo Light . . . . .   | 140         |
| Brake Control System, Electronic . . . . .      | 373     | Cargo (Vehicle Loading) . . . . .                             | 418         |
| Brake System . . . . .                          | 476     | Cellular Phone . . . . .                                      | 88,317      |
| Anti-Lock (ABS) . . . . .                       | 371,373 | Center High Mounted Stop Light . . . . .                      | 500         |
| Master Cylinder . . . . .                       | 476     | Certification Label . . . . .                                 | 418         |
| Parking . . . . .                               | 369     | Changing A Flat Tire . . . . .                                | 442         |
| Warning Light . . . . .                         | 248     | Chart, Tire Sizing . . . . .                                  | 389         |
| Brake/Transmission Interlock . . . . .          | 340     | Check Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator<br>Light) . . . . . | 257,457     |
| Break-In Recommendations, New Vehicle . . . . . | 75      | Checking Your Vehicle For Safety . . . . .                    | 75          |
| Bulb Replacement . . . . .                      | 497,498 | Checks, Safety . . . . .                                      | 75          |
| Bulbs, Light . . . . .                          | 79      | Child Restraint . . . . .                                     | 61,62,69,72 |

**538 INDEX**

|  |                     |   |                |
|--|---------------------|---|----------------|
| Child Restraint Tether Anchors . . . . . | 67,69               | Pressure Cap . . . . .                      | 473            |
| Child Seat . . . . .                     | 66                  | Selection of Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . . | 471,501        |
| Climate Control . . . . .                | 317                 | Corrosion Protection . . . . .              | 482            |
| Clock . . . . .                          | 269,283,285,288,297 | Cruise Light . . . . .                      | 251            |
| Compact Disc (CD) Maintenance . . . . .  | 316                 | Cupholders . . . . .                        | 152            |
| Compass . . . . .                        | 261                 | Customer Assistance . . . . .               | 527            |
| Compass Calibration . . . . .            | 264                 | Data Recorder, Event . . . . .              | 60             |
| Computer, Trip/Travel . . . . .          | 260,261             | Daytime Running Lights . . . . .            | 139            |
| Console . . . . .                        | 153                 | Dealer Service . . . . .                    | 458            |
| Console, Floor . . . . .                 | 153                 | Defroster, Rear Window . . . . .            | 239            |
| Contract, Service . . . . .              | 529                 | Defroster, Windshield . . . . .             | 77,318,319,321 |
| Cooling System . . . . .                 | 470                 | Delay (Intermittent) Wipers . . . . .       | 143            |
| Adding Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . .    | 472                 | Diagnostic System, Onboard . . . . .        | 456            |
| Coolant Capacity . . . . .               | 501                 | Dimmer Switch, Headlight . . . . .          | 138            |
| Coolant Level . . . . .                  | 474                 | Dipsticks                                   |                |
| Disposal of Used Coolant . . . . .       | 474                 | Oil (Engine) . . . . .                      | 460            |
| Drain, Flush, and Refill . . . . .       | 471                 | Power Steering . . . . .                    | 368            |
| Inspection . . . . .                     | 470                 | Disabled Vehicle Towing . . . . .           | 451            |
| Points to Remember . . . . .             | 475                 |   |                |

|   |     |   |         |
|---|-----|---|---------|
| Disarming, Theft System . . . . .                     | 18  | Traction Control System . . . . .                   | 374     |
| Disposal  |     | Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM) . . . . .          | 378     |
| Engine Oil . . . . .                                  | 462 | Electronic Speed Control (Cruise Control) . . . . . | 146     |
| Used Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . .                   | 474 | Electronic Stability Program (ESP) . . . . .        | 379     |
| Door Locks . . . . .                                  | 30  | Electronic Throttle Control Warning Light . . . . . | 260     |
| Doors . . . . .                                       | 26  | Emergency Brake . . . . .                           | 369     |
| Driver's Seat Back Tilt . . . . .                     | 126 | Emergency, In Case of                               |         |
| Driving . . . . .                                     | 354 | Jacking . . . . .                                   | 442     |
| Off-Pavement . . . . .                                | 354 | Jump Starting . . . . .                             | 446     |
| Off-Road . . . . .                                    | 354 | Tow Hooks . . . . .                                 | 450     |
| Dual Top . . . . .                                    | 154 | Emission Control System Maintenance . . . . .       | 457,506 |
| Electrical Outlet, Auxiliary (Power Outlet) . . . . . | 150 | Engine  |         |
| Electrical Power Outlets . . . . .                    | 150 | Air Cleaner . . . . .                               | 463     |
| Electronic Brake Control System . . . . .             | 373 | Block Heater . . . . .                              | 335     |
| Anti-Lock Brake System . . . . .                      | 373 | Break-In Recommendations . . . . .                  | 75      |
| Brake Assist System . . . . .                         | 374 | Compartment . . . . .                               | 455     |
| Electronic Roll Mitigation . . . . .                  | 378 | Compartment Identification . . . . .                | 455     |
| Electronic Stability Program . . . . .                | 379 | Exhaust Gas Caution . . . . .                       | 76,415  |
|   |     | Fails to Start . . . . .                            | 332     |



540 INDEX

|  |         |                                   |                |
|--|---------|-----------------------------------|----------------|
| Flooded, Starting . . . . .                  | 332     | Exterior Lights . . . . .         | 79             |
| Fuel Requirements . . . . .                  | 411,501 | Fabric Care . . . . .             | 485,487        |
| Jump Starting . . . . .                      | 446     | Fabric Top . . . . .              | 487            |
| Oil . . . . .                                | 460,501 | Filters                           |                |
| Oil Disposal . . . . .                       | 462     | Air Cleaner . . . . .             | 463            |
| Oil Filter . . . . .                         | 462     | Engine Oil . . . . .              | 462            |
| Oil Selection . . . . .                      | 501     | Finish Care . . . . .             | 483            |
| Overheating . . . . .                        | 440     | Flashers                          |                |
| Starting . . . . .                           | 331     | Hazard Warning . . . . .          | 440            |
| Temperature Gauge . . . . .                  | 251     | Turn Signal . . . . .             | 79,247,499,500 |
| Engine Oil Viscosity . . . . .               | 462     | Flooded Engine Starting . . . . . | 332            |
| Engine Oil Viscosity Chart . . . . .         | 462     | Fluid Capacities . . . . .        | 501            |
| Enhanced Accident Response Feature . . . . . | 58      | Fluid Leaks . . . . .             | 79             |
| Entry System, Illuminated . . . . .          | 19      | Fluid Level Checks . . . . .      | 482            |
| Event Data Recorder . . . . .                | 60      | Automatic Transmission . . . . .  | 478            |
| Exhaust Gas Caution . . . . .                | 76,415  | Engine Oil . . . . .              | 460            |
| Exhaust System . . . . .                     | 76,468  | Manual Transmission . . . . .     | 481            |
| Extender, Seat Belt . . . . .                | 49      | Power Steering . . . . .          | 368            |
| Exterior Finish Care . . . . .               | 483     |                                   |                |

|  |         |                                       |             |
|--|---------|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts . . . . . | 502     | Fuses . . . . .                       | 490         |
| Fog Light Service . . . . .                    | 499     | Gas Cap (Fuel Filler Cap) . . . . .   | 416,418,456 |
| Fog Lights . . . . .                           | 138,499 | Gasoline (Fuel) . . . . .             | 411         |
| Fold and Tumble Rear Seat . . . . .            | 130     | Gasoline, Reformulated . . . . .      | 412         |
| Folding Rear Seat . . . . .                    | 133     | Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends . . . . .   | 412         |
| Four Wheel Drive . . . . .                     | 345     | Gauges                                |             |
| Shifting . . . . .                             | 347     | Coolant Temperature . . . . .         | 251         |
| Four Wheel Drive Operation . . . . .           | 345     | Fuel . . . . .                        | 246         |
| Four-Way Hazard Flasher . . . . .              | 440     | Odometer . . . . .                    | 254         |
| Front Axle (Differential) . . . . .            | 482     | Speedometer . . . . .                 | 246         |
| Fuel . . . . .                                 | 411     | Tachometer . . . . .                  | 250         |
| Filler Cap (Gas Cap) . . . . .                 | 416     | Gear Ranges . . . . .                 | 336,342     |
| Gasoline . . . . .                             | 411     | General Information . . . . .         | 17,119,411  |
| Gauge . . . . .                                | 246     | Glass Cleaning . . . . .              | 486         |
| Materials Added . . . . .                      | 414     | Gross Axle Weight Rating . . . . .    | 419,421     |
| Octane Rating . . . . .                        | 411     | Gross Vehicle Weight Rating . . . . . | 418,421     |
| Requirements . . . . .                         | 501     | GVWR . . . . .                        | 418         |
| Tank Capacity . . . . .                        | 501     |                                       |             |
| Fuel System Caution . . . . .                  | 414,417 |                                       |             |

**542 INDEX**

|                              |     |                                    |     |
|------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------|-----|
| Hands-Free Phone (Uconnect™) | 88  | Hood Release                       | 135 |
| Hard Top                     | 160 | Hydraulic Clutch Fluid             | 480 |
| Hard Top, Modular            | 160 | Ignition                           | 12  |
| Hard Top Removal             | 168 | Key                                | 12  |
| Hazard Warning Flasher       | 440 | Ignition Key Removal               | 12  |
| Head Restraints              | 128 | Illuminated Entry                  | 19  |
| Head Rests                   | 128 | Immobilizer (Sentry Key)           | 14  |
| Headlights                   |     | Infant Restraint                   | 62  |
| Bulb Replacement             | 498 | Inflation Pressure Tires           | 398 |
| Dimmer Switch                | 138 | Inside Rearview Mirror             | 86  |
| Replacing                    | 498 | Instrument Cluster                 | 245 |
| Switch                       | 136 | Instrument Panel and Controls      | 244 |
| Heater                       | 317 | Instrument Panel Lens Cleaning     | 486 |
| Heater, Engine Block         | 335 | Integrated Power Module (Fuses)    | 490 |
| High Beam Indicator          | 247 | Interior Appearance Care           | 485 |
| Hill Start Assist            | 375 | Interior Lights                    | 140 |
| Hitches                      |     | Intermittent Wipers (Delay Wipers) | 143 |
| Trailer Towing               | 424 | Introduction                       | 4   |
| Holder, Cup                  | 152 |                                    |     |

|  |             |  |           |
|--|-------------|--|-----------|
| Jack Location . . . . .                                    | 442         | Lead Free Gasoline . . . . .                           | 411       |
| Jack Operation . . . . .                                   | 442,444,445 | Leaks, Fluid . . . . .                                 | 79        |
| Jacking Instructions . . . . .                             | 444         | Light Bulbs . . . . .                                  | 79        |
| Jump Starting . . . . .                                    | 446         | Lights . . . . .                                       | 79,136    |
|  |             | Airbag . . . . .                                       | 60,77,250 |
| Key, Programming . . . . .                                 | 16          | Alarm . . . . .  | 250       |
| Key, Replacement . . . . .                                 | 15          | Anti-Lock . . . . .                                    | 249       |
| Key, Sentry (Immobilizer) . . . . .                        | 14          | Anti-Lock Warning . . . . .                            | 249       |
| Key-In Reminder . . . . .                                  | 13          | Back-Up . . . . .                                      | 500       |
| Keyless Entry System . . . . .                             | 19          | Brake Assist Warning . . . . .                         | 259,385   |
| Keys . . . . .   | 12          | Brake Warning . . . . .                                | 248       |
|  |             | Bulb Replacement . . . . .                             | 498       |
| Lane Change and Turn Signals . . . . .                     | 247         | Cargo . . . . .  | 140       |
| Lane Change Assist . . . . .                               | 138         | Center Mounted Stop . . . . .                          | 500       |
| Lap Belts . . . . .  | 39          | Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) . . . . .         | 257       |
| Lap/Shoulder Belts . . . . .                               | 39          | Cruise . . . . .                                       | 251       |
| LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tether for<br>Children) . . . . . | 67,69       | Daytime Running . . . . .                              | 139       |
| Latches . . . . .  | 79          | Dimmer Switch, Headlight . . . . .                     | 138       |
|  |             | Electronic Stability Program (ESP) Indicator . . . . . | 259,385   |

544 INDEX

|   |         |  |                    |
|---|---------|--|--------------------|
| Electronic Throttle Control Warning . . . . . | 260     | Service . . . . .                                  | 498                |
| Engine Temperature Warning . . . . .          | 250     | Side Marker . . . . .                              | 500                |
| Exterior . . . . .                            | 79      | Theft Alarm (Security Alarm) . . . . .             | 250                |
| Fog . . . . .                                 | 138,499 | Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPMS) . . . . .          | 252                |
| Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .              | 440     | Turn Signal . . . . .                              | 79,137,247,499,500 |
| Headlight Switch . . . . .                    | 136     | Voltage . . . . .                                  | 246                |
| Headlights . . . . .                          | 498     | Warning (Instrument Cluster Description) . . . . . | 246                |
| High Beam . . . . .                           | 247     | Loading Vehicle . . . . .                          | 418                |
| High Beam Indicator . . . . .                 | 247     | Tires . . . . .                                    | 393                |
| Instrument Cluster . . . . .                  | 136     | Locking Axle . . . . .                             | 350,351            |
| Interior . . . . .                            | 140     | Locks  |                    |
| Lights On Reminder . . . . .                  | 138     | Door . . . . .                                     | 30                 |
| Low Fuel . . . . .                            | 246     | Power Door . . . . .                               | 31                 |
| Oil Pressure . . . . .                        | 247     | Steering Wheel . . . . .                           | 13                 |
| Passing . . . . .                             | 138     | Lower Anchors and Tether for Children              |                    |
| Rear Servicing . . . . .                      | 500     | (LATCH) . . . . .                                  | 67,69              |
| Rear Tail . . . . .                           | 500     | Lubrication, Body . . . . .                        | 466                |
| Seat Belt Reminder . . . . .                  | 247     | Maintenance Free Battery . . . . .                 | 463                |
| Security Alarm (Theft Alarm) . . . . .        | 250     |  |                    |

|  |         |   |         |
|--|---------|---|---------|
| Maintenance Procedures . . . . .                     | 459     | New Vehicle Break-In Period . . . . .     | 75      |
| Maintenance Schedule . . . . .                       | 506     | Occupant Restraints . . . . .             | 37      |
| Malfunction Indicator Light (Check Engine) . . . . . | 257,457 | Octane Rating, Gasoline (Fuel) . . . . .  | 411     |
| Manual, Service . . . . .                            | 531     | Odometer . . . . .                        | 254     |
| Manual Transmission . . . . .                        | 335,480 | Trip . . . . .                            | 252,254 |
| Fluid Level Check . . . . .                          | 481     | Off-Pavement Driving (Off-Road) . . . . . | 354     |
| Lubricant Selection . . . . .                        | 480     | Off-Road Driving (Off-Pavement) . . . . . | 354     |
| Shift Speeds . . . . .                               | 336     | Oil Change Indicator . . . . .            | 256     |
| Master Cylinder (Brakes) . . . . .                   | 476     | Oil Change Indicator, Reset . . . . .     | 256     |
| Mini-Trip Computer . . . . .                         | 260,261 | Oil, Engine . . . . .                     | 460     |
| Mirrors . . . . .                                    | 86      | Capacity . . . . .                        | 501     |
| Outside . . . . .                                    | 87      | Dipstick . . . . .                        | 460     |
| Rearview . . . . .                                   | 86      | Filter . . . . .                          | 462     |
| Vanity . . . . .                                     | 88      | Identification Logo . . . . .             | 461     |
| Modifications/Alterations, Vehicle . . . . .         | 8       | Materials Added to . . . . .              | 462     |
| Modular Hard Top . . . . .                           | 160     | Pressure Warning Light . . . . .          | 247     |
| Monitor, Tire Pressure System . . . . .              | 406     | Recommendation . . . . .                  | 461,501 |
| Mopar Parts . . . . .                                | 458,530 | Viscosity . . . . .                       | 462,501 |
| Multi-Function Control Lever . . . . .               | 136     |   |         |

**546 INDEX**

|   |         |   |         |
|---|---------|---|---------|
| Oil Pressure Light . . . . .                    | 247     | Steering . . . . .                                | 367,368 |
| Onboard Diagnostic System . . . . .             | 456,457 | Windows . . . . .                                 | 34      |
| Operator Manual (Owner's Manual) . . . . .      | 6       | Pregnant Women and Seat Belts . . . . .           | 49      |
| Outside Rearview Mirrors . . . . .              | 87      | Preparation for Jacking . . . . .                 | 443     |
| Overheating, Engine . . . . .                   | 251,440 | Pretensioners                                     |         |
| Owner's Manual (Operator Manual) . . . . .      | 6,531   | Seat Belts . . . . .                              | 47      |
| <br>  |         |   |         |
| Paint Care . . . . .                            | 482     | Radial Ply Tires . . . . .                        | 401     |
| Paint Damage . . . . .                          | 482     | Radio Operation . . . . .                         | 317     |
| Panic Alarm . . . . .                           | 21      | Radio, Satellite (Uconnect® studios) . . . . .    | 311     |
| Parking Brake . . . . .                         | 369     | Rear Axle (Differential) . . . . .                | 482     |
| Passing Light . . . . .                         | 138     | Rear Swing Gate . . . . .                         | 36      |
| Pets . . . . .                                  | 74      | Rear Window Defroster . . . . .                   | 239     |
| Phone, Cellular . . . . .                       | 88      | Rear Window Features . . . . .                    | 238     |
| Phone, Hands-Free (Uconnect™) . . . . .         | 88      | Rear Wiper/Washer . . . . .                       | 238     |
| Placard, Tire and Loading Information . . . . . | 394     | Rearview Mirrors . . . . .                        | 86      |
| Polishing and Waxing . . . . .                  | 483     | Recorder, Event Data . . . . .                    | 60      |
| Power   |         | Recreational Towing . . . . .                     | 435     |
| Door Locks . . . . .                            | 31      | Shifting into Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . . | 436     |

|   |       |   |         |
|---|-------|---|---------|
| Shifting out of Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . . | 437   | Safety Checks Inside Vehicle . . . . .        | 77      |
| Reformulated Gasoline . . . . .                     | 412   | Safety Checks Outside Vehicle . . . . .       | 79      |
| Refrigerant . . . . .                               | 466   | Safety Defects, Reporting . . . . .           | 530     |
| Release, Hood . . . . .                             | 135   | Safety, Exhaust Gas . . . . .                 | 76      |
| Reminder, Lights On . . . . .                       | 138   | Safety Information, Tire . . . . .            | 387     |
| Reminder, Seat Belt . . . . .                       | 47    | Safety Tips . . . . .                         | 75      |
| Remote Control                                      |       | Satellite Radio Antenna . . . . .             | 308,313 |
| Door Locks . . . . .                                | 19    | Satellite Radio (Uconnect® studios) . . . . . | 311     |
| Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) . . . . .                | 19    | Schedule, Maintenance . . . . .               | 506     |
| Remote Starting System . . . . .                    | 24    | Seat Belt Reminder . . . . .                  | 47      |
| Replacement Bulbs . . . . .                         | 497   | Seat Belts . . . . .                          | 39,77   |
| Replacement Keys . . . . .                          | 15    | Adjustable Upper Shoulder Anchorage . . . . . | 44      |
| Replacement Parts . . . . .                         | 458   | And Pregnant Women . . . . .                  | 49      |
| Replacement Tires . . . . .                         | 403   | Child Restraint . . . . .                     | 61,72   |
| Reporting Safety Defects . . . . .                  | 530   | Extender . . . . .                            | 49      |
| Restraint, Head . . . . .                           | 128   | Front Seat . . . . .                          | 39      |
| Restraints, Child . . . . .                         | 61,66 | Inspection . . . . .                          | 77      |
| Restraints, Occupant . . . . .                      | 37    | Maintenance . . . . .                         | 486     |
| Rotation, Tires . . . . .                           | 404   | Pretensioners . . . . .                       | 47      |



**548 INDEX**

|                              |         |                                |                     |
|------------------------------|---------|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| Reminder                     | 247     | Service Manuals                | 531                 |
| Seats                        | 124     | Setting the Clock              | 269,283,285,288,297 |
| Adjustment                   | 125     | Shift Lock Manual Override     | 340                 |
| Easy Entry                   | 127     | Shifting                       | 339                 |
| Fold and Tumble Rear         | 130     | Automatic Transmission         | 341                 |
| Head Restraints              | 128     | Manual Transmission            | 335                 |
| Height Adjustment            | 126     | Shoulder Belt Upper Anchorage  | 44                  |
| Rear Folding                 | 133     | Shoulder Belts                 | 39                  |
| Removal                      | 132,133 | Side Airbag                    | 57                  |
| Seatback Release             | 126     | Signals, Turn                  | 79,137,247,499,500  |
| Tilting                      | 126     | Soft Top                       | 180,203             |
| Security Against Theft       | 17      | Spare Tire                     | 443                 |
| Security Alarm (Theft Alarm) | 17      | Specifications                 |                     |
| Selection of Oil             | 461     | Fuel (Gasoline)                | 411                 |
| Sentry Key (Immobilizer)     | 14      | Oil                            | 461                 |
| Sentry Key Programming       | 16      | Speed Control (Cruise Control) | 146                 |
| Sentry Key Replacement       | 15      | Speedometer                    | 246                 |
| Service Assistance           | 527     | Starting                       | 331                 |
| Service Contract             | 529     | Automatic Transmission         | 331                 |

|  |         |  |            |
|--|---------|--|------------|
| Cold Weather . . . . .                           | 332     | Tachometer . . . . .                           | 250        |
| Engine Block Heater . . . . .                    | 335     | Temperature Gauge, Engine Coolant . . . . .    | 251        |
| Engine Fails to Start . . . . .                  | 332     | Tether Anchor, Child Restraint . . . . .       | 67         |
| Manual Transmission . . . . .                    | 331     | Theft System Arming . . . . .                  | 18         |
| Remote . . . . .                                 | 24      | Theft System Disarming . . . . .               | 18         |
| Steering   |         | Tilt Steering Column . . . . .                 | 145        |
| Power . . . . .                                  | 367,368 | Tip Start . . . . .                            | 332        |
| Tilt Column . . . . .                            | 145     | Tire and Loading Information Placard . . . . . | 393,394    |
| Wheel Lock . . . . .                             | 13      | Tire Identification Number (TIN) . . . . .     | 391        |
| Wheel, Tilt . . . . .                            | 145     | Tire Markings . . . . .                        | 387        |
| Storage . . . . .                                | 153,496 | Tire Safety Information . . . . .              | 387        |
| Storage, Behind the Seat . . . . .               | 154     | Tires . . . . .                                | 79,397,533 |
| Storage, Vehicle . . . . .                       | 325,496 | Air Pressure . . . . .                         | 398        |
| Storing Your Vehicle . . . . .                   | 496     | Changing . . . . .                             | 442        |
| Sunrider . . . . .                               | 231,234 | General Information . . . . .                  | 397        |
| Supplemental Restraint System - Airbag . . . . . | 50      | High Speed . . . . .                           | 400        |
| Sway Bar Disconnect, Electronic . . . . .        | 352     | Inflation Pressures . . . . .                  | 398        |
| Swing Gate, Rear . . . . .                       | 36      | Jacking . . . . .                              | 442,445    |
| System, Remote Starting . . . . .                | 24      | Load Capacity . . . . .                        | 393,394    |

**550 INDEX**

|  |         |                                      |         |
|--|---------|--------------------------------------|---------|
| Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) . . . . . | 406     | Recreational . . . . .               | 435     |
| Pressure Warning Light . . . . .         | 252     | Weight . . . . .                     | 424     |
| Quality Grading . . . . .                | 533     | Towing Assistance . . . . .          | 103     |
| Radial . . . . .                         | 401     | Trac-Lok Rear Axle . . . . .         | 349     |
| Replacement . . . . .                    | 403     | Traction Control . . . . .           | 374     |
| Rotation . . . . .                       | 404     | Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . . . | 386     |
| Safety . . . . .                         | 387     | Trailer Towing . . . . .             | 420     |
| Sizes . . . . .                          | 389     | Cooling System Tips . . . . .        | 434     |
| Spare Tire . . . . .                     | 443     | Hitches . . . . .                    | 411,424 |
| Spinning . . . . .                       | 401     | Minimum Requirements . . . . .       | 428     |
| Tread Wear Indicators . . . . .          | 402     | Trailer and Tongue Weight . . . . .  | 427     |
| To Open Hood . . . . .                   | 135     | Wiring . . . . .                     | 432     |
| Tongue Weight/Trailer Weight . . . . .   | 427     | Trailer Towing Guide . . . . .       | 424     |
| Torque Converter Clutch . . . . .        | 345     | Trailer Weight . . . . .             | 424     |
| Tow Hooks, Emergency . . . . .           | 450     | Transfer Case . . . . .              | 481     |
| Towing . . . . .                         | 420,451 | Four-Wheel-Drive Operation . . . . . | 345     |
| 24-Hour Towing Assistance . . . . .      | 103     | Maintenance . . . . .                | 481     |
| Disabled Vehicle . . . . .               | 451     | Transmission                         |         |
| Guide . . . . .                          | 424     | Automatic . . . . .                  | 341     |

|   |                 |   |         |
|---|-----------------|---|---------|
| Maintenance . . . . .   | 478,480         | Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) . . . . .             | 8       |
| Manual . . . . .  | 335             | Vehicle Loading . . . . .                                 | 394,418 |
| Range Indicator . . . . .                                       | 252             | Vehicle Modifications/Alterations . . . . .               | 8       |
| Shifting . . . . .  | 339             | Vehicle Storage . . . . .                                 | 325,496 |
| Transmitter Battery Service (Remote Keyless<br>Entry) . . . . . | 23              | Viscosity, Engine Oil . . . . .                           | 462     |
| Transporting Pets . . . . .                                     | 74              | Voice Recognition System (VR) . . . . .                   | 119     |
| Tread Wear Indicators . . . . .                                 | 402             | Warning Lights (Instrument Cluster Description) . . . . . | 246     |
| Trip Computer . . . . .   | 260,261         | Warnings and Cautions . . . . .                           | 8       |
| Trip Odometer . . . . .   | 254             | Warranty Information . . . . .                            | 530     |
| Trip Odometer Reset Button . . . . .                            | 252             | Washers, Windshield . . . . .                             | 467     |
| Turn Signals . . . . .  | 137,247,499,500 | Waxing and Polishing . . . . .                            | 483     |
| Uconnect™ (Hands-Free Phone) . . . . .                          | 88              | Wheel and Wheel Trim . . . . .                            | 485     |
| Uniform Tire Quality Grades . . . . .                           | 533             | Wheel and Wheel Trim Care . . . . .                       | 485     |
| Upholstery Care . . . . .                                       | 485             | Wheel Mounting . . . . .                                  | 446     |
| Vanity Mirrors . . . . .  | 88              | Wind Buffeting . . . . .                                  | 36      |
| Vehicle Certification Label . . . . .                           | 418             | Window Fogging . . . . .                                  | 324     |
|   |                 | Windows . . . . .   | 34      |
|   |                 | Power . . . . .   | 34      |

**552 INDEX**

---

|                                |         |                                   |     |
|--------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Windshield Defroster . . . . . | 77      | Windshield Wiper Blades . . . . . | 466 |
| Windshield Washers . . . . .   | 141,467 | Windshield Wipers . . . . .       | 141 |
| Fluid . . . . .                | 467     | Wiper, Rear . . . . .             | 238 |



STICK WITH THE SPECIALISTS®

Chrysler Group LLC  
10JK72-126-AC



3rd Edition

Printed in U.S.A.